WASTEWATER COLLECTIONS

PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT
CONTINUING EDUCATION COURSE

Technical Learning College

Printing and Saving Instructions

TLC recommends that you download and save this pdf document and assignment to your computer desktop and open it with Adobe Acrobat DC reader.

Adobe Acrobat DC reader is a free computer software program and you can find it at Adobe Acrobat's website.

You can complete the course by viewing the course on your computer or you can print it out. This course booklet does not have the assignment (the test). Please visit our website and download the assignment (the test).

Printing Instructions: Once you have purchased the program, we will give you permission to print this document. If you are going to print this document, it was designed to be printed double-sided or duplexed but can be printed single-sided.

Internet Link to Assignment…
http://www.abctlc.com/PDF/WWCollection%20Assign.pdf

State Approval Listing Link, check to see if your State accepts or has pre-approved this course. Not all States are listed. Not all courses are listed. Do not solely trust our list for it may be outdated. It is your sole responsibility to ensure this course is accepted for credit. No refunds.

Professional Engineers; Most states will accept our courses for credit but we do not officially list the States or Agencies acceptance or approvals.

State Approval Listing URL…
http://www.tlch2o.com/PDF/CEU%20State%20Approvals.pdf

You can obtain a printed version from TLC for an additional $69.95 plus shipping charges.

All downloads are electronically tracked and monitored for security purposes.

Some States and many employers require the final exam to be proctored.

Do not solely depend on TLC's Approval list for it may be outdated.

A second certificate of completion for a second State Agency $50 processing fee.

Most of our students prefer to do the assignment in Word and e-mail or fax the assignment back to us. We also teach this course in a conventional hands-on class. Call us and schedule a class today.

Responsibility

This course contains EPA's federal rule requirements. Please be aware that each state implements collections/wastewater/safety regulations that may be more stringent than EPA's or OSHA's regulations. Check with your state environmental agency for more information. You are solely responsible in ensuring that you abide with your jurisdiction or agency's rules and regulations.

Contributing Editors

James L. Six Received a Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering from the University of Akron in June of 1976, Registered Professional Engineer in the State of Ohio, Number 45031 (Retired), Class IV Water Supply Operator issued by Ohio EPA, Number WS4-1012914-08, Class II Wastewater Collection System Operator issued by Ohio EPA, Number WC2-1012914-94

Joseph Camerata has a BS in Management with honors (magna cum laude). He retired as a Chemist in 2006 having worked in the field of chemical, environmental, and industrial hygiene sampling and analysis for 40 years.

James Bevan, Water Quality Inspector S.M.E. Twenty years of experience in the environmental field dealing with all aspects of water regulations on the federal, state, and local levels. Teacher and Proctor in Charge for Backflow Certification Testing at the ASETT Center in Tucson for the past 15 years and possess an Arizona Community College, Special Teaching Certificate in Environmental Studies.

Dr. Pete Greer S.M.E., Retired biology instructor, chemistry and biological review.

Jack White, Environmental, Health, Safety expert, City of Phoenix. Art Credits.

Important Information about this Manual

This manual has been prepared to educate employees in the general awareness of dealing with complex wastewater collection procedures and requirements for safely handling hazardous and toxic materials. The scope of the problem is quite large, requiring a major effort to bring it under control. Employee health and safety, as well as that of the public, depend upon careful application of safe sewer collection procedures.

This manual will cover general laws, regulations, required procedures and generally accepted policies relating to wastewater collection systems. It should be noted, however, that the regulation of wastewater and other hazardous materials is an ongoing process and subject to change over time. For this reason, a list of resources is provided to assist in obtaining the most up-to-date information on various subjects.

This manual is not a guidance document for employees who are involved with pollution control or wastewater treatment. It is not designed to meet the requirements of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (**EPA**) or Department of Labor-Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**) or state environmental or health departments.

5 Yard Dump Truck

This course manual will provide general educational awareness guidance of Wastewater Collection. This document is not a detailed wastewater treatment textbook or a comprehensive source book on occupational safety and health.

Technical Learning College or Technical Learning Consultants, Inc. makes no warranty, guarantee, or representation as to the absolute correctness or appropriateness of the information in this manual and assumes no responsibility in connection with the implementation of this information.

It cannot be assumed that this manual contains all measures and concepts required for specific conditions or circumstances. This document should be used for educational guidance and is not considered a legal document.

Individuals who are responsible for the collection of wastewater or the health and safety of workers at wastewater sewer facilities should obtain and comply with the most recent federal, state, and local regulations relevant to these sites and are urged to consult with OSHA, EPA, and other appropriate federal, state, health, and local agencies.

Technical Learning College’s Scope and Function

Welcome to the Program,

Technical Learning College (TLC) offers affordable continuing education for today’s working professionals who need to maintain licenses or certifications. TLC holds several different governmental agency approvals for granting of continuing education credit.

TLC’s delivery method of continuing education can include traditional types of classroom lectures and distance-based courses or independent study. TLC’s distance based or independent study courses are offered in a print - based distance educational format. We will beat any other training competitor’s price for the same CEU material or classroom training.

Our courses are designed to be flexible and for you do finish the material on your leisure. Students can also receive course materials through the mail. The CEU course or e-manual will contain all your lessons, activities and instruction to obtain the assignments. All of TLC’s CEU courses allow students to submit assignments using e-mail or fax, or by postal mail. (See the course description for more information.)

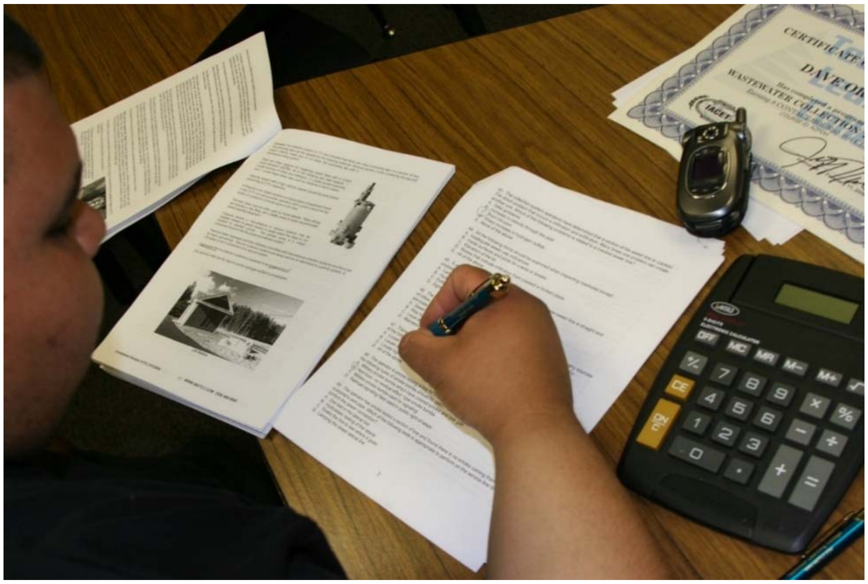
Students have direct contact with their instructor—primarily by e-mail or telephone. TLC’s CEU courses may use such technologies as the World Wide Web, e-mail, CD-ROMs, videotapes and hard copies. (See the course description.) Make sure you have access to the necessary equipment before enrolling, i.e., printer, Microsoft Word and/or Adobe Acrobat Reader. Some courses may require proctored closed-book exams depending upon your state or employer requirements.

Flexible Learning
At TLC, there are no scheduled online sessions or passwords you need contend with, nor are you required to participate in learning teams or groups designed for the "typical" younger campus based student. You can work at your own pace, completing assignments in time-frames that work best for you. TLC's method of flexible individualized instruction is designed to provide each student the guidance and support needed for successful course completion.

Course Structure
TLC's online courses combine the best of online delivery and traditional university textbooks. You can easily find the course syllabus, course content, assignments, and the post-exam (Assignment). This student friendly course design allows you the most flexibility in choosing when and where you will study.

Classroom of One
TLC offers you the best of both worlds. You learn on your own terms, on your own time, but you are never on your own. Once enrolled, you will be assigned a personal Student Service Representative who works with you on an individualized basis throughout your program of study. Course specific faculty members (S.M.E.) are assigned at the beginning of each course providing the academic support you need to successfully complete each course. Please call or email us for assistance.

Satisfaction Guaranteed
We have many years of experience, dealing with thousands of students. We assure you, our customer satisfaction is second to none. This is one reason we have taught more than 40,000 students.



We welcome you to do the electronic version of the assignment and submit the answer key and registration to us either by fax or e-mail.

If you need this assignment graded and a certificate of completion within a 48-hour turn around, prepare to pay an additional rush charge of $50.

Contact Numbers

Fax (928) 468-0675
Email Info@tlch2o.com
Telephone (866) 557-1746

Course Description

Wastewater Collection CEU Training Course

This short CEU course is designed for the continuing education, knowledge and enhancement of Wastewater Collection Operators, Pretreatment / Industrial Wastewater Operators and Wastewater Treatment Operators. The target audience for this course is the person interested in working in a wastewater treatment or collection's facility and/or wishing to maintain CEUs for certification license or to learn how to do the job safely and effectively, and/or to meet education needs for promotion. This is not a comprehensive wastewater treatment or collections manual.

This CEU course will review various Wastewater Collection methods and related subjects. This course is general in nature and not state specific, but will contain different; wastewater collection methods, rules, policies, electricity, pump, safety, operator certification and Lift Station information. You will not need any other materials for this course. Review of the dangers of trenching and excavation and related safety fundamentals. This course will cover the basic requirements of OSHA's Competent Person 29 CFR 1926.650 Subpart F and other related federal safety rules. The Competent Person Program, as it is called, will require formal training and on-the-job experience.

Final Examination for Credit

Opportunity to pass the final comprehensive examination is limited to three attempts per course enrollment.

Upon Successful Completion of this Course, You Will Receive

- 1.0 Continuing Education Unit/ Ten training hours depending upon your State's approval..
- A frameable certificate of competition.

Course Procedures for Registration and Support

All of Technical Learning College's distance learning courses have complete registration and support services offered. Delivery of services will include, e-mail, web site, telephone, fax and mail support. TLC will attempt immediate and prompt service. When a student registers for a correspondence course, he/she is assigned a start date and an end date. It is the student's responsibility to note dates for assignments and keep up with the course work. If a student falls behind, he/she must contact TLC and request an end date extension in order to complete the course. It is the prerogative of TLC to decide whether to grant the request. All students will be tracked by a unique number assigned to the student.

Instructions for Written Assignments

The Wastewater Collection CEU Training course uses a multiple choice style answer key. You can write your answers in this manual or type out your own answer key. TLC would prefer that you fill out and fax or e-mail the final examinations to TLC but it is not required.

Feedback Mechanism (examination procedures)

Each student will receive a feedback form as part of their study packet. You will be able to find this form in the front of the course assignment or lesson.

Security and Integrity

All students are required to do their own work. All lesson sheets and final exams are not returned to the student to discourage sharing of answers. Any fraud or deceit and the student will forfeit all fees and the appropriate agency will be notified.

Grading Criteria
TLC will offer the student either pass/fail or a standard letter grading assignment. If TLC is not notified, you will only receive a pass/fail notice.

Required Texts
The Wastewater Collection CEU training course will not require any other materials. This course comes complete. No other materials are needed.

Environmental Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms
TLC provides a glossary that defines, in non-technical language, commonly used environmental terms appearing in publications and materials. It also explains abbreviations and acronyms used throughout the EPA and other agencies. You can find the glossary in the rear of the manual.

Recordkeeping and Reporting Practices
TLC will keep all student records for a minimum of seven years. It is your responsibility to give the completion certificate to the appropriate agencies. TLC will mail a copy to Indiana, Pennsylvania DEP, and Texas TCEQ, and to any other State that will require a copy from the Training Provider.

ADA Compliance
TLC will make reasonable accommodations for persons with documented disabilities. Students should notify TLC and their instructors of any special needs. Course content may vary from this outline to meet the needs of this particular group.

Prerequisites: None

Note to students: Keep a copy of everything that you submit. If your work is lost you can submit your copy for grading. If you do not receive your certificate of completion or quiz results within two or three weeks after submitting it, please contact your instructor. We expect every student to produce his/her original, independent work.

Any student whose work indicates a violation of the Academic Misconduct Policy (cheating, plagiarism) can expect penalties as specified in the Student Handbook, which is available through Student Services; contact them at (928) 468-0665.

Continuing Education Units
You will have 90 days from receipt of this manual to complete it in order to receive your Continuing Education Units (**CEUs**) or Professional Development Hours (**PDHs**). A score of 70% or better is necessary to pass this course.

If you should need any assistance, please visit our Assistance Page on the website.

Please e-mail all concerns and the final test to info@tlch2o.com.

Educational Mission

The educational mission of TLC is:

To provide TLC students with comprehensive and ongoing training in the theory and skills needed for the environmental education field,

To provide TLC students with opportunities to apply and understand the theory and skills needed for operator certification,

To provide opportunities for TLC students to learn and practice environmental educational skills with members of the community for the purpose of sharing diverse perspectives and experience,

To provide a forum in which students can exchange experiences and ideas related to environmental education,

To provide a forum for the collection and dissemination of current information related to environmental education, and to maintain an environment that nurtures academic and personal growth.

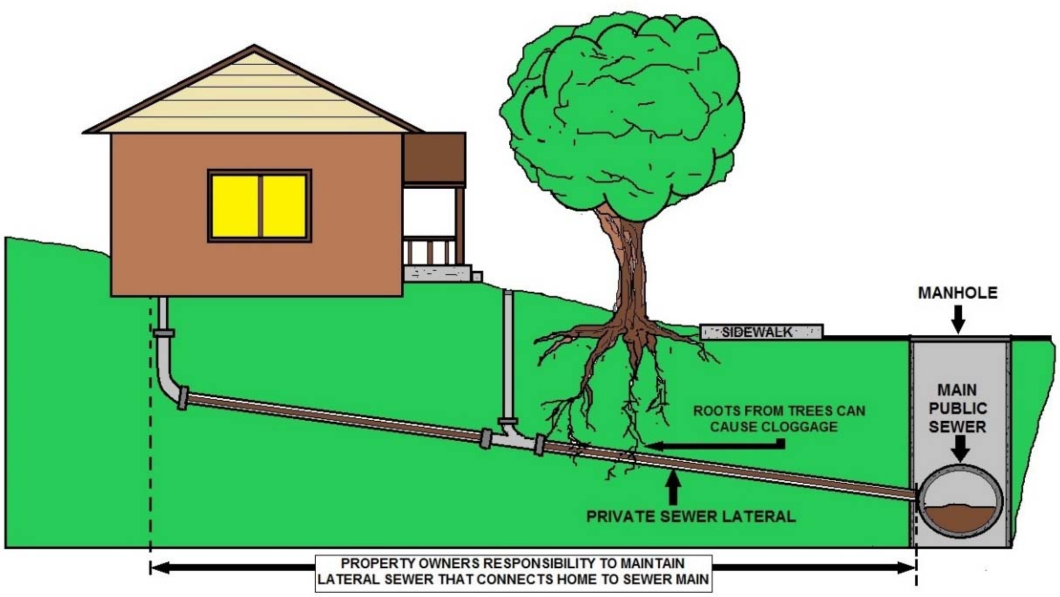


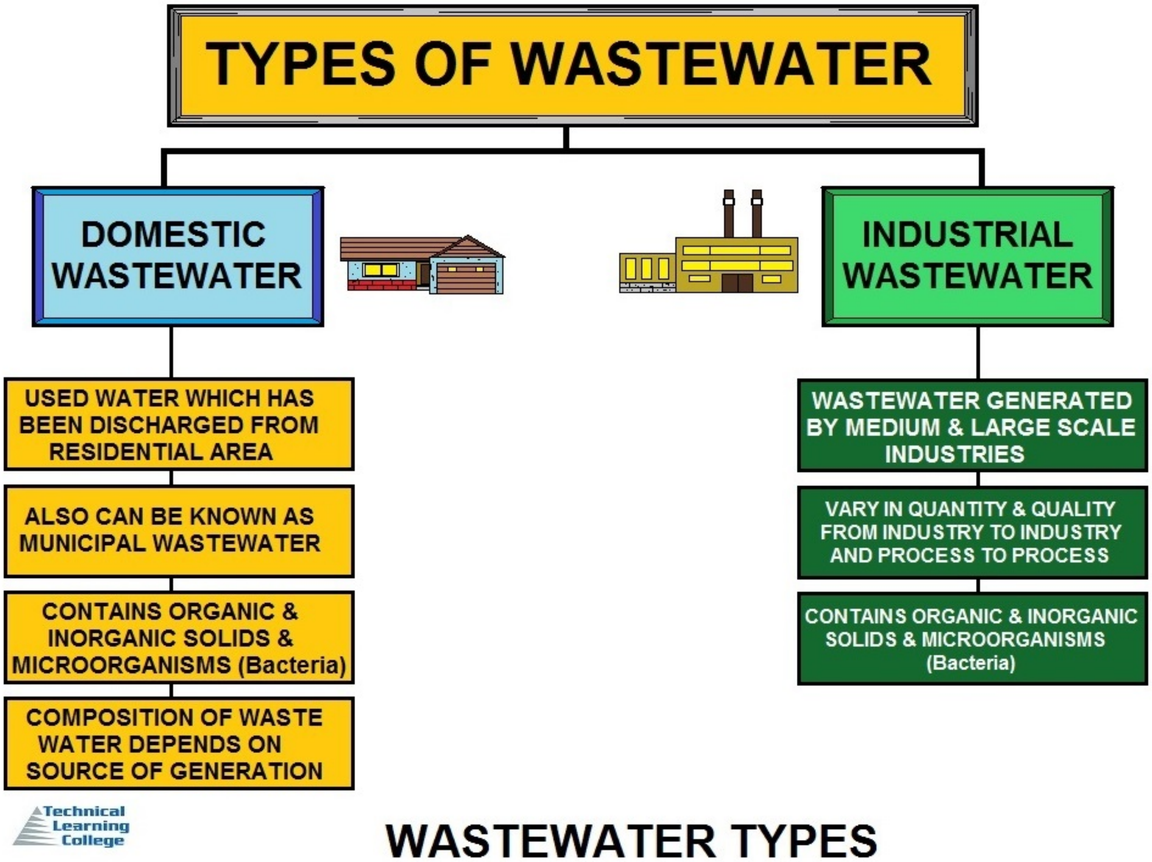
DIAGRAM OF SEWER LATERAL

Course Objective: To provide ten hours of continuing education training in effective and efficient wastewater collection methods, cleaning, rules, and generally accepted safety practices.

Competent Person
One who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions, which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees. Has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate hazards.

The Competent Person is trained and knowledgeable about soil analysis and the use of protective systems.

TABLE OF CONTENTS



WASTEWATER TYPES

Strange Stories from the Collections System

"City battles giant sewer blob" — this straight-out-of-science-fiction headline got us thinking about what goes on after we flush.

LEWISTON, Maine -- A large, mysterious blob has taken over a major sewer line in the city of Lewiston, leaving public works crews stumped as to how to budge it. According to city officials, the stretch of 12-inch pipe on Main Street backed up on Jan. 13, and the city has been trying unsuccessfully to clear the line ever since. Deputy Public Services Director Kevin Gagne told News 8 the doughy, 90-foot mass is comprised of grease, flour and rags. Gagne said the city has chosen to replace the 170-foot line at a cost of between $40,000 and $60,000. Work is expected to begin this week.

Alligators

Search tells us that, for the most part, the idea that alligators live in city sewers is an urban legend. Homeowners concerned about the state of their own pipes search for sewer cleaning and sewer cameras, while vacationers seek sewer tourism and other forms of urban exploration. Forget about alligators and rats; raccoons rule several sewers.

Comments: Believe it or not there is a grain of truth behind this legend, namely the documented capture of an eight-foot alligator at the bottom of an East Harlem manhole in 1935, though no one assumed that it actually lived down there. It was theorized at the time that the creature must have tumbled off a steamer visiting the northeast "from the mysterious Everglades, or thereabouts," and swam up the Harlem River. It met an unfortunate end at the hands of the teenage boys who found it.

Birth of an urban legend
The earliest published reference to alligators in the sewer -- in what Jan Harold Brunvand refers to as the "standardized" form of the urban legend ("baby alligator pets, flushed, thrived in sewers") -- can be found in the 1959 book, *The World Beneath the City*, a history of public utilities in New York City written by Robert Daley. Daley's source was a retired sewer official named Teddy May, who claimed that during his tenure in the 1930s he personally investigated workers' reports of subterranean saurians and saw a colony of them with his own eyes. He also claimed to have supervised their eradication. May was a colorful storyteller, if not a particularly reliable one.

'New York White'
The tale was well known throughout the United States by the late 1960s, when, according to folklorist Richard M. Dorson, it came to be associated with another icon of sewer lore, the mythical "New York White" -- an especially potent, albino strain of marijuana growing wild from seeds spilled out of baggies hastily flushed down toilets during drug raids. Not that anyone had ever actually seen the stuff, much less smoked it. It was impossible to harvest, you see, because of all the alligators down there.

The reason we speak of all this as folklore, not fact, is that herpetologists pooh-pooh the very idea of alligators thriving in the New York City sewer system. It's cold down there most of the time, they point out -- freezing cold during the winter -- and alligators require a warm environment year-round to survive, much less reproduce and burgeon into colonies. And if the cold didn't kill them off, the polluted sewer water certainly would.

Actual New York City gator sightings:
Adding fodder to the legend is the intriguing fact that wayward alligators -- escaped or abandoned pets, we assume -- do occasionally turn up in the streets of New York City, never failing to cause a ruckus.

For example:
November 2006 - A two-foot-long caiman is captured outside an apartment building in Brooklyn. Police say it "snapped and hissed" at them.
June 2001 - A small alligator (actually a caiman, as it turned out) was spotted and eventually captured in Central Park.

The experts speak:
"I would bring leftovers from lunch, a long line and a hook, and spend a part of each day in the sewers looking for alligators. I saw rats, cockroaches — probably caught a lot of sicknesses — but I never saw anything like an alligator."
— Frank Indiviglio, herpetologist

"It’s like the Loch Ness Monster or the Big Foot. People believe in those stories up to a point that it does make sense."
— Esteban Rodriguez, NYC sewer worker

Wastewater Collection System Introduction

Every house, restaurant, business, and industry produces waste. Wastewater collection protects public health and the environment by removing this infectious waste and recycling the water. A network of interconnected pipes accepts the flow from each building's sewer connection and delivers it to the treatment facilities. In addition to what homes and businesses flush down the drain, the system also collects excess groundwater, infiltration liquids, and inflow water. Wastewater collection is therefore a comprehensive liquid waste removal system.

The fluid waste distributed through this system is about 98% water. The waste floats on, is carried along by, and goes into suspension or solution in water. Possible waste includes anything that can be flushed down the drain--human excretion, body fluids, paper products, soaps and detergents, foods, fats, oil, grease, paints, chemicals, hazardous materials, solvents, disposable and flushable items; the list is almost infinite. This mixture of water and wastes is called *"wastewater."* In the past, it was known as *"sewage,"* but this term is now falling out of favor because it refers specifically to domestic sanitary wastewater, like toilet flushing, which represents only a portion of the entire fluid waste content.

"Wastewater" is a more accurate description and has become the standard term for this fluid waste because it encompasses the total slurry of wastes in water that is gathered from homes and businesses.

Types of Sewer Systems

Centralized sewer systems are generally broken out into three different categories: sanitary sewers, storm sewers, and combined sewers. Sanitary sewers carry wastewater or sewage from homes and businesses to treatment plants. Underground sanitary sewer pipes can clog or break, causing unintentional *"overflows"* of raw sewage that flood basements and streets. Storm sewers are designed to quickly get rainwater off the streets during rain events. Chemical, trash and debris from lawns, parking lots, and streets are washed by the rain into the storm sewer drains. Most storm sewers do not connect with a treatment plant, but instead drain directly into nearby rivers, lakes, or oceans. Combined sewers carry both wastewater and storm water in the same pipe. Most of the time, combined sewers transport the wastewater and storm water to a treatment plant.

However, when there is too much rain, combined sewer systems cannot handle the extra volume and designed "overflows" of raw sewage into streams and rivers occur. The great majority of sewer systems have separated, not combined, sanitary and storm water pipes. According to a recent Clean Water Needs Survey conducted by the USEPA, by the year 2016, the U.S. will have to invest more than $10 billion to upgrade existing wastewater collection systems, over $20 billion for new sewer construction, and nearly $44 billion to improve sewer overflows, to effectively serve the projected population. As the infrastructure in the United States and other parts of the world ages, increasing importance is being placed on rehabilitating wastewater collection systems. Cracks, settling, tree root intrusion, and other disturbances that develop over time deteriorate pipelines and other conveyance structures that comprise wastewater collection systems, including stormwater, sanitary, and combined sewers.

Leaking, overflowing, and insufficient wastewater collection systems can release untreated wastewater into receiving waters. Outdated pump stations, undersized to carry sewage from newly developed subdivisions or commercial areas, can also create a potential overflow hazard, adversely affecting human health and degrading the water quality of receiving waters. The maintenance of the sewer system is therefore a continuous, never-ending cycle.

As sections of the system age, problems such as corroded concrete pipe, cracked tile, lost joint integrity, grease, and heavy root intrusion must be constantly monitored and repaired. Technology has improved collection system maintenance with such tools as television camera assisted line inspection equipment, jet-cleaning trucks, and improvements in pump design. Because of the increasing complexity of wastewater collection systems, collection system maintenance is evolving into a highly skilled trade.

Collection system operators are charged with protecting public health and the environment, and therefore must have documented proof of their certifications in the respective wastewater management systems. These professionals ensure that the system pipes remain clear and open. They eliminate obstructions and are constantly striving to improve flow characteristics. They keep the wastewater moving underground, unseen and unheard. Because this wastewater collection system and the professionals who maintain it operate at such a high level of efficiency, problems are very infrequent. So much so that the public often takes the wastewater collection system for granted. In truth, these operators must work hard to keep it functioning properly.

Characteristics of Domestic Wastewater

- ***Mostly water -- 99.95% pure water***
- ***What is the 0.05%?***
    - Large Solids -- rags, wigs, sticks, shoes, etc.
    - Small Solids -- grit (sand, garbage, etc.)
    - Suspended Solids -- bacteria, feces are 30 - 60% by weight bacteria
    - Dissolved Material
        - Organic (Biochemical Oxygen Demand, BOD)
        - Ammonia (Nitrogenous Oxygen Demand, NOD)
        - Inorganic (Metals and nutrients like nitrogen and phosphorus)
        - Other Organic (not decomposable)
    - Pathogens

Sewer Main
In a centralized wastewater treatment system, the sewer to which sewer connections are made from individual residences.

Trunk Lines
Sewer pipes measuring more than 12 inches in diameter and having a capacity of 1 to 10 million gallons per day. Trunk lines connect smaller sewer pipes, or collectors, to the largest transport pipes or interceptors.

Collectors
Small sewer pipes measuring twelve inches or less in diameter.

Glossary of Commonly Used Acronyms and Terms

LIST OF ACRONYMS

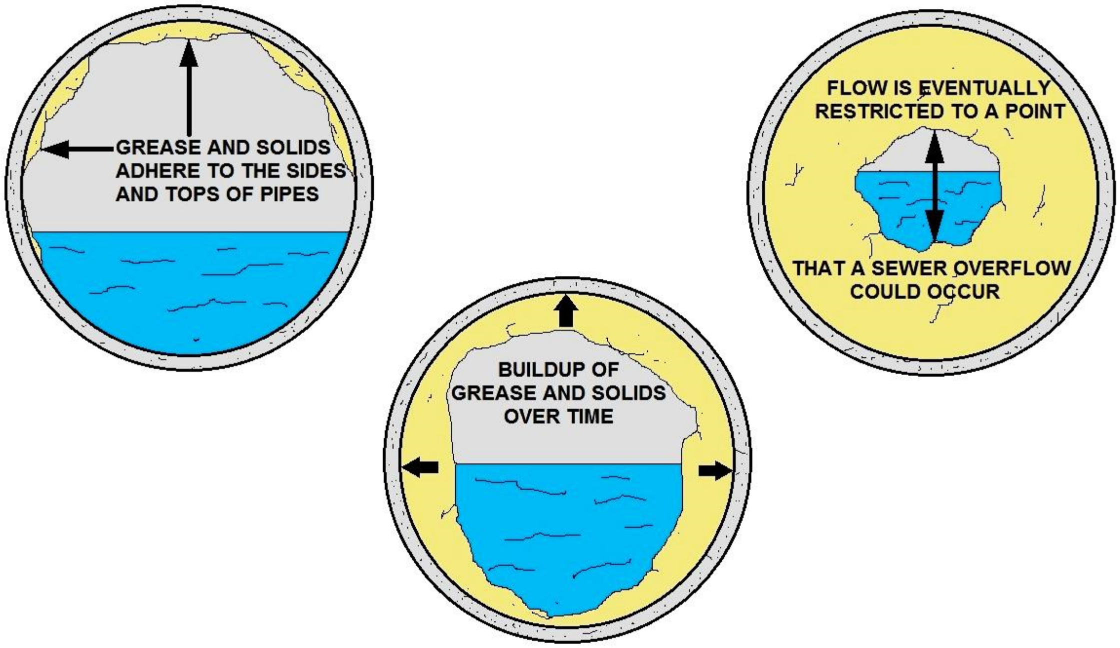
AMS	Asset Management System
APP	Aquifer Protection Permit
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
CADD	Computer-Aided Drafting and Design
CCTV	Closed-Circuit Television
CIP	Capital Improvement Plan or capital improvement project
CIPP	Cured-In-Place Pipe
CMMS	Computerized Maintenance Management System
CMOM	Capacity, Management, Operation and Maintenance
COOL	Computerized On-line Operations Log
CPM	Capital Project Management
CWA	Clean Water Act
d/D	depth divided by diameter
DIP	Ductile Iron Pipe
DVD	Digital Video Disk
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
ERP	Enterprise Resource Planning Software; Emergency Response Plan
FOG	Fats, Oil, and Grease
fps	Feet per second
GIS	Geographic Information System
gpm	Gallons per minute
GPS	Global positioning system
HVAC	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
I/I	Infiltration and Inflow
IAS	Information Access System
IGA	Intergovernmental Agreement
IT	Information Technology
JEPA	Joint Exercise of Powers Agreement (SROG)
lf	Linear Feet
mgd	Million gallons per day
NOI	Notice of Intent
NOV	Notice of Violation
NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
PLC	Programmable Logic Controller
POTW	Publicly-Owned Treatment Works
Psi	Pounds per square inch

LIST OF ACRONYMS (continued)

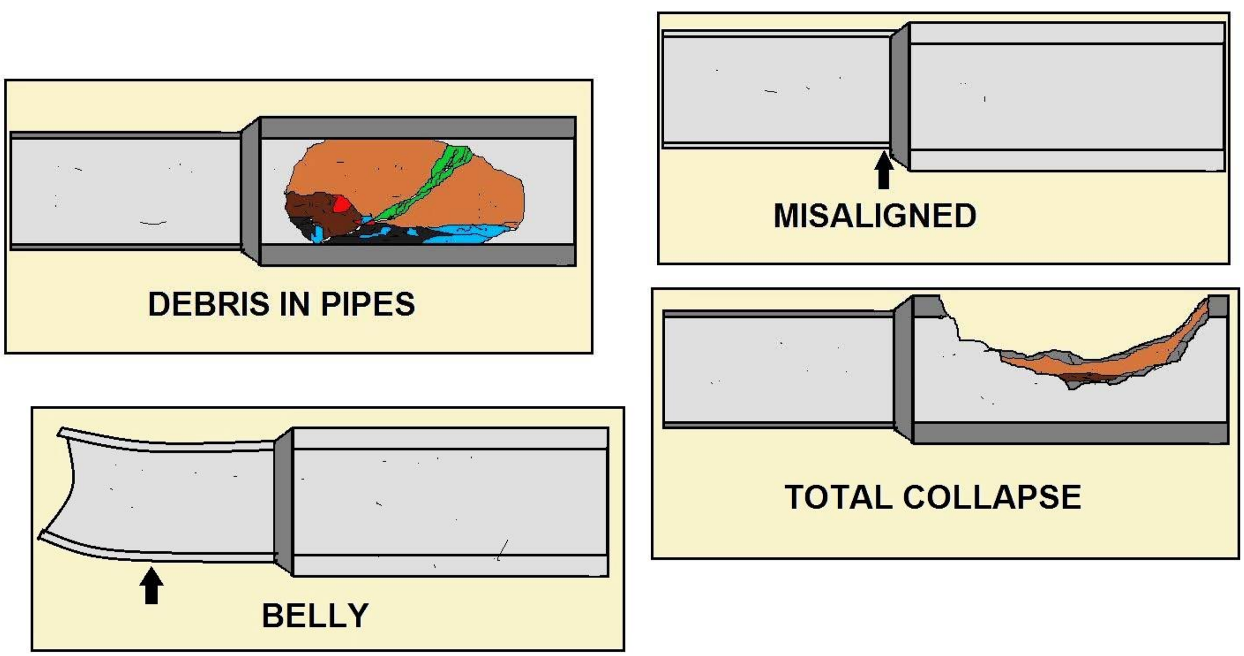
PVC	Polyvinyl Chloride
RDBMS	Relational Database Management System
RFQ	Request for Qualifications
SAI	Southern Avenue Interceptor
SDR35	Standard Dimension Ratio 35
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SECAP	System Evaluation and Capacity Assurance Plan
SIU	Significant Industrial User
SROG	Sub-Regional Operating Group
SSO	Sanitary Sewer Overflow
SSORP	Sanitary Sewer Overflow Response Plan
VCC	Virtual Call Center
VCP	Vitrified Clay Pipe
WO	Work order
WRF	Water Reclamation Facility
WRP	Water Reclamation Plant
WTP	Water Treatment Plant
WWTF	Wastewater Treatment Facilities (may include WWTP and WRP)
WWTP	Wastewater Treatment Plant

Looking down inside a greasy lift station. Photograph credit John Bougham.

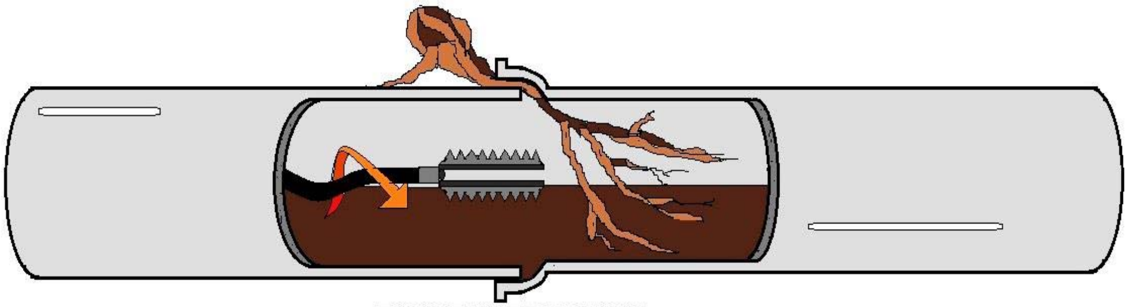
Sewer Problem and Solution Diagrams



EFFECTS OF GREASE AND SOLIDS ON SEWER FLOW

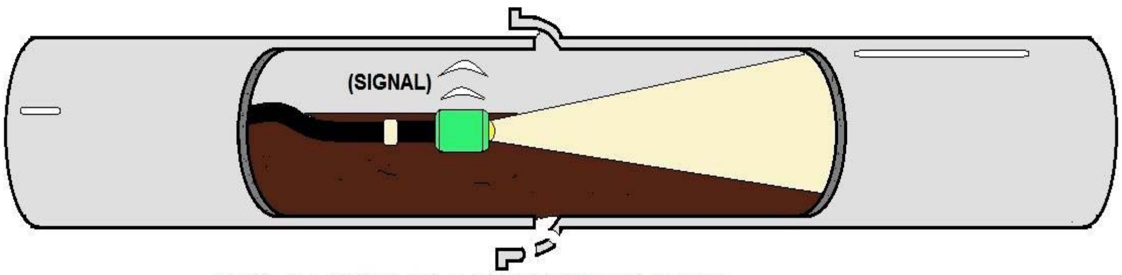


DAMAGED SEWER PIPE EXAMPLES



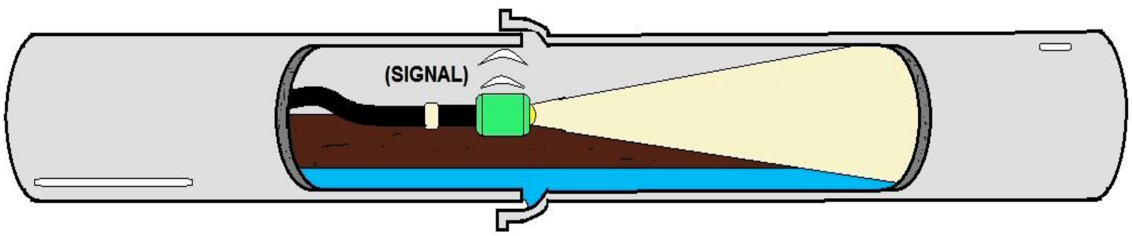
ROOT INTRUSION

(CLEANED WITH A CABLE FITTED WITH A ROOT-CUTTING BLADE)



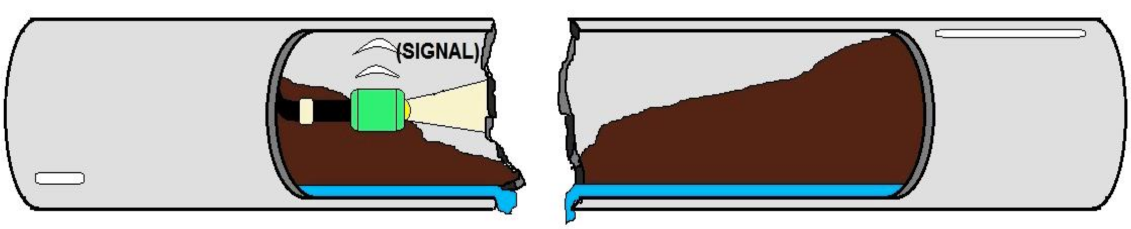
MIS-ALIGNED / CRACKED PIPE

(A CAMERA IS USED TO SHOW THE LOCATION OF THE PROBLEM VIA A SIGNAL)



PIPE WITH A BELLY

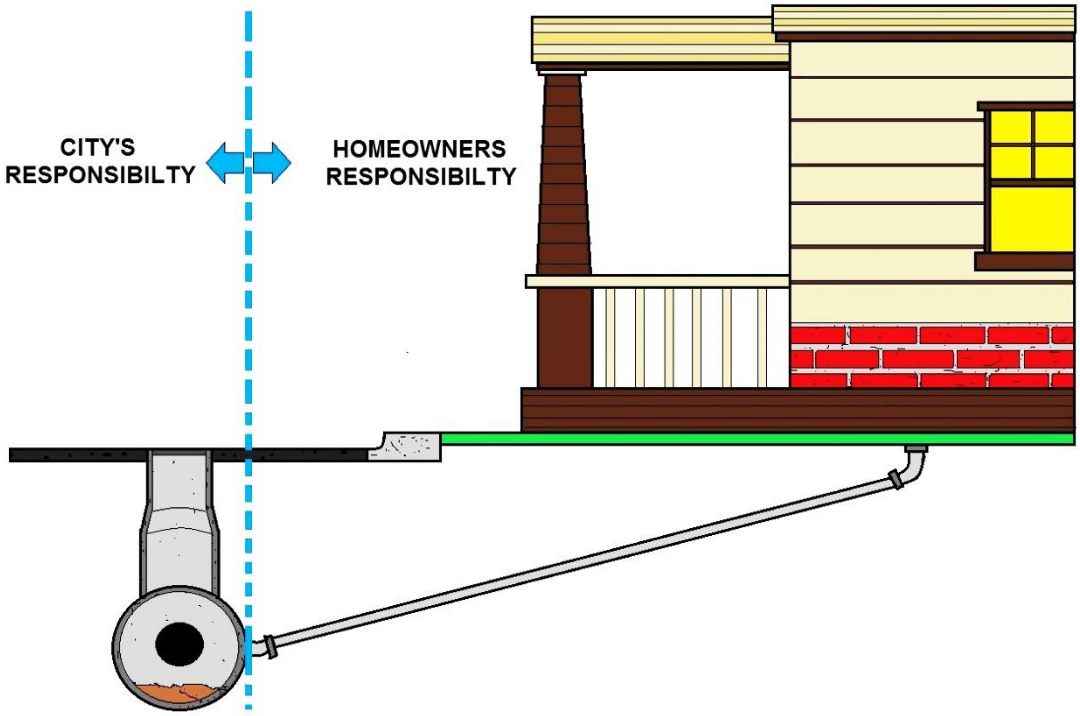
(A CAMERA IS USED TO SHOW THE LOCATION OF THE PROBLEM VIA A SIGNAL)



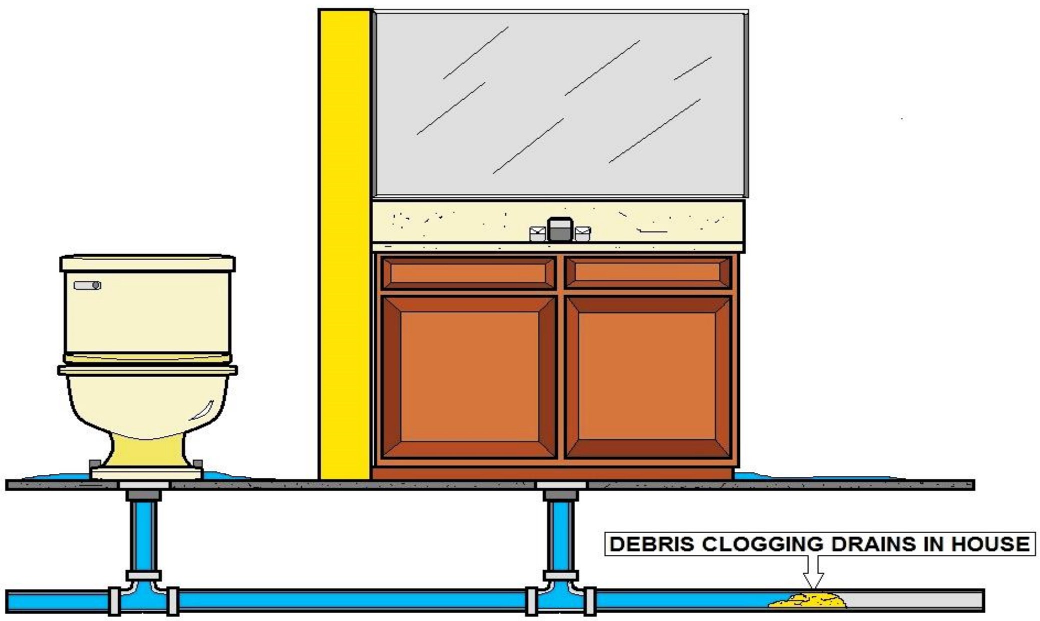
PIPE THAT HAS BEEN CRUSHED

(A CAMERA IS USED TO SHOW THE LOCATION OF THE PROBLEM VIA A SIGNAL)

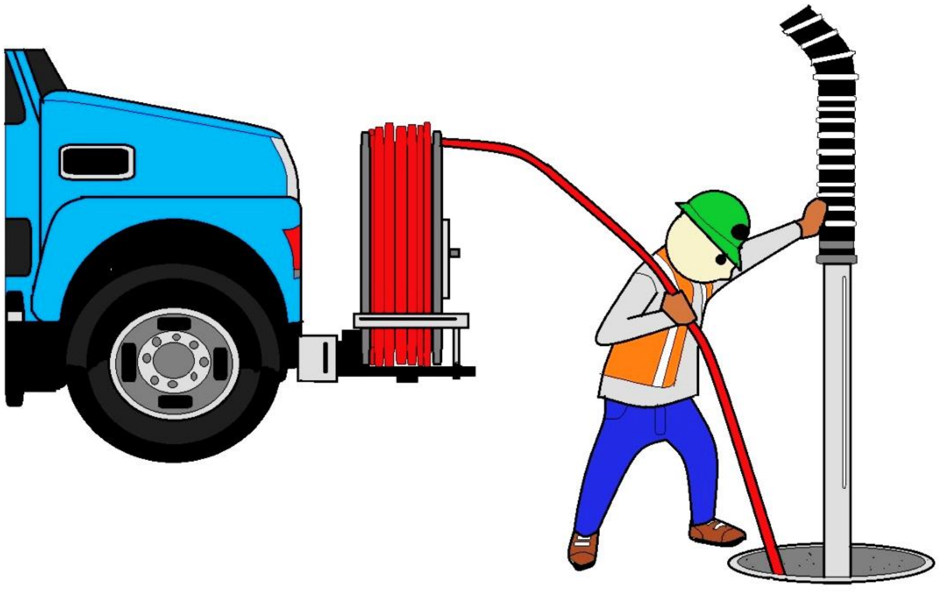
PROBLEMS IN SEWER PIPING



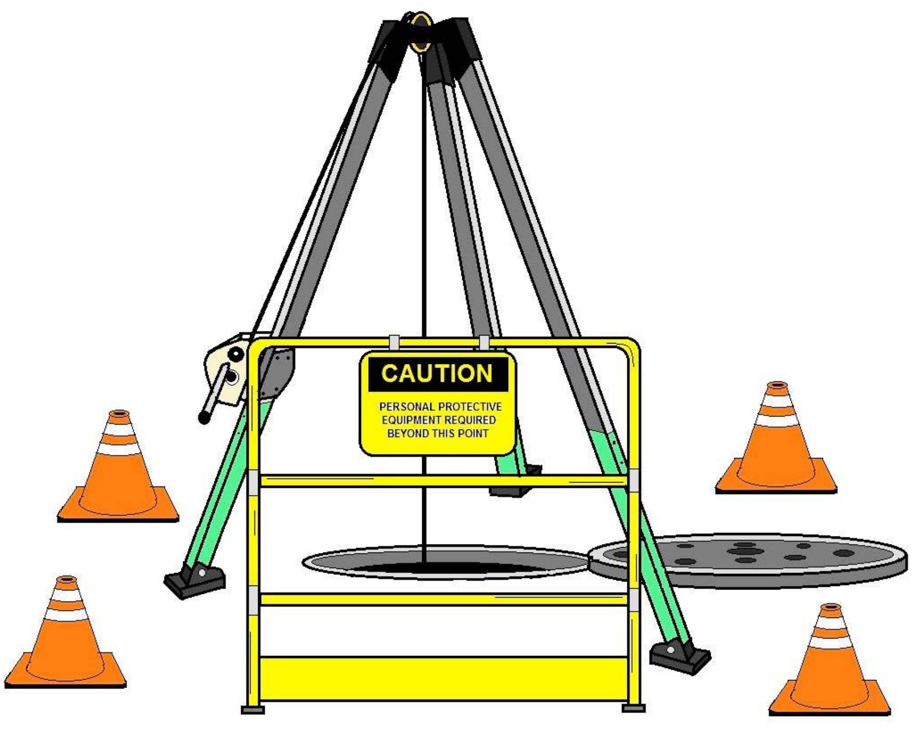
DESIGNATING SEWER MAINTENANCE RESPONSIBILTY



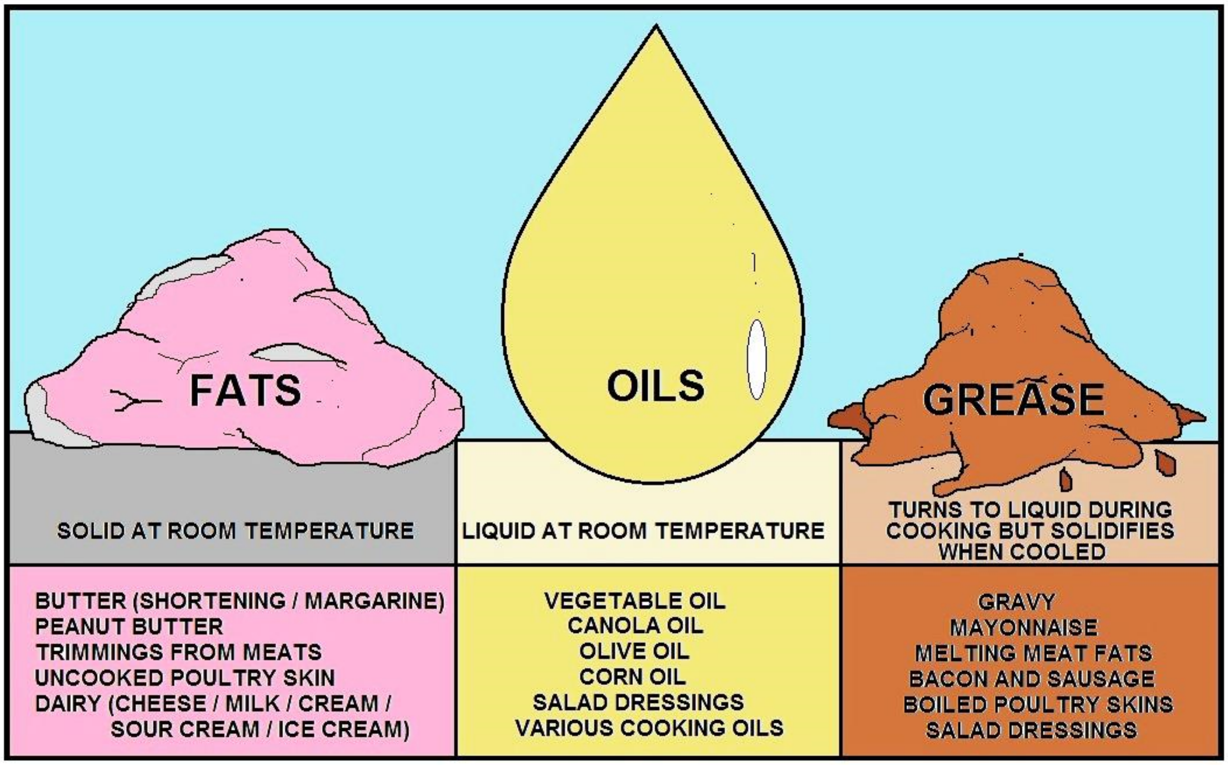
CLOGGED SEWER LINE IN HOUSE



USING A VACUUM TRUCK TO CLEAN SEWER

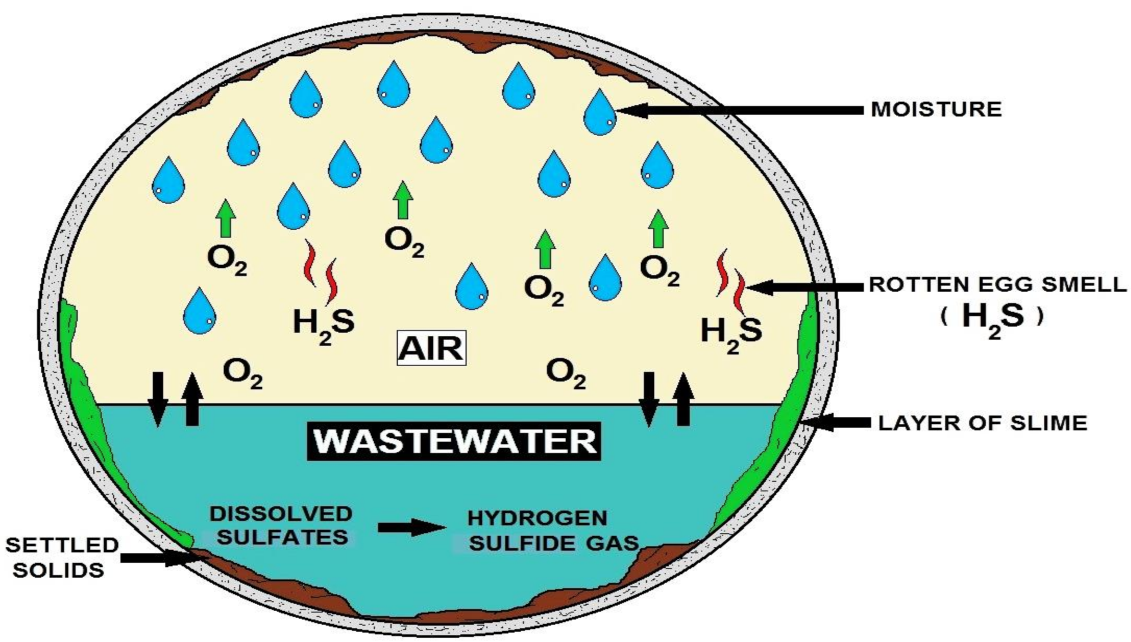


SAFETY EQUIPMENT TO ENTER A SEWER SAFELY

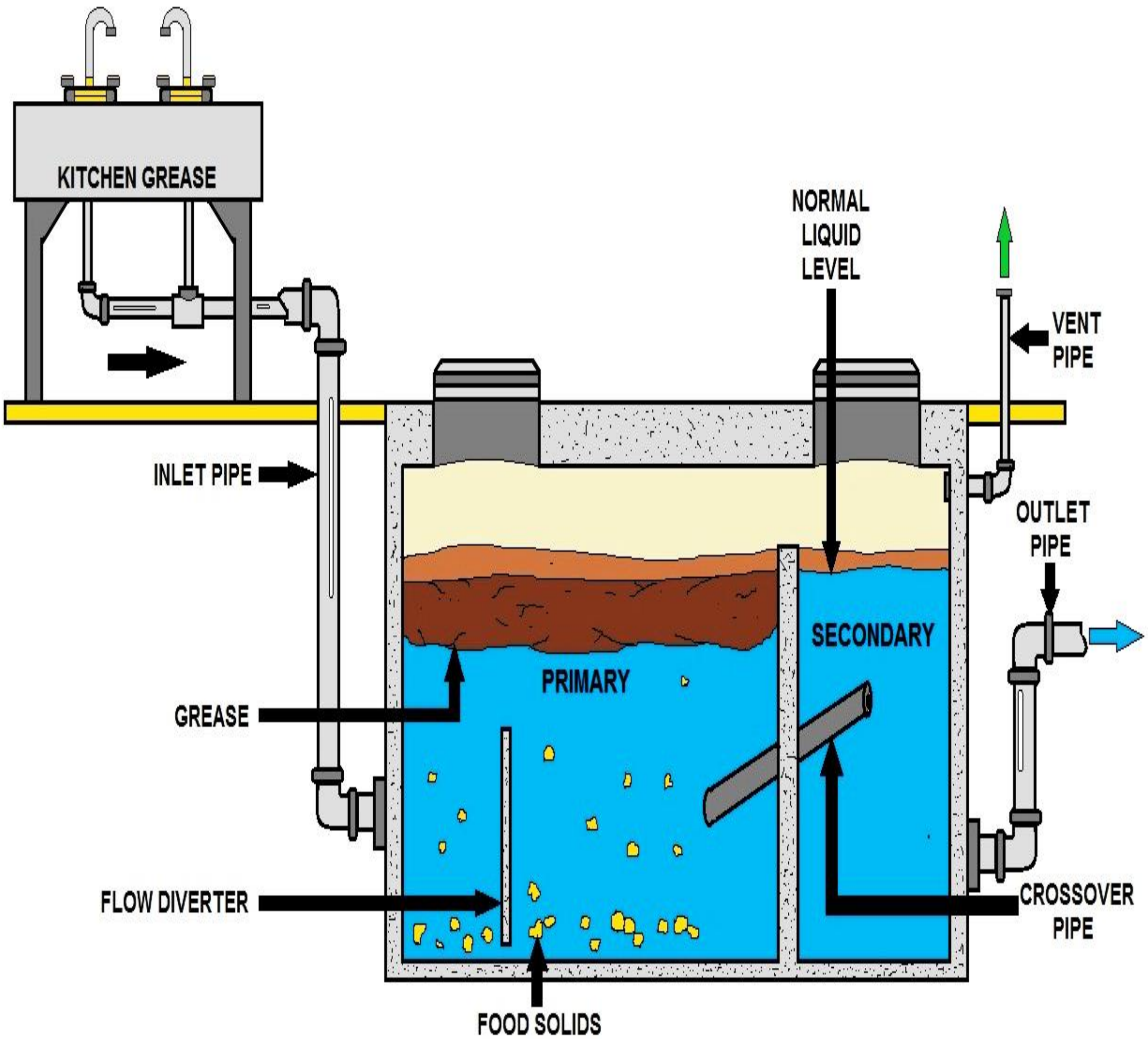


FOG (Fats / Oils / Grease) CONTRIBUTORS

H_2S BACTERIA + $2O_2$ = SULFURIC ACID → CORROSION

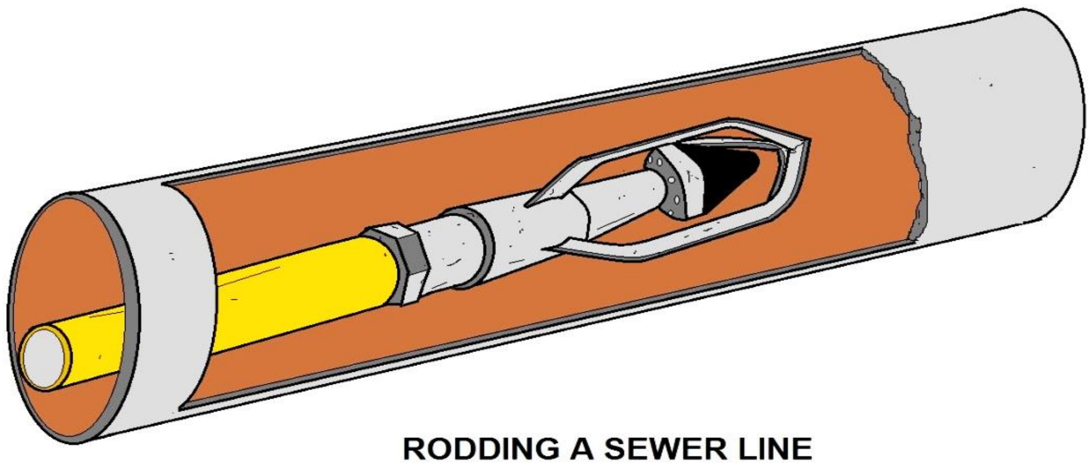


HOW CORROSION FORMS IN SEWER PIPING



EXAMPLE OF HOW A GREASE TRAP WORKS

Commonly Found Sewer Technology Uses and Applications

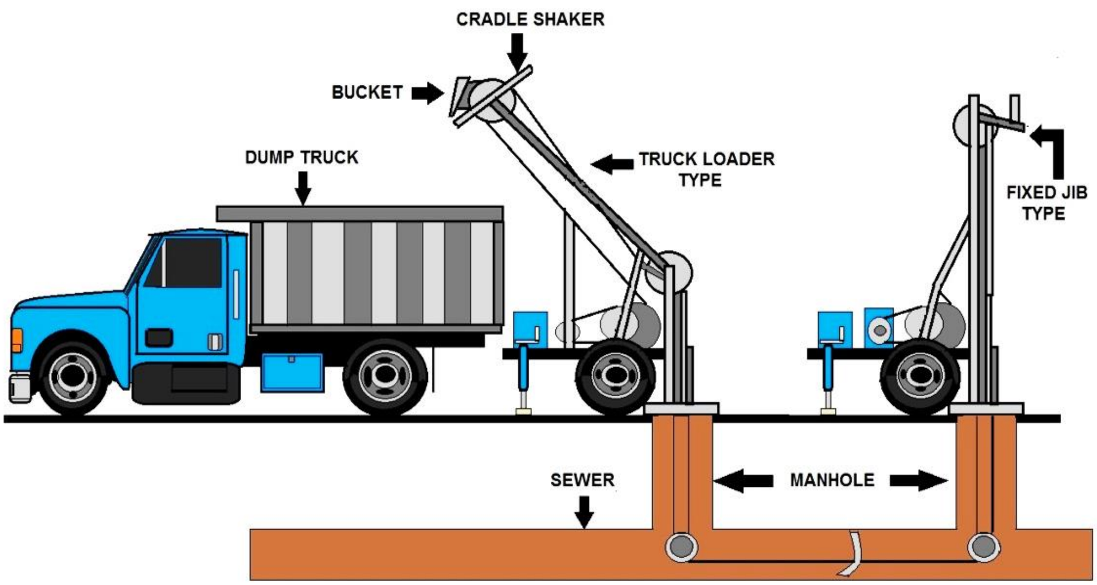


RODDING A SEWER LINE

Mechanical

Rodding

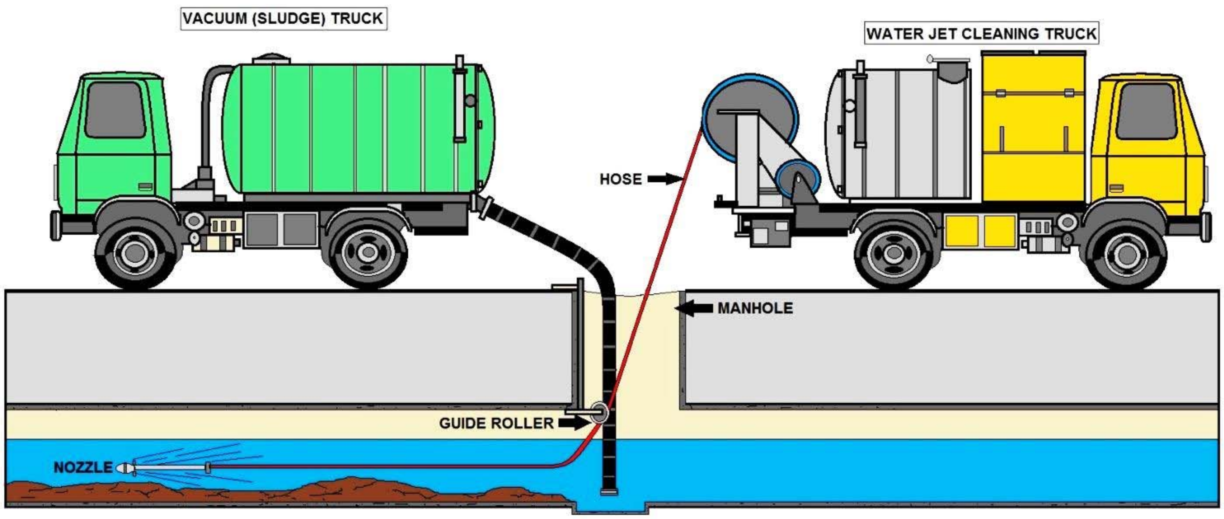
• Uses an engine and a drive unit with continuous rods or sectional rods.
• As blades rotate they break up grease deposits, cut roots, and loosen debris.
• Rodders also help thread the cables used for TV inspections and bucket machines.
• Most effective in lines up to 12 inches in diameter.



TRAILER MOUNTED BUCKET MACHINES

Bucket Machine

• Cylindrical device, closed on one end with 2 opposing hinged jaws at the other.
• Jaws open and scrape off the material and deposit it in the bucket.
• Partially removes large deposits of silt, sand, gravel, and some types of solid waste.



HYDRAULIC SEWER CLEANING PROCESS

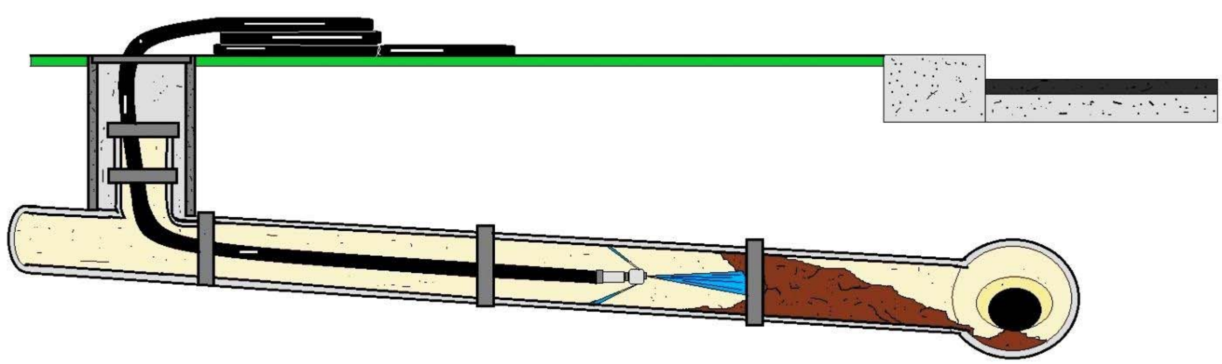
Hydraulic

Balling

• A threaded rubber cleaning ball that spins and scrubs the pipe interior as flow increases in the sewer line.
• Removes deposits of settled inorganic material and grease build-up.
• Most effective in sewers ranging in size from 5-24 inches.

Flushing

• Introduces a heavy flow of water into the line at a manhole.
• Removes floatables and some sand and grit.
• Most effective when used in combination with other mechanical operations, such as rodding or bucket machine cleaning.

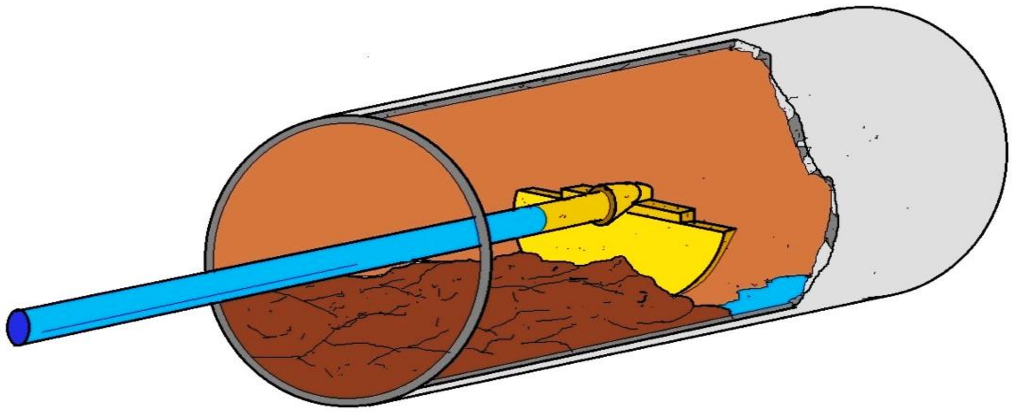


JETTING A SEWER LINE

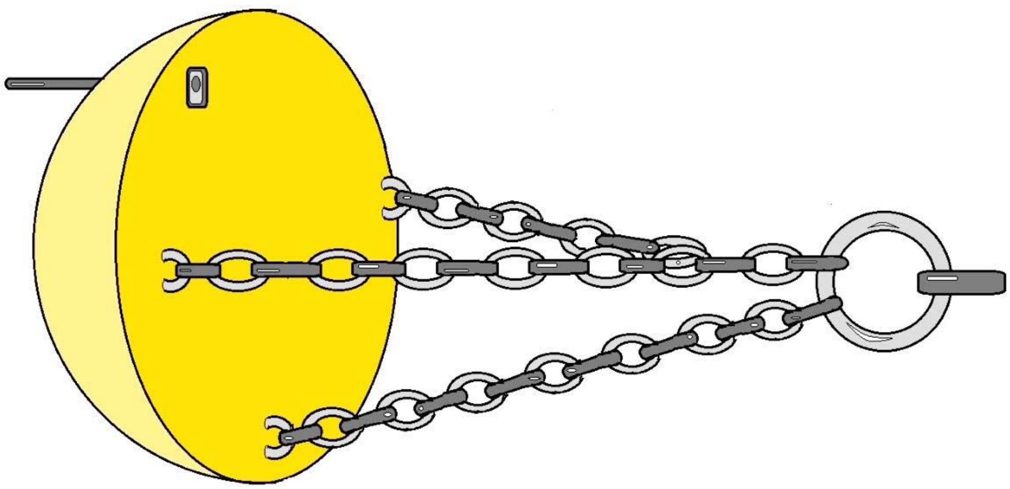
Jetting

• Directs high velocities of water against pipe walls.
• Removes debris and grease build-up, clears blockages, and cuts roots within small diameter pipes.
• Efficient for routine cleaning of small diameter, low flow sewers.

Sewer Cleaning Technology Applications



DROP SCRAPER



SEWER SCRAPER

Scooter

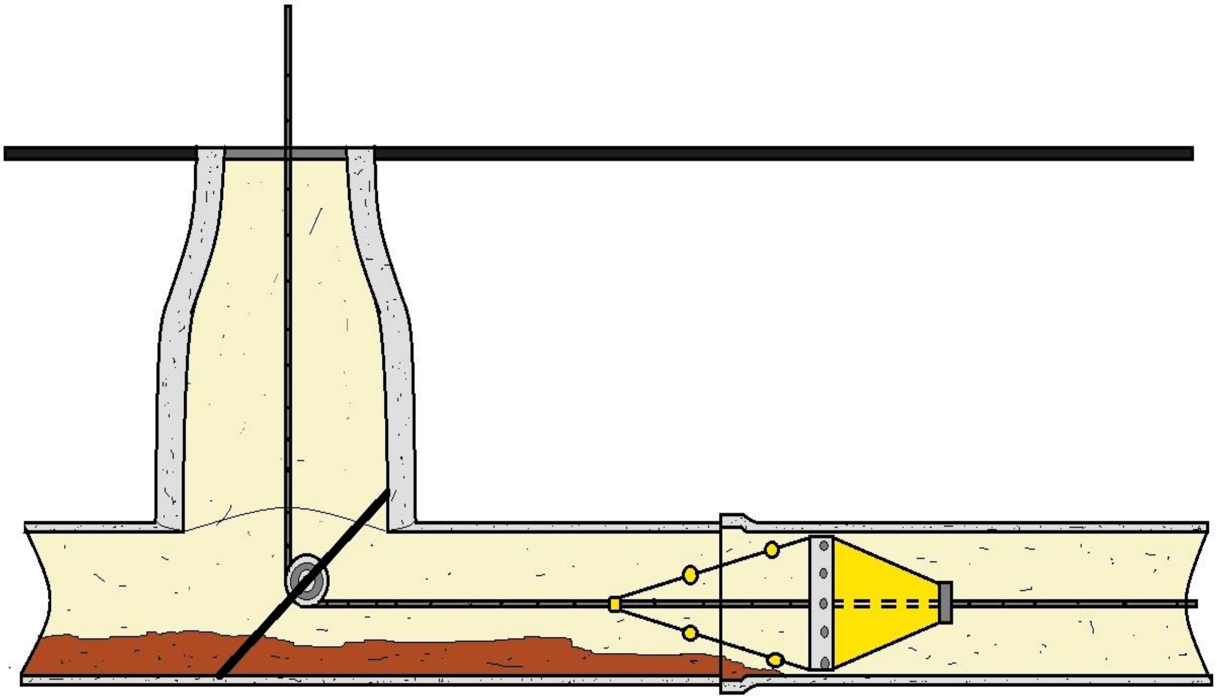
• Round, rubber-rimmed, hinged metal shield that is mounted on a steel framework on small wheels. The shield works as a plug to build a head of water.
• Scours the inner walls of the pipe lines.
• Effective in removing heavy debris and cleaning grease from line.

Kites, Bags, and Poly Pigs

• Similar in function to the ball.
• Rigid rims on bag and kite induce a scouring action.
• Effective in moving accumulations of decayed debris and grease downstream.

Silt Traps

• Collect sediments at convenient locations.
• Must be emptied on a regular basis as part of the maintenance program.



SEWER KITE

Grease Traps and Sand/Oil Interceptors

• The ultimate solution to grease build-up is to trap and remove it.
• These devices are required by some uniform building codes and/or sewer-use ordinances. Typically sand/oil interceptors are required for automotive business discharge.
• Need to be thoroughly cleaned to function properly.
• Cleaning frequency varies from twice a month to once every 6 months, depending on the amount of grease in the discharge.
• Need to educate restaurant and automobile businesses about the need to maintain these traps.

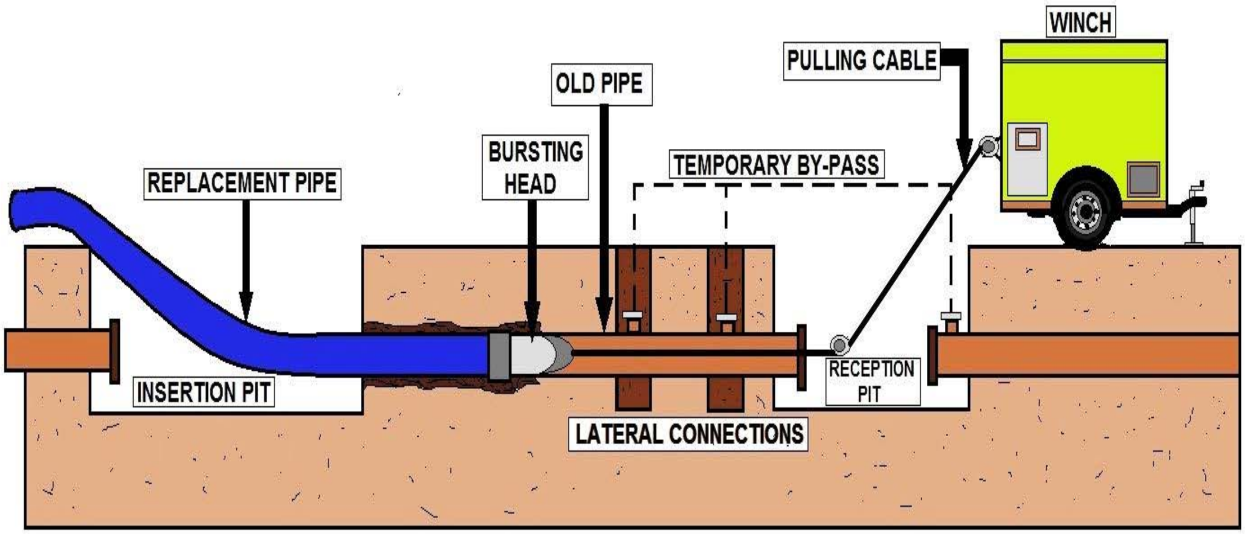
Chemicals

Before using these chemicals review the Safety Data Sheets (SDS) and consult the local authorities on the proper use of chemicals as per local ordinance and the proper disposal of the chemicals used in the operation. If assistance or guidance is needed regarding the application of certain chemicals, contact the U.S. EPA or state water pollution control agency.

• Used to control roots, grease, odors (H_2S gas), concrete corrosion, rodents and insects.
• *Root Control* - longer lasting effects than power rodder (approximately 2-5 years).
• *H_2S gas* - some common chemicals used are chlorine (Cl_2), hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), pure Oxygen (O_2), air, lime ($Ca(OH_2)$), sodium hydroxide (NaOH), and iron salts.
• *Grease and soap problems* - some common chemicals used are bioacids, digester, enzymes, bacteria cultures, catalysts, caustics, hydroxides, and neutralizers.

Source: Information provided by Arbour and Kerri, 1997 and Sharon, 1989.

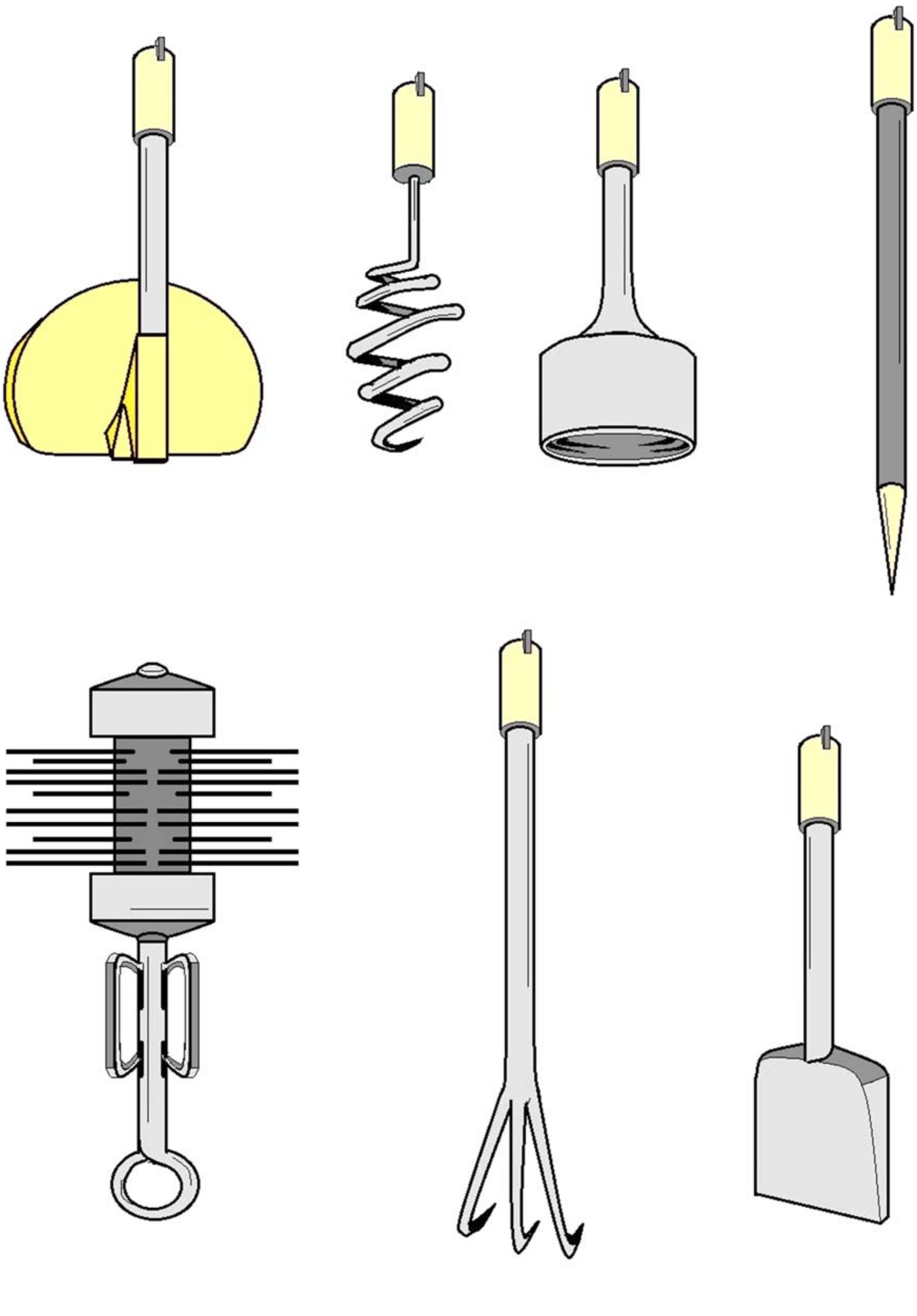
Sewer Cleaning Procedure Diagrams



TRENCHLESS PIPE REPLACEMENT

Most cities that take advantage of sewer cleaning procedures are able to determine that as the maintenance frequency increased, there was an increase in system performance. Garland recommended 70 inspections and maintenance activities for every 30 cleanings. Inspections are considered more important because they help define and prevent future problems. A study performed by the American Society of Civil Engineers reports that the most important maintenance activities are cleaning and CCTV inspections. A maintenance plan attempts to develop a strategy and priority for maintaining pipes based on several of the following factors:

- Problems- frequency and location; 80 percent of problems occur in 25 percent of the system (Hardin and Messer, 1997).
- Age- older systems have a greater risk of deterioration than newly constructed sewers.
- Construction material- pipes constructed of materials that are susceptible to corrosion have a greater potential of deterioration and potential collapse. Non-reinforced concrete pipes, brick pipes, and asbestos cement pipes are examples of pipes susceptible to corrosion.
- Pipe diameter/volume conveyed- pipes that carry larger volumes take precedence over pipes that carry a smaller volume.
- Location- pipes located on shallow slopes or in flood prone areas have a higher priority.
- Force main vs. gravity-force mains have a higher priority than gravity, size for size, due to the complexity of the cleaning and repairs.
- Subsurface conditions- depth to groundwater, depth to bedrock, soil properties (classification, strength, porosity, compressibility, frost susceptibility, erodibility, and pH).
- Corrosion potential- Hydrogen Sulfide (H_2S) is responsible for corroding sewers, structures, and equipment used in wastewater collection systems. The interior conditions of the pipes need to be monitored and treatment needs to be implemented to prevent the growth of slime bacteria and the production of H_2S gases.



SEWER CLEANING TOOLS

Wastewater Collection Rules and Regulations
Chapter 1

Rule to Protect Communities from Overflowing Sewers

The Environmental Protection Agency (**EPA**) has clarified and expanded permit requirements under the Clean Water Act for 19,000 municipal sanitary sewer collection systems in order to reduce sanitary sewer overflows.

The requirements will help communities improve some of our Nation's most valuable infrastructure –our wastewater collection systems–by requiring facilities to develop and implement new capacity, management, operation, and maintenance programs and public notification programs.

The 19,000 systems covered by this rule include 4,800 municipal satellite collection systems which will be directly regulated under the Clean Water Act for the first time. These requirements will result in fewer sewer overflows, leading to healthier communities, fewer beach closures, and fish and shellfish that are safer to eat.

Top photo: Various pump damage from undesirable materials in the sewer system. Bottom photo, heavy grease from not being regularly pumped. Photograph credit John Bougham.

Clean Water Act (Rule) Summary

33 U.S.C. s/s 1251 et seq. (1977)

The Clean Water Act is a 1977 amendment to the Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972, which set the basic structure for regulating discharges of pollutants to waters of the United States.

The law gave EPA the authority to set effluent standards on an industry basis (technology-based) and continued the requirements to set water quality standards for all contaminants in surface waters. The CWA makes it unlawful for any person to discharge any pollutant from a point source into navigable waters unless a permit (NPDES) is obtained under the Act.

The 1977 amendments focused on toxic pollutants. In 1987, the CWA was reauthorized and again focused on toxic substances, authorized citizen suit provisions, and funded sewage treatment plants (POTW's) under the Construction Grants Program.

The CWA provides for the delegation by the EPA of many permitting, administrative, and enforcement aspects of the law to state governments. In states with the authority to implement CWA programs, the EPA still retains oversight responsibilities.

In 1972, Congress enacted the first comprehensive national clean water legislation in response to growing public concern for serious and widespread water pollution. The Clean Water Act is the primary federal law that protects our nation’s waters, including lakes, rivers, aquifers, and coastal areas. Lake Erie was dying. The Potomac River was clogged with blue-green algae blooms that were a nuisance and a threat to public health.

Many of the nation's rivers were little more than open sewers and sewage frequently washed up on shore. Fish kills were a common sight. Wetlands were disappearing at a rapid rate. Today, the quality of our waters has improved dramatically as a result of a cooperative effort by federal, state, tribal and local governments to implement the pollution control programs established in 1972 by the Clean Water Act.

The Clean Water Act's primary objective is to restore and maintain the integrity of the nation's waters. This objective translates into two fundamental national goals:

- eliminate the discharge of pollutants into the nation's waters, and
- achieve water quality levels that are fishable and swimmable.

The Clean Water Act focuses on improving the quality of the nation’s waters. It provides a comprehensive framework of standards, technical tools and financial assistance to address the many causes of pollution and poor water quality, including municipal and industrial wastewater discharges, polluted runoff from urban and rural areas, and habitat destruction.

For example, the Clean Water Act requires major industries to meet performance standards to ensure pollution control; charges states and tribes with setting specific water quality criteria appropriate for their waters and developing pollution control programs to meet them, provides funding to states and communities to help them meet their clean water infrastructure needs; protects valuable wetlands and other aquatic habitats through a permitting process that ensures development and other activities are conducted in an environmentally sound manner. After 25 years, the Act continues to provide a clear path for clean water, and a solid foundation for an effective national water program.

In 1972
Only a third of the nation's waters were safe for fishing and swimming. Wetlands losses were estimated at about 460,000 acres annually. Agricultural runoff resulted in the erosion of 2.25 billion tons of soil and the deposit of large amounts of phosphorus and nitrogen into many waters. Sewage treatment plants served only 85 million people.

Today
Two-thirds of the nation's waters are safe for fishing and swimming. The rate of annual wetlands losses is estimated at about 70,000-90,000 acres according to recent studies. The amount of soil lost due to agricultural runoff has been cut by one billion tons annually, and phosphorus and nitrogen levels in water sources are down. Modern wastewater treatment facilities serve 173 million people.

The Future
All Americans will enjoy clean water that is safe for fishing and swimming. We will achieve a net gain of wetlands by preventing additional losses and restoring hundreds of thousands of acres of wetlands.

Soil erosion and runoff of phosphorus and nitrogen into watersheds will be minimized, helping to sustain the nation's farming economy and aquatic systems. The nation's waters will be free of effects of sewage discharges.

Here is a large sewer main pipe with damage caused by Hydrogen Sulfide gas; once H_2S touches water, it creates Sulfuric Acid or H_2SO_4 which destroys the inside of concrete pipes.

CMOM - "Capacity, Management, Operation and Maintenance"

Proper function of sanitary sewer systems is vital to protect public health, property, and waterways in the surrounding area. Most utilities have a management, operation, and maintenance (MOM) plan to ensure their system is in working order.

However, more than 40,000 sanitary sewage overflows SSOs occur every year, causing huge monetary losses, damage to fish/shellfish beds, polluting groundwater, and decreased tourism. Sanitary sewage overflows (SSOs) release raw sewage from the collection system before it can reach a treatment facility. Sewage may flow out of manholes, into businesses and homes, and eventually ends up in local waterways.

Many factors are involved in SSOs. Many municipalities started constructing sewer systems over 100 years ago. Some of these have not been adequately maintained, improved, or repaired over the last century. Cities have used a wide variety of building materials, designs, and installation techniques, which aren't durable enough to withstand heavy, continuous use. Problems can be especially bad where an older system is attached to a new system or an older system has fallen into disrepair.

The Management, Operation and Maintenance (MOM) Programs Project is a pilot enforcement approach developed by EPA Region 4 to bring municipal sewer systems into full compliance with the Clean Water Act by eliminating sanitary sewer overflows (SSOs) from municipal sewer systems. A SSO is a release of untreated wastewater before the flow reaches a treatment plant. SSOs pose a significant threat to public health and water quality.

Treatment Balance and the Effects of Undesirable Solids

For any wastewater treatment plant to operate properly, the operator has to maintain a skillfully balanced mixture of microorganisms which contact and digest the organics in the wastewater, and bacteria then grows on this media to treat the wastewater. When a plant is properly maintained these bacteria or bugs eat the dissolved organics in the water, thus removing BOD, Ammonia, Nitrates, and Phosphorus.

All of these constituents must be treated and removed from the water. When this is accomplished you achieve a low turbidity and clean decantible water which is then filtered and chlorinated to kill all the remaining bacteria. This incredible process leaves extremely clean and reusable water that can be injected back into the ground, sent to ponds or used for irrigation.

Certain compounds and undesirable solids, like grease and grass clippings, can disturb this delicate balance and necessary process at the wastewater treatment facility. There are compounds and mixtures that should never be introduced into a sanitary sewer system. These destructive compounds include but are not limited to: cleaning solvents, grease (both household and commercial), oils (both household and commercial), pesticides, herbicides, antifreeze and other automotive products.

The solids include but are not limited to: plastics, rubber goods, grass clippings, metal products such as aluminum foil, beer or soda cans, wood products, glass, paper products such as disposable diapers and sanitary napkins. Items such as these disturb or even kill the delicate balance of microorganisms and bacteria that are needed to treat the wastewater. These will also clog the sanitary sewer causing back-ups and sewer overflows. First, we will examine the damage to equipment and we will finish with resolution methods.

Costly Maintenance
These harmful compounds and solids can also cause equipment damage and create costly and unnecessary repairs, as well as frequent and costly maintenance. Repairs include but are not limited to: SBR Motive Pumps--these should last at least 5 years but are failing after only 2 or 3 years because of material that was placed in the sewer system. In a recent 2007 study, the cost of repairing these pumps was around $30,000.00. The replacement of the influent grinder or, "Muffin Monster" after only 3 years of service was nearly $7,000.00. The cost of frequent maintenance consists of, but is not limited to: the extensive amounts of damaging solids that clog lift stations and damage lift station pumps.

To properly clean a lift station may cost around $3,000.00 for each time that common problems occur like grass clippings from a golf course, overflowing grease from improperly maintained grease traps from a casino, hotel or golf course and improperly maintained grease and oil interceptors. These costs do not touch the cost of cleaning the sewer mains and manholes. In most cases, no serious damage will occur to the sewer main or manhole, but the chance of overflowing sewage or untreated wastewater getting to the street is greatly increased and does happen in most communities. Most of us know about it and accept it as part of our jobs. But time and rules have changed. We must work harder and be smarter to stop these problems before the damage and overflow occurs.

Municipality Self-Assessment
Under the MOM Programs Project, municipalities are encourages to undertake a detailed self-assessment of their MOM programs. The municipalities submit this self-assessment along with recommendations for improvements to the MOM programs and/or remedial measures to correct sewer infrastructure problems.

In consideration for undertaking the self-assessment, the municipality is able to establish its own reasonable goals and schedules, which could result to significantly reduced penalties related to SSOs. Where an enforcement action is necessary, the regulator works with the municipality to identify necessary remedial measures and to establish schedules. The Regulator will likely defer any penalty decision until after the completion of the necessary improvements.

Project Initiation
In 1998, Region 4 began the MOM Programs Project by identifying priority watersheds and geographical areas in each of the eight States in the Region. These included areas where SSOs could cause significant public health concerns, such as beaches, shellfish harvesting areas and drinking water supplies. In addition, watersheds already listed as impaired by collection system overflows or bacterial contamination were identified.

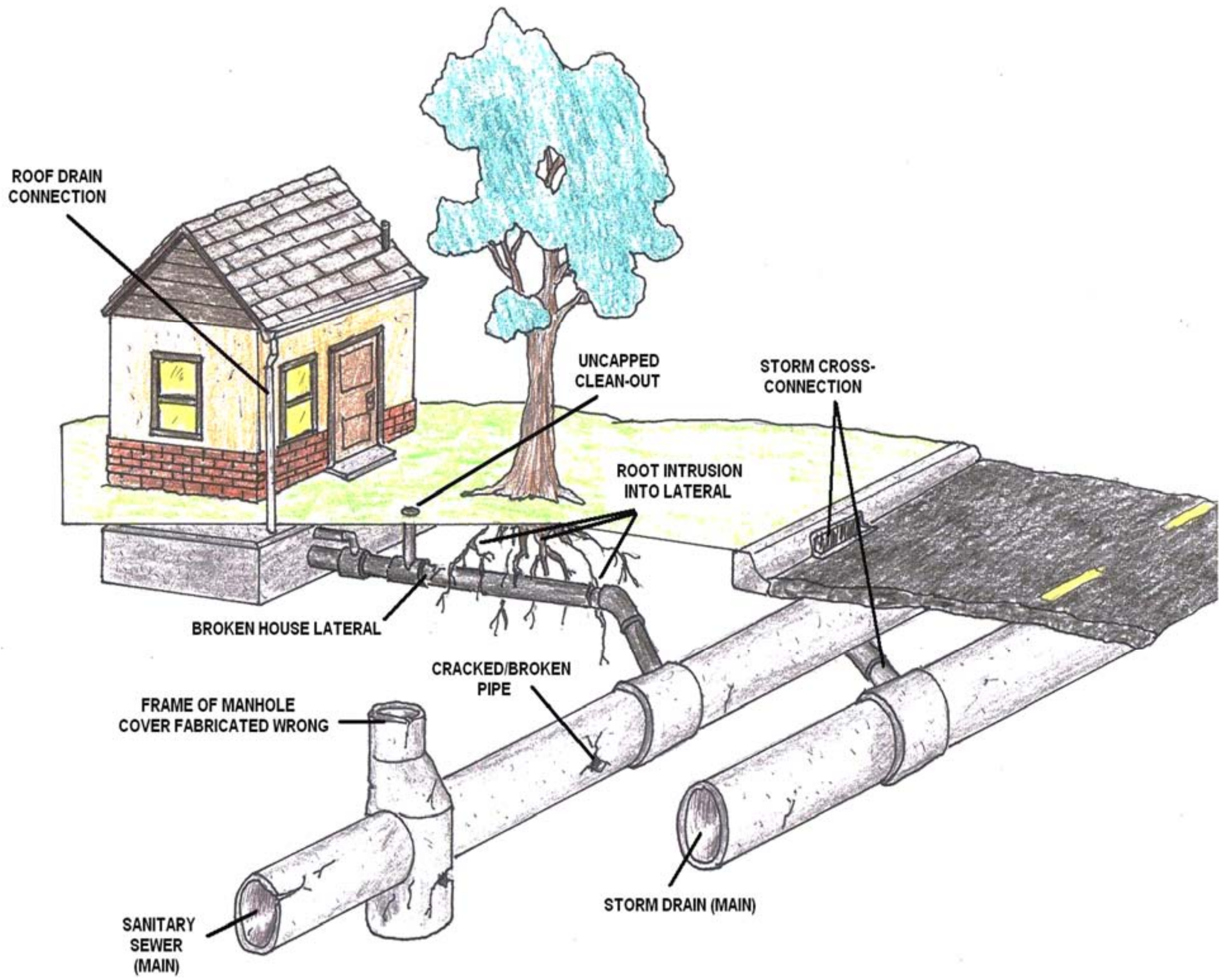
Region 4, working with the States, selected a watershed (or geographical area) in each State. All municipal sewer systems in each watershed were identified and invited to participate in the Project and to attend a kickoff meeting held at a location in the watershed.

Those municipalities wanting to participate in the MOM Project undertake the self-assessment using the guidance materials provided and submit the self-assessment to the Region within seven months of the kickoff. Municipalities that don't participate are inspected by the Region and/or State and are subject to traditional enforcement actions, including penalties where appropriate. Improper management and maintenance cause a majority of avoidable SSOs.

Leading Causes of SSOs

Problem/Cause	% of SSOs	Description
Blockages	43%	Blockages may be caused by tree roots or a build-up of sediment and other materials (i.e., grease, grit, debris). Structural defects and a flat slope can also cause excessive deposits of material. Build-ups can cause pipes to break or collapse.
Infiltration and Inflow (I/I)	27%	Infiltration and inflow occurs when rain or snowmelt enters the ground and seeps into leaky sanitation sewers, which were not designed to carry rainfall or drain property. Inflow can also occur when excess waters from roof drains, broken pipes and bad connections at sewer service lines infiltrates the sanitary sewer.
Structural Failures	12%	Line/main breaks are a major result of structural failure. Undersized systems do not have large enough pumps or lines to carry all the sewage generated by the buildings attached to them. This is especially true for new subdivisions or commercial areas. SSOs can occur at sewer service connections to houses or buildings. Some cities estimate that up to 60% of SSOs come from service lines.
Power Failure	11%	Stops pump operation, interrupting sewage flow
Other	7%	Scheduling, vandalism

Above, a cracked sewer main, a SSO waiting to happen.



Common Sewer Problem Diagram

What are Sanitary Sewer Overflows?

Sanitary Sewer Overflows (SSOs) are discharges of raw sewage from municipal sanitary sewer systems. SSOs can release untreated sewage into basements or out of manholes and onto city streets, playgrounds, and into streams before it can reach a treatment facility. SSOs are often caused by blockages and breaks in the sewer lines.

Why do Sewers Overflow?
SSOs occasionally occur in almost every sewer system, even though systems are intended to collect and contain all the sewage that flows into them. When SSOs happen frequently, it means something is wrong with the system.

Problems that Can Cause Chronic SSOs Include:

- Infiltration and Inflow (I&I): too much rainfall or snowmelt infiltrating through the ground into leaky sanitary sewers not designed to hold rainfall or to drain property, and excess water inflowing through roof drains connected to sewers, broken pipes, and badly connected sewer service lines.
- Undersized Systems: Sewers and pumps are too small to carry sewage from newly-developed subdivisions or commercial areas.
- Pipe Failures: blocked, broken or cracked pipes, tree roots grow into the sewer, sections of pipe settle or shift so that pipe joints no longer match, and sediment and other material builds up causing pipes to break or collapse.
- Equipment Failures: pump failures, power failures.
- Sewer Service Connections: discharges occur at sewer service connections to houses and other buildings; some cities estimate that as much as 60% of overflows comes from the service lines.
- Deteriorating Sewer System: improper installation, improper maintenance; widespread problems that can be expensive to fix develop over time, some municipalities have found severe problems necessitating billion-dollar correction programs, often communities have to curtail new development until problems are corrected or system capacity is increased.

Why are SSOs a Problem?
The EPA has found that SSOs caused by poor sewer collection system management pose a substantial health and environmental challenge. The response to this challenge varies considerably from state to state. Many municipalities have asked for national consistency in the way permits are considered for wastewater discharges, including SSOs, and in enforcement of the law prohibiting unpermitted discharges. In response, the EPA has convened representatives of states, municipalities, health agencies, and environmental advocacy groups to advise the Agency on how to best meet this challenge. This SSO Federal Advisory Subcommittee examines the need for national consistency in permitting and enforcement, effective sewer operation and maintenance principles, public notification for SSOs with potential health or environmental dangers, and other public policy issues. The EPA carefully considers the Subcommittee's recommendations for regulatory and non-regulatory actions to reduce SSOs nationally.

How Big is the SSO Problem?
The total number of SSOs that occur nationwide each year is not known. In some areas, they might not be reported or are underreported to the EPA and state environmental agencies. Two surveys, however, help to define the size of the problem:

- In a 1994 survey of 79 members of the Association of Metropolitan Sewerage Agencies, 65 percent of the respondents reported wet weather SSOs. They reported that between 15 and 35 percent of their sewers were filled above capacity and/or overflowed during wet weather. However, municipal respondents with SSOs had only limited information about them. Only 60 percent had estimated the annual number. Half of those had estimated the amount of sewerage discharged, and 17 percent had determined what pollutants were in their overflows.
- A 1981 survey conducted by the National Urban Institute indicated an average of 827 backups and 143 breaks per 1,000 miles of sewer pipe (about 1,000 miles of sewer pipe are needed to serve 250,000 people.) per year. Breaks occurred most often in the young, growing cities of the South and West.

Downstream of a nonfunctional Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) Control Facility.

Combined Sewer Overflows
Combined sewer systems are sewers that are designed to collect rainwater runoff, domestic sewage, and industrial wastewater in the same pipe. Most of the time, combined sewer systems transport all of their wastewater to a sewage treatment plant, where it is treated and then discharged to a water body. During periods of heavy rainfall or snowmelt, however, the wastewater volume in a combined sewer system can exceed the capacity of the sewer system or treatment plant. For this reason, combined sewer systems are designed to overflow occasionally and discharge excess wastewater directly to nearby streams, rivers, or other water bodies. These overflows, called combined sewer overflows (CSOs), contain not only storm water but also untreated human and industrial waste, toxic materials, and debris. They are a major water pollution concern for the approximately 772 cities in the U.S. that have combined sewer systems. CSOs may be thought of as a type of "urban wet weather" discharge. This means that, like sanitary sewer overflows (SSOs) and storm water discharges, they are discharges from a municipality's wastewater conveyance infrastructure that are caused by precipitation events such as rainfall or heavy snowmelt. The EPA's CSO Control Policy, published April 19, 1994, is the national framework for control of CSOs. The Policy provides guidance on how communities with combined sewer systems can meet Clean Water Act goals in as flexible and cost-effective a manner as possible. EPA's Report to Congress on implementation of the CSO Control Policy assesses the progress made by EPA, states, and municipalities in implementing and enforcing the CSO Control Policy.

The Elements of a Proper CMOM Program

Utility Specific
The complexity and expense associated with a utility's CMOM or MOM programs is specific to the size and complexity of the Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW) and related infrastructure. Factors such as population growth rate and soil/groundwater conditions also dictate the level of investment which should be made.

Purposeful
When MOM programs are present and properly maintained, they support customer service and protect system assets, public health, and water quality.

Goal-Oriented
Proper MOM programs have goals directed toward their individual purposes. Progress toward these goals is measurable, and the goals are attainable.

Uses Performance Measures
Performance measures should be established for each MOM program in conjunction with the program goal. These measures are quantifiable, and used in determining progress to, or beyond, the program goal.

Periodically Evaluated
An evaluation of the progress toward reaching the goals, or a reassessment of the goals, should be made periodically and based upon the quantified performance measures.

Available In Writing
The effectiveness of a MOM program quickly breaks down unless it is available in writing. Personnel turnover and lapses in communication between staff and management can change otherwise proper MOM programs to improper ones. Written MOM programs are useful only if they are made readily available to all personnel and clearly documented.

Implemented by Trained Personnel
Appropriate safety, equipment, technical, and program training is essential for implementing MOM programs properly.

What MOM programs should be audited?
MOM activity at a utility involves its entire wastewater infrastructure. Common utility management activities and operations and maintenance activities associated with sewer systems and pretreatment are listed in the Self-Audit Review Document.

If a utility owns treatment works or a pond system, then activities associated with the management, operation, and maintenance of these facilities should also be included in the audit. A helpful guide for this part is the NPDES Compliance Inspection Manual. Instruction for obtaining this manual is provided in a list of references.

What are the elements of a proper Self-Audit?
Initial Assessment
Begin by performing a general assessment of the utility, and prioritizing the order of programs to be audited. The NPDES Compliance Inspection Manual and Guidance may be useful references in making this assessment.

Develop the Audit Plan
Identify the MOM programs present and/or needed at the utility, establish performance measures, and develop a schedule for auditing the programs.

Conduct the Audit
Evaluate each MOM program against the defined elements of a proper program. This can be accomplished by reviewing the program's records and resources, conducting a field evaluation, and comparing the program understanding of both personnel and management.

Identify Deficiencies
Define any programs needed, or improvements to programs needed, and any infrastructure deficiencies found. Identify any unpermitted discharges which have occurred in the past five years.

Develop Improvement Plan
Define the utility's plan/schedule to remediate the necessary improvements. This plan should include any short-term or long-term program improvements, and any short-term or long-term capital improvements which need addressing.

Prepare the Self-Audit Report
Generate a report of the audit results, including any deficiencies found and the corresponding improvement plan, which is useful for the utility. This report should be capable of serving the utility as a reference when conducting any needed remedial measures, and as a reference to compare current performance with future self-audit results.

Are there federal grants or other compliance assistance resources available to conduct a Self-Audit?
Currently, there are no funds available for the specific purpose of conducting a MOM Programs Self-Audit. However, the Office of Wastewater Management offers a number of financial resources to assist qualified utilities in making improvements to their programs.

Small publicly-owned wastewater treatment plants which discharge less than 5 million gallons per day are also eligible for the Wastewater Treatment Plant Operator On-Site Assistance Training Program. The program provides on-site operator training, financial management, troubleshooting, and other operation and maintenance assistance.

A network of operator training personnel, EPA Regional Office Coordinators and States and State Training Centers work in the field with small under-served communities to help solve their operation and maintenance problems. There is no cost incurred by the facility in need of assistance. The only requirement of the program is the willingness to work with a trainer to correct the facility's problems.

What Health Risks do SSOs present?
Because SSOs contain raw sewage they can carry bacteria, viruses, protozoa (parasitic organisms), helminths (intestinal worms), and borroughs (inhaled molds and fungi). The diseases they may cause range in severity from mild gastroenteritis (causing stomach cramps and diarrhea) to life-threatening ailments such as cholera, dysentery, infectious hepatitis, and severe gastroenteritis.

People can be Exposed Through:

- Sewage in drinking water sources.
- Direct contact in areas of high public access such as basements, lawns or streets, or waters used for recreation. At least one study has estimated a direct relationship between gastrointestinal illness contracted while swimming and bacteria levels in the water.
- Shellfish harvested from areas contaminated by raw sewage. One study indicates that an average of nearly 700 cases of illness per year were reported in the 1980s from eating shellfish contaminated by sewage and other sources. The number of unreported cases is estimated to be 20 times that.
- Some cases of disease contracted through inhalation and skin absorption have also been documented.

What other Damage can SSOs do?

SSOs also damage property and the environment. When basements flood, the damaged area must be thoroughly cleaned and disinfected to reduce the risk of disease. Cleanup can be expensive for homeowners and municipalities. Rugs, curtains, flooring, wallboard panels, and upholstered furniture usually must be replaced. A key concern with SSOs that enter oceans, bays, estuaries, rivers, lakes, streams, or brackish waters is their effect on water quality. When bodies of water cannot be used for drinking water, fishing, or recreation, society experiences an economic loss. Tourism and waterfront home values may fall. Fishing and shellfish harvesting may be restricted or halted. SSOs can also close beaches. One 1994 study claims that SSOs closed beaches across the nation that year for a total of more than 300 days.

How can SSOs be Reduced or Eliminated?

Many avoidable SSOs are caused by inadequate or negligent operation or maintenance, inadequate system capacity, and improper system design and construction. These SSOs can be reduced or eliminated by:

- Sewer system cleaning and maintenance.
- Reducing infiltration and inflow through system rehabilitation and repairing broken or leaking service lines.
- Enlarging or upgrading sewer, pump station, or sewage treatment plant capacity and/or reliability.
- Construction of wet weather storage and treatment facilities to treat excess flows.

Communities also should address SSOs during sewer system master planning and facilities planning, or while extending the sewer system into previously unsewered areas.

A few SSOs may be unavoidable. Unavoidable SSOs include those occurring from unpreventable vandalism, some types of blockages, extreme rainstorms, and acts of nature such as earthquakes or floods.

What Costs are Involved with Reducing or Eliminating SSOs?

Sanitary sewer collection systems are a valuable part of the nation's infrastructure. The EPA estimates that our nation's sewers are worth a total of more than $1 trillion. The collection system of a single large municipality is an asset worth billions of dollars and that of a smaller city could cost many millions to replace. Sewer rehabilitation to reduce or eliminate SSOs can be expensive, but the cost must be weighed against the value of the collection system asset and the added costs if this asset is allowed to further deteriorate. Ongoing maintenance and rehabilitation adds value to the original investment by maintaining the system's capacity and extending its life.

The costs of rehabilitation and other measures to correct SSOs can vary widely by community size and sewer system type. Those being equal, however, costs will be highest and ratepayers will pay more in communities that have not put together regular preventive maintenance or asset protection programs.

Assistance is available through the Clean Water Act State Revolving Fund for capital projects to control SSOs. State Revolving Funds in each state and Puerto Rico can help arrange low-interest loans. For the name of your State Revolving Fund contact, please call the EPA Office of Water Resource Center, (202) 566-1729.

To reduce sanitary sewer overflows (SSOs), the EPA is proposing to clarify and expand permit regulations that are already in force under the Clean Water Act. This will affect over 19,000 municipal sanitary sewer systems, including 4800 satellite collection systems that will be regulated for the first time. It will allow streamlined CMOM requirements for small communities, and permit them to skip self-audits and annual reports if an SSO hasn't occurred.

The proposed rule would establish:

- Three standard permit conditions for inclusion in NPDES permits for publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) and municipal sanitary sewer collection systems
- A framework under the NPDES permit program for regulating municipal satellite collection systems.

The EPA would like to establish three standard permit conditions that will be included as part of NPDES permits for publicly owned treatment works (POTWs) and municipal sanitary sewer collection systems.
The proposed standard permit conditions:

- Address capacity, management, operation, and maintenance requirements for municipal sanitary sewer collection systems (proposed 40 CFR 122.42(e))
- Prohibit discharges to waters of the United States that occur before the discharge reaches a (POTW) treatment facility (includes a framework for defense for unavoidable discharges) (proposed 40 CFR 122.42(f))
- Establish requirements for reporting, public notification, and record keeping for discharges from municipal sanitary sewer system (proposed 40 CFR 122.42(g)).

These proposed standard permit rules are based on the Clean Water Act, sections 304(i), 308, and 402(a). The rules were developed from existing permit conditions to specifically address municipal systems and discharges.

The proposed rules will help cities upgrade wastewater collection systems across the nation, protecting one of the nation's most valuable assets. Under these proposed rules, facilities will be required to implement new programs for:

- Capacity assurance, managing, operating, and maintaining systems (CMOM) - These programs will help communities provide adequate wastewater collection and treatment facilities. It will include many standard operation and maintenance activities to ensure good system performance.
- Public notification – cities and local interests will establish a custom program to notify the public of overflows according to the risk they pose. The EPA is also proposing that yearly summaries of SSOs be made public. In addition, this proposal will clarify existing requirements for keeping records and requirements for reporting to the state.

More Specifically, CMOM will Require Facilities to:

- Establish general performance standards.
- Have a management program.
- Create an overflow response plan.
- Ensure system evaluations.
- Verify capacity assurance.
- Submit to periodic audits of the CMOM program.
- Notify the public and regulatory agencies of SSOs.

General Performance Standards

A CMOM program will ensure:

- There is enough capacity to handle base and peek flows.
- The use of all reasonable measure to stop SSOs.
- Proper collection, management, operation and maintenance of the system.
- Prompt notification of all parties that may be exposed to an SSO.

Management Programs

Management program documents must include:

- The goals of the CMOM program (may differ depending on the facility.)
- Legal authorities that will help implement CMOM.
- The "chain of command" for implementing CMOM and reporting SSOs.
- Design and performance requirements.
- Measures that will be taken to help implement CMOM.
- Monitoring/performance measures to how effective the CMOM program is.
- Communication plan.

Overflow Response Plan

The overflow response plan should be designed provide a quick response to SSOs. Rapid response to an SSO can mitigate structural damage, pollution of waterways, and the public health risk. The plan must include the following:

- SSO response procedures.
- Immediate notification of health officials.
- Public notification.
- Plan made available to the public.
- Distribution to all appropriate personnel.
- Revision and maintenance of the plan by appropriate personnel.

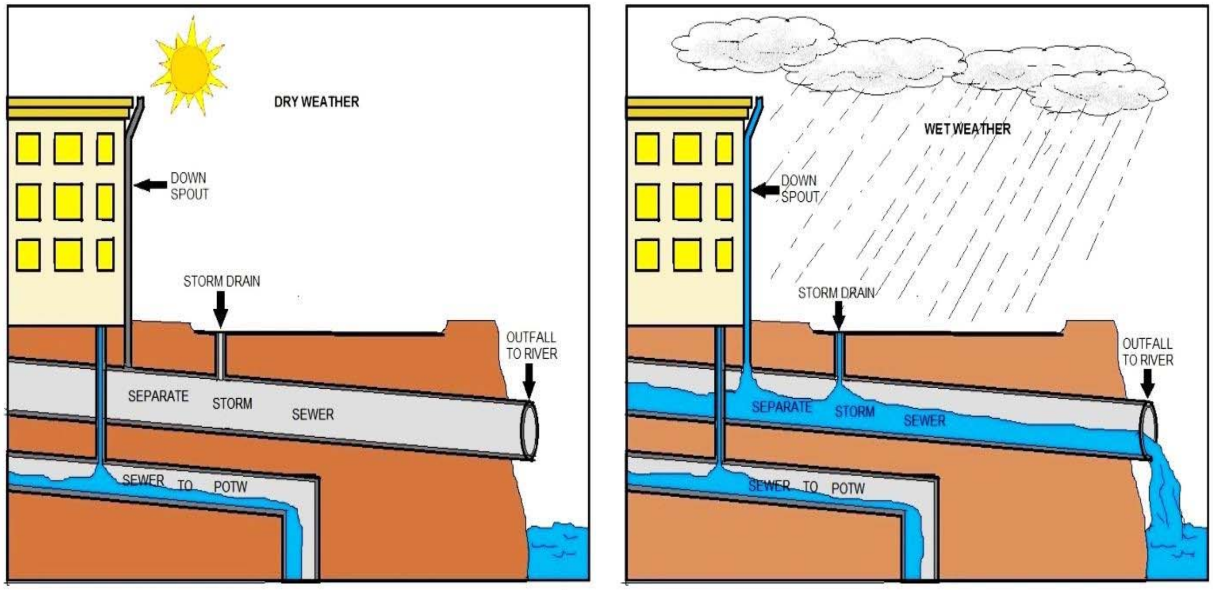
System Evaluation and Capacity Assurance Plan

These two activities work hand-in-hand to detect and address deficiencies and scheduling. These will provide:

- An evaluation of parts of the collection system that have substandard performance.
- Capacity assurance measures to address substandard performance.
- Explanation of prioritization and scheduling.

Performance measures and indicators are important in evaluating collection system performance and implementing capacity management, operation and maintenance programs.

Possible performance measures and indicators for sanitary sewer collection systems are shown below:



Storm Drain Diagram

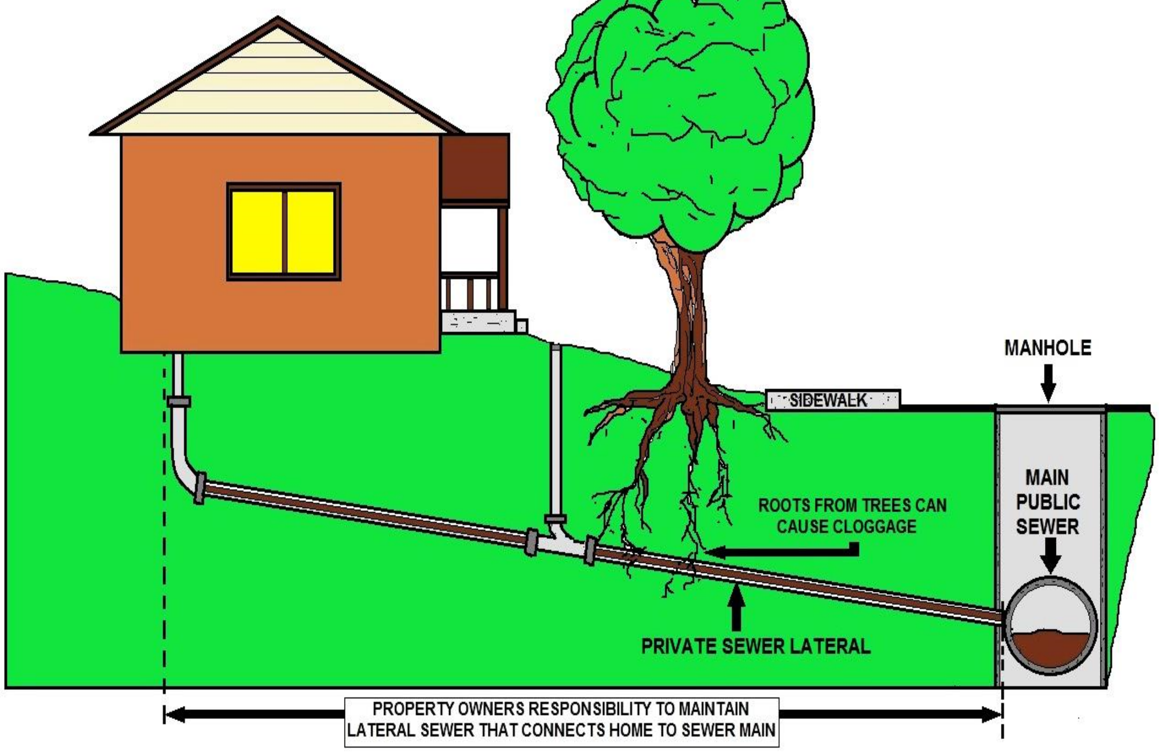


DIAGRAM OF SEWER LATERAL

Potential Performance Indicators

Input measures	Per capita costs Number of employee hours
Output measures	Length of pipe maintained Number of service calls completed Percentage of length maintained repaired this year Percentage of length maintained needing repair Length of new sewer constructed Number of new services connected
Outcomes	Number of stoppages per 100 miles of pipe Average service response time Number of complaints
Ecological/Human health/ Resource use	Shellfish bed closures Benthic Organism index Biological diversity index Beach closures Recreational activities Commercial activities

CMOM Audits
CMOM will require regular, comprehensive audits, done by each facility. These audits will help identify non-conformance to CMOM regulations so problems can be addressed quickly. All findings, proposed corrective actions and upcoming improvements should be documented in the audit report.

Communication/Notification
If an SSO occurs, sanitary sewer facilities will be required to immediately notify the NPDES permit authority, appropriate health agencies, state authorities, drinking water suppliers, and, if necessary, the general public in the risk area. This rule will also require an annual report of all overflows, including minor SSOs such as building backups. Facilities must post locations of recurrent SSOs and let the public know that the annual report is available to them. The record keeping provisions mandate that facilities must maintain records for three years about all overflows, complaints, work orders on the system, and implementation measures.

According to the EPA, an effective CMOM program would help NPDES permitees to:

- Develop/revise routine preventive maintenance activities that prevent service interruption and protect capital investments.
- Create an inspection schedule and respond to the inspection results.
- Investigate the causes of SSOs and take corrective measures.
- Respond quickly to SSOs to minimize impacts to human health and the environment.
- Identify and evaluate SSO trends.
- Develop budgets and identify staffing needs.
- Plan for future growth to ensure adequate capacity is available when it’s needed.
- Identify hydraulic (capacity) and physical deficiencies and prioritize responses, including capital investments.
- Identify and develop appropriate responses to program deficiencies (e.g., lack of legal authority, inadequate funding, and inadequate preventive maintenance).

- Keep parts and tools inventories updated and equipment in working order.
- Report and investigate safety incidents and take steps to prevent their recurrence.

Implementation

The EPA estimates that implementing this rule will impose an additional $93.5 to $126.5 million every year on municipalities (includes planning and permitting costs). A system serving 7,500 people may need to spend an average of $6,000 every year to comply with the rule.

CMOM regulations will be added to the permit when facilities need to have a permit re-issued. Although a compliance deadline has not been set, the EPA recommends that facilities begin to implement "SSO Standard Conditions" right after the proposed rule is published. Considering the time and costs associated with compliance, this may be good advice.

Proposed Deadlines for CMOM Documentation After Permit Issuance

Avg. Daily Flow	Summary of CMOM program	Overflow Emergency Response Plan	Completion of Program Audit Report	Submission of Program Audit Report	System Evaluation and Capacity Assurance Plan
>=5 mgd	Within 18 mos.	Within 1 year	Within 18 mos.	Within 18 mos.	Initial sub-basins: 3 yrs.; All sub-basins: 5 yrs.
>1 but <5 mgd	Within 2 yrs	Within 1 yr.	Within 2 yrs.	With permit renewal application	Initial sub-basins: 3 yrs.; All sub-basins: 5 yrs.
<= 1 mgd	Within 3.5 yrs.	Within 1 yr.	Within 3.5 yrs.	With permit renewal application	Within 5 yrs.

Continuous Training

Procedures for emergency response plans should be understood and practiced by all personnel in order to ensure safety of the public and the collection system personnel responding. Procedures should be specific to the type of emergency that could occur. It is important to keep detailed records of all past emergencies in order to constantly improve response training, as well as the method and timing of future responses. The ability to deal with emergencies depends on the knowledge and skill of the responding crews, in addition to availability of equipment. The crew should be able to rapidly diagnose problems in the field under stress and select the right equipment needed to correct the problem. If resources are limited, consideration should be given to contracting other departments or private industries to respond to some emergency situations, for example, those rare emergencies that would exceed the capacity of staff.

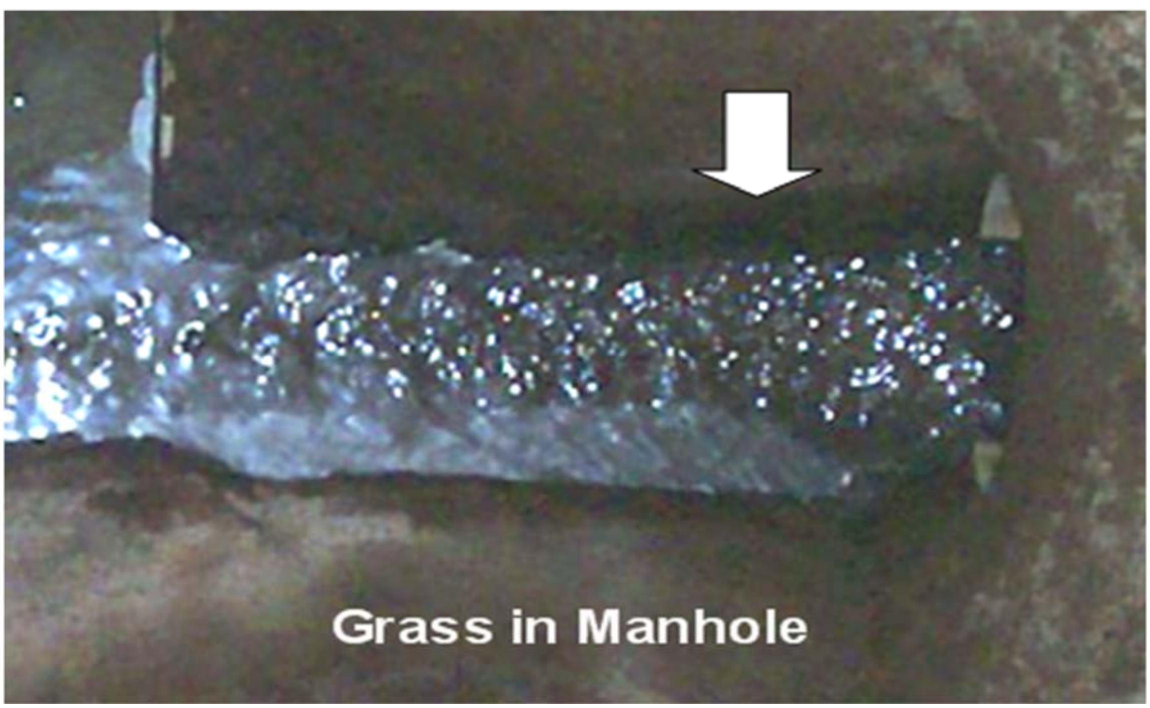
Routine Preventative O&M Activities – Wastewater Collection Lines

Routine preventative operations and maintenance activities for wastewater collection lines shall be performed by the system's personnel and outside contractors. A qualified outside contractor can also be utilized to perform hydraulic cleaning using a jet hydro-vac combination truck and mechanical cleaning using a rodding machine. Routine operations and maintenance activities including cleaning and removing roots from small and large diameter lines. The system's goal should be a minimum of cleaning between 20-30% of the sewers every year.

Closed-circuit television (CCTV) is used to assess the condition of the sewers. There are four types of activities that the system or a CCTV contractor can also perform: 1) inspect new work, 2) inspect condition of older portions of the wastewater collection system, 3) routine inspection of approximately 10% of the wastewater collection, and 4) problem identification to determine the cause of selected overflow events. Manhole inspection, manhole coating (to prevent concrete deterioration) and manhole painting (for roach control) are also routinely performed.

Sewer filled with grass will damage your system, pumps, and upset the wastewater treatment system.

Require your industrial users like golf courses to install grass, grease, and sand/oil interceptors. Certain compounds and undesirable solids, like grease and grass clippings, can disturb this delicate balance and necessary process at the wastewater treatment facility. There are compounds and mixtures that should never be introduced into a sanitary sewer system. These destructive compounds include but are not limited to: cleaning solvents, grease (both household and commercial), oils (both household and commercial), pesticides, herbicides, antifreeze and other automotive products.



National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Permit Program

The Clean Water Act requires that all point source wastewater dischargers obtain and comply with an NPDES permit. NPDES permits regulate the discharges from publicly owned wastewater treatment facilities, other wastewater treatment facilities, industrial facilities, concentrated animal feeding operations, aquiculture, and other “point source” dischargers.

The NPDES program also regulates wet weather discharges such as stormwater discharges from industrial activities (e.g. factory stormwater runoff) and municipal stormwater discharges including urban storm-water runoff, combined sewer overflows, and storm sewer overflows. NPDES permits are developed to ensure that such discharges to receiving waters are protective of human health and the environment. They establish specific discharge limits, monitoring, and reporting requirements and may also require that dischargers undertake measures to reduce or eliminate pollution to receiving waters. Violations of permit conditions are enforceable under the Clean Water Act. The EPA uses a variety of techniques to monitor permittee compliance status, including on-site inspections and review of data submitted by permittees. NPDES permits are issued for a term of five years (or less).

State NPDES Programs

The Clean Water Act provides that states may be authorized to operate their own NPDES programs, provided such programs meet minimum federal requirements. As of February 1998, 42 states and the United States Virgin Islands have authorized NPDES programs. Indian nations can also be authorized to operate an NPDES program, More than 200,000 sources are regulated by NPDES permits nationwide, *NPDES Watershed Permitting a NPDES Watershed Strategy* has been developed to ensure that the NPDES Program protects watersheds as effectively as possible. Chief among the NPDES program’s responsibilities is the effective implementation of EPA’s *wet-weather strategies,* including stormwater management and the control of combined sewer and sanitary sewer overflows.

Stormwater Management

Stormwater discharges from many sources are largely uncontrolled. For this reason, the mandate of the *Stormwater Program* is particularly challenging. Amendments to the Clean Water Act established a two-phased approach to address stormwater discharges. Phase 1, currently being implemented, requires permits for separate storm water systems serving large and medium-sized communities (those with over 100,000 inhabitants), and for stormwater discharges associated with industrial and construction activity involving at least five acres. To address the large number of industrial dischargers of stormwater—for populations over 100,000--EPA has developed a strategy with a tiered framework to control administrative burden while emphasizing reduction in risk to human health and ecosystems. Phase 2 will address remaining stormwater discharges. This new regulatory approach would require permits for municipalities in urban areas with populations under 100,000, and smaller construction sites.

Combined Sewer Overflows (CSOS)

A combined sewer overflow is a discharge from a sewer system that is designed to carry sanitary wastewater and stormwater in the same pipe to a sewage treatment plant. In periods of rainfall or snowmelt, a combined sewer system can discharge excess wastewater directly to rivers, lakes, and estuaries, causing health and environmental hazards because treatment plants cannot handle the extra flow.

Coal Mining

Abandoned coal mines cause many of the greatest impairments to water quality throughout the Appalachian region of the United States. The EPA, the Office of Surface Mining (OSM), the Interstate Mining Compact Commission (IMCC) and concerned states have combined their efforts to develop a proposed comprehensive watershed restoration program to help improve water quality in the areas where abandoned mines are located. These efforts are designed to clean up rivers and streams polluted by coal mine drainage, as well as continuing to work with all affected stakeholders. The program includes, among other things, efforts to provide incentives for remaining abandoned sites, use of best management practices (BMPs) to achieve limitations on various chemicals, and an increased focus on a cumulative watershed approach that relies upon total maximum daily loads (TMDLs) to achieve compliance with water quality standards (WQS).

Whole Effluent Toxicity (WET)

WET is the total toxic effect of an effluent measured by a biological toxicity test. A WET test captures the effect of all toxicants on exposed test organisms without requiring the identification of specific toxicants. WET replicates to the greatest extent possible the actual environmental exposure of aquatic life to effluent toxicants. WET tests use the same essential procedures as those used to generate water quality criteria.

WET is used in NPDES permits in two fundamental ways:

- to regulate the toxicity of a discharge
- to generate data on the toxicity of a discharge

NPDES permit limits for WET typically are expressed either as a concentration of effluent in clean water that must not result in an unacceptable WET test endpoint (such as lethality of more than half of the test organisms) or a number of toxic units (such as 3 TU) which corresponds to an effluent concentration.

WET Limits

WET limits are typically calculated to ensure that state water quality criteria for toxicity (numeric or narrative) are attained and maintained. Alternatively, WET monitoring requirements instead of WET limits are often included in NPDES to generate toxicity data for use in making future decisions about whether WET needs to be controlled at a particular discharge point.

Pretreatment

The National Pretreatment Program is a cooperative effort of federal, state, and local regulatory environmental agencies established to protect water quality. The program is designed to reduce the level of pollutants discharged by industry and other non-domestic wastewater sources into municipal sewer systems, and thereby, reduce the amount of pollutants released into the environment through wastewater. The objective of the program is to protect the Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW) from pollutants that may interfere with plant operation, prevent untreated pollutants from being introduced into the POTW, and to improve opportunities for the POTW to reuse wastewater and biosolids that are generated. The General Pretreatment Regulations require POTWS that meet certain requirements to develop local pretreatment programs to control industrial discharges into their municipal sewer systems. These programs must be approved by either EPA or the state acting as the pretreatment Approval Authority. More than 1,500 POTWs have developed Approved Pretreatment Programs. EPA has also developed national categorical pretreatment standards that apply numeric pollutant limits to industrial users in specific industrial categories. The General Pretreatment Regulations include reporting and other requirements necessary to implement these categorical standards.

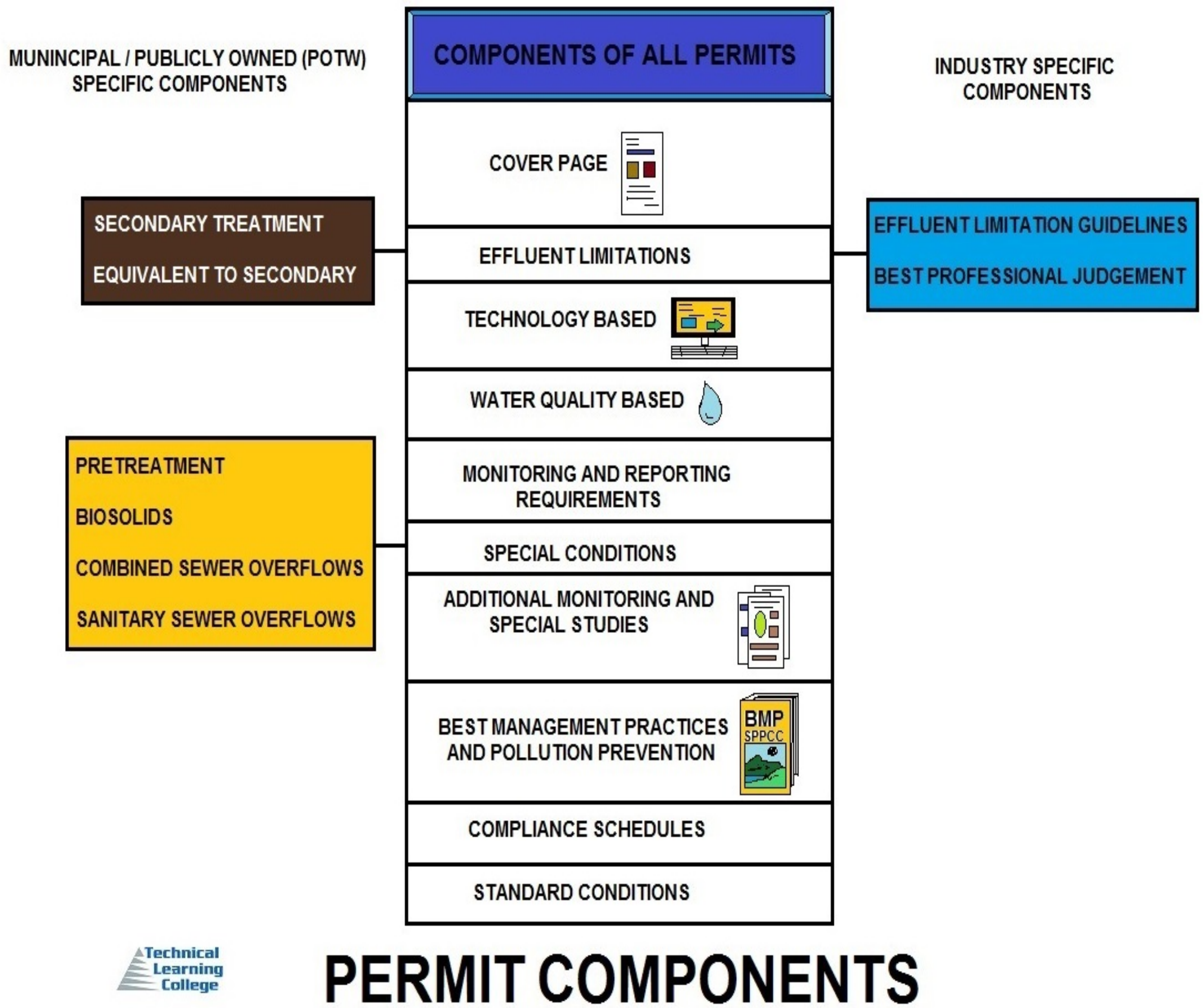
Types of Regulated Pollutants

CONVENTIONAL POLLUTANTS are contained in the sanitary wastes of households, businesses, and industries. These pollutants include human wastes, ground-up food from sink disposals, and laundry and bath waters. Conventional pollutants include:

PATHOGENS are organisms which cause disease in humans.

TOXIC POLLUTANTS are a group of more than 100 pollutants that have been found to be harmful to animal or plant life by certain pathways of exposure. They are primarily grouped into organics (including pesticides, solvents, polychlorinated biphenyls (**PCBS**), and dioxins) and metals (including lead, silver, mercury, copper, chromium, zinc, nickel, and cadmium).

NONCONVENTIONAL POLLUTANTS are any additional substances that are not conventional or toxic that may require regulation. These include nutrients such as nitrogen and phosphorus.



A Pretreatment Inspector sampling an SIU Interceptor.
A position in Pretreatment or Stormwater is a great job promotion for any Collection System's Operator.

Pretreatment Roles and Responsibilities

EPA Headquarters

< Oversees program implementation at all levels.
< Develops and modifies regulations for the program.
< Develops policies to clarify and further define the program.
< Develops technical guidance for program implementation.
< Initiates enforcement actions as appropriate.

Regions

< Fulfill Approval Authority responsibilities for States without a State pretreatment program.
< Oversee State program implementation.
< Initiate enforcement actions as appropriate.

Approval Authorities (EPA Regions and delegated States)

< Notify POTWs of their responsibilities.
< Review and approve requests for POTW pretreatment program approval or modification.
< Review requests for site-specific modifications to categorical pretreatment standards.
< Oversee POTW program implementation.
< Provide technical guidance to POTWs.
< Initiate enforcement actions, against noncompliant POTWs or industries.

Control Authorities (POTWs, States, or EPA Regions)

< Develop, implement, and maintain approved pretreatment program.
< Evaluate compliance of regulated IUs.
< Initiate enforcement action against industries as appropriate.
< Submit reports to Approval Authorities.
< Develop local limits (or demonstrate why they are not needed).
< Develop and implement enforcement response plan.

Industrial Users

< Comply with applicable pretreatment standards and reporting requirements.

Parshall Flume with a Stilling Well and Ultrasonic probe. This device is commonly found on the Customer's side of the system; used for measuring the flow and a common site for gathering samples. Here is a quick fix if missing the probe stand, use a reflective traffic cone to hold your ultrasonic probe.

What Types of Businesses are Subject to Pretreatment Regulations?

Pretreatment regulations apply to a variety of businesses discharging wastewater from industrial and commercial processes.

Certain types of industries with the potential to discharge pollutants are regulated through an industrial discharge permit system. Industries are considered Significant Industrial Users and therefore require a discharge permit if the user:

- Is subject to Environmental Protection Agency's Categorical Pretreatment Standards. Categorical users receive increased scrutiny due to their potential to pollute. Examples of categorical users are metal finishers and pharmaceutical manufacturers.
- Is discharging an average of 25,000 gallons per day or more of process wastewater.
- Has the potential to adversely affect the wastewater utility.

Industry-Specific Guides
Aluminum, Copper, And Nonferrous Metals Forming And Metal Powders

Pretreatment Standards: A Guidance Manual

Guidance Manual For Battery Manufacturing Pretreatment Standards

Guidance Manual for Electroplating and Metal Finishing Pretreatment Standard

Guidance Manual For Iron And Steel Manufacturing Pretreatment Standards

Guidance Manual for Leather Tanning and Finishing Pretreatment Standards

Guidance Manual for Pulp, Paper, Paperboard and Builders' Paper

Board Mills Pretreatment Standards

Pretreatment Standards

The National Pretreatment Program identifies specific requirements that apply to all IUs, additional requirements that apply to all SIUs, and certain requirements that only apply to CIUs. The objectives of the National Pretreatment Program are achieved by applying and enforcing three types of discharge standards:

< ***prohibited discharge standards***
< ***categorical standards***
< ***local limits***.

See TLC's Pretreatment 101, a 3 CEU correspondence course for more information.

Prohibited Discharge Standards

All IUs, whether or not subject to any other National, State, or local pretreatment requirements, are subject to the general and specific prohibitions identified in 40 CFR §§403.5(a) and (b), respectively. General prohibitions forbid the discharge of any pollutant(s) to a POTW that cause pass through or interference. Specific prohibitions forbid eight categories of pollutant discharges as follows:
(1) discharges containing pollutants which create a fire or explosion hazard in the POTW, including but not limited to, wastestreams with a closed cup flashpoint of less than 140°F (60°C) using the test methods specified in 40 CFR §261.21;
(2) discharges containing pollutants causing corrosive structural damage to the POTW, but in no case discharges with a pH lower than 5.0, unless the POTW is specifically designed to accommodate such discharges;
(3) discharges containing pollutants in amounts causing obstruction to the flow in the POTW resulting in interference;
(4) discharges of any pollutants released at a flow rate and/or concentration which will cause interference with the POTW;
(5) discharges of heat in amounts which will inhibit biological activity in the POTW resulting in interference, but in no case heat in such quantities that the temperature at the POTW treatment plant exceeds 40°C (104°F) unless the Approval Authority, upon request of the POTW, approves alternative temperature limits;
(6) discharges of petroleum oil, non-biodegradable cutting oil, or products of mineral oil origin in amounts that will cause interference or pass through;
(7) discharges which result in the presence of toxic gases, vapors, or fumes within the POTW in a quantity that may cause acute worker health and safety problems; and
(8) discharges of trucked or hauled pollutants, except at discharge points designated by the POTW.

Compliance with the general and specific prohibitions is mandatory for all IUs, although a facility may have an affirmative defense in any action brought against it alleging a violation of the general prohibitions or of certain specific prohibitions [(3), (4), (5), (6) and (7) above] where the IU can demonstrate it did not have reason to know that its discharge, alone or in conjunction with a discharge or discharges from other sources, would cause pass through or interference, and the IU was in compliance with a technically-based local limit developed to prevent pass through or interference.

These prohibited discharge standards are intended to provide general protection for POTWs. However, their lack of specific pollutant limitations creates the need for additional controls, namely categorical pretreatment standards and local limits.

Interference and Pass Through

Pass through - A discharge which exits the POTW into waters of the US in quantities or concentrations which, alone or in conjunction with a discharge or discharges from other sources, is a cause of a violation of any requirement of the POTW's NPDES permit (including an increase in the magnitude or duration of a violation.)

Interference - A discharge which, alone or in conjunction with a discharge or discharges from other sources, both (1) inhibits or disrupts the POTW, its treatment processes or operations, or its sludge processes, use or disposal; and (2) therefore is a cause of a violation of any requirement of the POTW's NPDES permit or of the prevention of sewage sludge use or disposal.

Categorical Standards
Categorical pretreatment standards (i.e., categorical standards) are national, uniform, technology-based standards that apply to discharges to POTWs from specific industrial categories (i.e., indirect dischargers) and limit the discharge of specific pollutants. Categorical pretreatment standards for both existing and new sources (PSES and PSNS, respectively) are promulgated by the EPA pursuant to Section 307(b) and (c) of the CWA.

Limitations developed for indirect discharges are designed to prevent the discharge of pollutants that could pass through, interfere with, or otherwise be incompatible with POTW operations. Effluent limitations guidelines (ELGs), developed in conjunction with categorical standards, limit the discharge from facilities directly to waters of the U.S. (i.e., direct dischargers) and do not apply to indirect dischargers.

ELGs include Best Practicable Control Technology Currently Available (BPT), Best Conventional Pollutant Control Technology (BCT), and Best Available Technology Economically Achievable (BAT) limitations and New Source Performance Standards (NSPS). ELGs (i.e., BPT, BCT, BAT, and NSPS) do not apply to indirect dischargers. The significant difference between categorical standards and effluent limitations guidelines is that categorical standards account for any pollutant removal that may be afforded through treatment at the POTW while effluent limitations guidelines do not. Industries identified as major sources of toxic pollutants are typically targeted for effluent guideline and categorical standard development.

If limits are deemed necessary, the EPA investigates affected IUs and gathers information regarding process operations, treatment and management practices accounting for differences in facility size and age, equipment age, and wastewater characteristics. Sub categorization within an industrial category is evaluated based on variability in processes employed, raw materials used, types of items produced, and characteristics of wastes generated.

Availability and cost of control technologies, non-water quality environmental impacts, available pollution prevention measures, and economic impacts are then identified prior to the EPA's presentation of findings in proposed development documents and publishing a notice of the proposed regulations in the *Federal Register*. Based on public comments on the proposed rule, the EPA promulgates (i.e., publishes) the standards.

Normal wastewater sampling or pretreatment equipment found in a regulated industry. pH, ORP and Temperature measuring equipment.

Wastewater Collection Pre-Quiz *Answers are at the end of Quiz*.

1. Your collection system requires a new sewer main line. Who would be the best source of information for instructions on how to lay and join new sewer pipes?
A. Manufacturer
B. A local plumbing contractor
C. Utility inspector
D. Grading and drainage inspector

2. In many sewer installations, low pressure air testing is necessary to determine the tightness of the pipe. In instances where ground water levels are higher that the sewer lines, the new pipes are usually tested around_______ to _______ psi above any outside water pressure on the pipe.
A. 3, 5
B. 7, 10
C. 10, 14
D. 15, 22

3. A good manager will establish a good record-keeping system to help in analyzing many problems that occur. Records such as outside services versus in-house personnel costs could result in saving money by hiring personnel to handle jobs typically farmed out. For the purposes of budgeting and justifying the costs the manager will:
A. Present all bills to the board
B. Hide the excessive costs in other lines of the budget
C. Beg for budget increases by verbal communication only
D. Plot the costs to ease understanding the need for personnel
E. None of the above, at least at my yard

4. Managers and supervisors maintain a personnel file on each employee. These files contain information about the employee. Which of the following should not be found in the employee file?
A. Accident reports
B. Budget requirement to justifying employee hiring
C. Attendance analysis
D. Performance evaluations

5. Sewer lines made of __________ types of pipe should be tested with a mandrel to measure for ___________ and joint offsets.
A. flexible, deflection
B. ductile iron, tightness
C. clay, stress cracks
D. cement, thickness

6. What is the one most important reason for having a wastewater collection system?
A. Prevent disease
B. Keep the waste out of sight
C. To allow for gravity feed
D. To alleviate the foul smell
E. Both C & D

7. Many public agencies are having a difficult time stretching their financial resources to meet all the demands they face from both internal and external sources. What is the best thing a collection system operator can do to help in meeting these challenges?
A. Provide good collection system maintenance, operation, and inspection
B. Agree to work only 4 hours of overtime a week
C. Donate unused vacation and sick time back to the utility
D. None of the above

8. An operator should have a good understanding of the terms used in wastewater collection systems. What description best explains the term “***combined wastewater”***?
A. A mixture of surface runoff and industrial wastewater
B. A mix of domestic wastewater and storm water
C. A blend of domestic and industrial wastewater
D. Both A and B
E. None of the above

9. A term used often in a collection system is the term "*grade ring*". What best describes a grade ring as used in the collection system?
A. The bell end of the pipe that must be placed down slope
B. A precast concrete ring of various heights to raise the manhole cover
C. A surveyors tool used to mark grade along the trench
D. None of the above

10. Two words are used to describe a collection system; they are the words '*sanitary*' and '*wastewater*'. Which is the correct definition of the term *'sanitary collection system'*?
A. The pipe system prior to being used
B. The combination of domestic and industrial waste
C. A collection system used only for storm water
D. A collection system used only for domestic waste

11. Ideally wastewater collection systems are designed and constructed to provide a minimum velocity of _____ ft per second to ensure the waste in maintained in suspension.
A. 4.32
B. 6.20
C. 2.00
D. 8.25

12. A ball is traveling down a 12 inch sewer line and you see it at your manhole at 1:52:00 p.m. Your partner, at the next manhole 350 feet away, said the ball went past her at 1:55:02 p.m. The estimated surface velocity in the sewer is:
A. 9.65 ft/sec
B. 1.9 ft/sec
C. 116.7 ft/sec
D. 3.97 ft/sec

13. Which of the following types of pipe materials would not be suitable for use in a wastewater collection system?
A. Asbestos cement pipe
B. Uncoated black iron pipe
C. Polyethylene

14. Channel corrections are usually required for___________ and _____________ in older manholes to reduce the causes of turbulent flows and restrictions to flow in the incoming lines.
A. Tee intersections, basin channels
B. Wye channels, ell turns
C. Lateral flows, sweeping turns
D. Flat bottoms, low steps

15. The coefficient value used to represent the channel or pipe roughness in Manning's formula for computing flows in gravity sewers is called the:
A. "R" factor
B. "N" factor
C. Abrasion value
D. Both A and B

16. The type of waste that can generally be consumed by bacteria and other small organisms is called:
A. Microbes
B. Organic waste
C. Inorganic waste
D. Mineral waste
E. None of the above

17. What is the name given to a chamber, connected to the flow in the main channel by a small inlet, where the liquid level is measured to determine the flow in the main channel?
A. Flow meter
B. Measuring well
C. Stilling well
D. Venturi chamber

18. The primary purpose of lubrication in the maintenance of equipment is to reduce the _________ and _________ between two surfaces.
A. Galling, bonding
B. Wear, tear
C. Friction, heat
D. Roughness, friction

19. One important point to remember when using a portable centrifugal trash pump is to:
A. Always locate the pump as close as possible to the water surface being pumped.
B. Always locate the pump as close as possible to the discharge pond
C. A high suction lift will dramatically increase the discharge volume
D. A high discharge head will decrease the need for a high suction lift

20. The two terms that are frequently used to describe the incoming and outgoing conductors of circuit breakers, motor starters, and other devices are called?
A. Hot lead, ground wire
B. Amperage in, voltage out
C. Line side, load side
D. Time delay fuse, circuit breaker

Answers to Quiz

1. A
2. A
3. D
4. B
5. A
6. A
7. A
8. D
9. B
10. D
11. C
12. B
13. B
14. A
15. D
16. B
17. C
18. C
19. A
20. C

Installation of grinder pump for a low-pressure system.

Low-Pressure System
Inside a grinder pump found outside a home, the inlet is 3 inches and outlet is only $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches.

Wastewater Collection Chapter 2

Normal Operational Sewer Operation and Cleaning Section

This Sewer Cleaning Truck is 38 feet long and 9 feet wide. The attached tank has a capacity of 1500 gallons and can hold 10 cubic yards of debris. The truck is equipped with a high pressure cleaning head that can move 800 feet down a sanitary line at 2500 PSI.

Out of sight, out of mind—that's your sanitary sewer collection system. Until there comes that inevitable emergency call due to a stoppage, then you have upset residents with sewage backed up in their toilets. A very economical and quick method of determining if a new sewer line is straight and unobstructed is called *"Lamping"* and can be done with a mirror and a bright source of light, for example a headlight at night or sunlight.

Video inspection coupled with a good cleaning program can be a highly effective maintenance tool. By cleaning and root sawing your lines, restrictions caused by debris, roots and grease buildup can be prevented—thus drastically reducing the number of emergency backups and surcharge calls.

Sewage collection systems that have video inspection closed circuit television (CCTV) and cleaning programs, report drastic reductions in the number of emergency calls because the system was cleaned and potential trouble spots were located prior to problems occurring.

Top photograph, new manhole. Bottom, a repaired sewer main after being damaged by the water distribution department using a backhoe without locates.

Understanding the Gravity Sanitary Sewer System

A Sanitary Sewer has Two Main Functions:

- To convey the designed peak discharge.
- Transport solids so that the deposits are kept at a minimum.

Sanitary sewers are designed to transport the wastewater by utilizing the potential energy provided by the natural elevation of the earth resulting in a downstream flow. This energy, if not designed properly, can cause losses due to free falls, turbulent junctions, and sharp bends. Sewer systems are designed to maintain proper flow velocities with minimum head loss. However, higher elevations in the system may find it necessary to dissipate excess potential energy.

Design flows are based on the quantity of wastewater to be transported. Flow is determined largely by population served, density of population, and water consumption. Sanitary sewers should be designed for peak flow of population. Stormwater inflow is highly discouraged and should be designed separate from the sanitary system.

Gravity-flow sanitary sewers are usually designed to follow the topography of the land and to flow full or nearly full at peak rates of flow and partly full at lesser flows. Most of the time the flow surface is exposed to the atmosphere within the sewer and it functions as an open channel. At extreme peak flows the wastewater will surcharge back into the manholes. This surcharge produces low pressure in the sewer system.

In order to design a sewer system, many factors are considered. The purpose of this topic is to aid in the understanding of flow velocities and design depths of flow. The ultimate goal for our industry is to protect the health of the customers we serve. This is achieved by prevention of sewer manhole overflows.

Sewer System Capacity Evaluation - Testing and Inspection

The collection system owner or operator should have a program in place to periodically evaluate the capacity of the sewer system in both wet and dry weather flows and ensure the capacity is maintained as it was designed. The capacity evaluation program builds upon ongoing activities and the everyday preventive maintenance that takes place in a system. The capacity evaluation begins with an inventory and characterization of the system components.

The inventory should include the following basic information about the system:

- Population served
- Total system size (feet or miles)
- Inventory of pipe length, size, material and age, and interior and exterior condition as available
- Inventory of appurtenances such as bypasses, siphons, diversions, pump stations, tide or flood gates and manholes, etc., including size or capacity, material and age, and condition as available
- Force main locations, length, size and materials, and condition as available
- Pipe slopes and inverts
- Location of house laterals - both upper and lower

The system then undergoes general inspection which serves to continuously update and add to the inventory information.

Capacity Limitations
The next step in the capacity evaluation is to identify the location of wet weather related SSOs, surcharged lines, basement backups, and any other areas of known capacity limitations. These areas warrant further investigation in the form of flow and rainfall monitoring and inspection procedures to identify and quantify the problem. The reviewer should ensure that the capacity evaluation includes an estimate of peak flows experienced in the system, an estimate of the capacity of key system components, and identification of the major sources of I/I that contribute to hydraulic overloading events.

The capacity evaluation should also make use of a hydraulic model. This model will help identify areas where there is a need to alleviate capacity limitations.

Short and long term alternatives to address hydraulic deficiencies should be identified, prioritized, and scheduled for implementation. A sewer inspection is an important part of a sewer system capacity evaluation and determining your options or alternatives.

Flow Monitoring
Fundamental information about the collection system is obtained by flow monitoring. Flow monitoring provides information on dry weather flows as well as areas of the collection system potentially affected by I/I. Flow measurement may also be performed for billing purposes, to assess the need for new sewers in a certain area, or to calibrate a model.

There are three techniques commonly used for monitoring flow rates:
(1) permanent and long-term,
(2) temporary, and
(3) instantaneous.

Permanent installations are done at key points in the collection system such as the discharge point of a satellite collection system, pump stations, and key junctions. Temporary monitoring consists of flow meters typically installed for 30-90 days. Instantaneous flow metering is performed by collection system personnel, one reading is taken and then the measuring device is removed.

The collection system owner or operator should have a flow monitoring plan that describes their flow monitoring strategy, or should at least be able to provide the following information:
• Purpose of the flow monitoring
• Location of all flow meters
• Type of flow meters
• Flow meter inspection and calibration frequency

Flow Monitoring Plan
A flow monitoring plan should provide for routine inspection, service, and calibration checks (as opposed to actual calibration). In some cases, the data is calibrated rather than the flow meter. Checks should include taking independent water level (and ideally velocity readings), cleaning accumulated debris and silt from the flow meter area, downloading data (sometimes only once per month), and checking the desiccant and battery state. Records of each inspection should be maintained.

Flow Measurements

Flow measurements performed for the purpose of quantifying I/I are typically separated into three components: base flow, infiltration, and inflow. Base flow is generally taken to mean the wastewater generated without any I/I component. Infiltration is the seepage of groundwater into pipes or manholes through defects such as cracks, broken joints, etc. Inflow is the water which enters the sewer through direct connections such as roof leaders, direct connections from storm drains or yard, area, and foundation drains, the holes in and around the rim of manhole covers, etc. Many collection system owners or operators add a third classification: rainfall induced infiltration (RII). RII is stormwater that enters the collection system through defects that lie so close to the ground surface that they are easily reached. Although not from piped sources, RII tends to act more like inflow than infiltration.

In addition to the use of flow meters, which may be expensive for a small owner or operator, other methods of inspecting flows may be employed, such as visually monitoring manholes during low-flow periods to determine areas with excessive I/I. For a very small system, this technique may be an effective and low-cost means of identifying problem areas in the system which require further investigation.

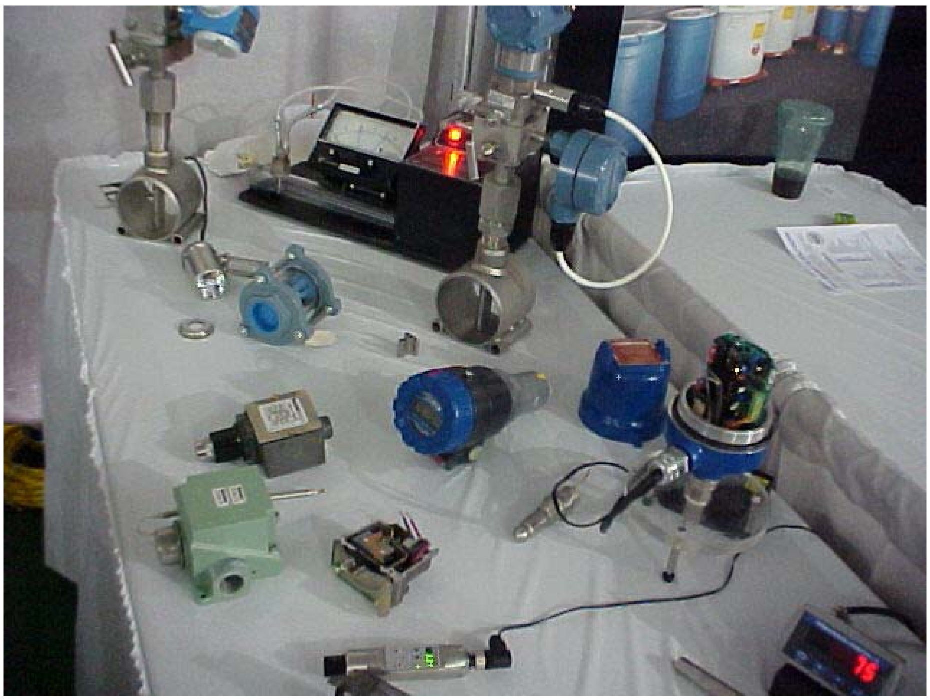
Inside a new manhole, the Invert is the inside bottom of the pipe. The Invert is used to determine the depth which is used to determine the Rise or Slope of the pipe.

The formula for figuring the slope is: rise divided by run.

Let's see what is going on here. See the ladder on top photograph. See the collection crew under the steel plate and no shoring or trench protection. It looks like the plate is falling in. Another death trap for the uneducated collection worker.

Flow Capacity

Most sewers are designed with the capacity to flow half full for less than 15 inches in diameter; larger sewers are designed to flow at three-fourths flow. The velocity is based on calculated peak flow, which is commonly considered to be twice the average daily flow. Accepted standards dictate that the minimum design velocity should not be less than 0.60 m/sec (2 fps) or generally greater than 3.5 m/sec (10 fps) at peak flow. A velocity in excess of 3.5 m/sec (10 fps) can be tolerated with proper consideration of pipe material, abrasive characteristics of the wastewater, turbulence, and thrust at changes of direction. The minimum velocity is necessary to prevent the deposition of solids.



Examples of various sewer flow measuring devices.

The Use of a Dye at the Manhole to Determine the Velocity is Done as Follows:

1. Insert dye upstream and begin timing until the dye is first seen at the downstream manhole (t_1); and
2. Total the travel time, and the insertion time from the time the dye is no longer seen at the downstream manhole (t_2).

Once this is complete, add ($t_1 + t_2$) then divide it by 2. This will give you the total average time for the dye. In order to calculate the velocity the travel time is divided by the distance between manholes (note that the time needs to be converted to seconds):

$$\text{Velocity, ft/sec} = \frac{\text{Distance, ft}}{\text{Average time, sec}}$$

There are devices available to measure flow measurements; they all are based on the principle of the cross-sectional area of the flow in a sewer line. This is done by using the table below. Once this has been determined, then the following equations can be used:

Q, cubic feet of flow = Area, sq. ft. multiplied by Velocity, ft/sec

d/D	Factor	d/D	Factor	d/D	Factor	d/D	Factor
0.01	0.0013	0.16	0.0811	0.31	0.2074	0.46	0.3527
0.02	0.0037	0.17	0.0885	0.32	0.2167	0.47	0.3627
0.03	0.0069	0.18	0.0961	0.33	0.2260	0.48	0.3727
0.04	0.0105	0.19	0.1039	0.34	0.2355	0.49	0.3827
0.05	0.0174	0.20	0.1118	0.35	0.2350	0.50	0.3927
0.06	0.0192	0.21	0.1199	0.36	0.2545	0.51	0.4027
0.07	0.0242	0.22	0.1281	0.37	0.2642	0.52	0.4127
0.08	0.0294	0.23	0.1365	0.38	0.2739	0.53	0.4227
0.09	0.0350	0.24	0.1449	0.39	0.2836	0.54	0.4327
0.10	0.0409	0.25	0.1535	0.40	0.2934	0.55	0.4426
0.11	0.0470	0.26	0.1623	0.41	0.3032	0.56	0.4526
0.12	0.0534	0.27	0.1711	0.42	0.3130	0.57	0.4625
0.13	0.0600	0.28	0.1800	0.43	0.3229	0.58	0.4724
0.14	0.0668	0.29	0.1890	0.44	0.3328	0.59	0.4822
0.15	0.0739	0.30	0.1982	0.45	0.3428	0.60	0.4920

This table works as follows:

To determine the cross-sectional flow for a 12 inch sewer main with a flow depth of 5 inches you would first:

d or depth 5 inches divided by **D** or diameter 12 inches equals 0.42 **d/D.** using the table above find the correct factor for 0.42 d/D.

The factor equals 0.3130, now calculate the cross-sectional area using the following formula:

$$\text{Pipe Cross-sectional Area, sq ft} = \frac{(\text{Factor})(\text{Diameter, in})^2}{144 \text{ sq in/sq ft}}$$

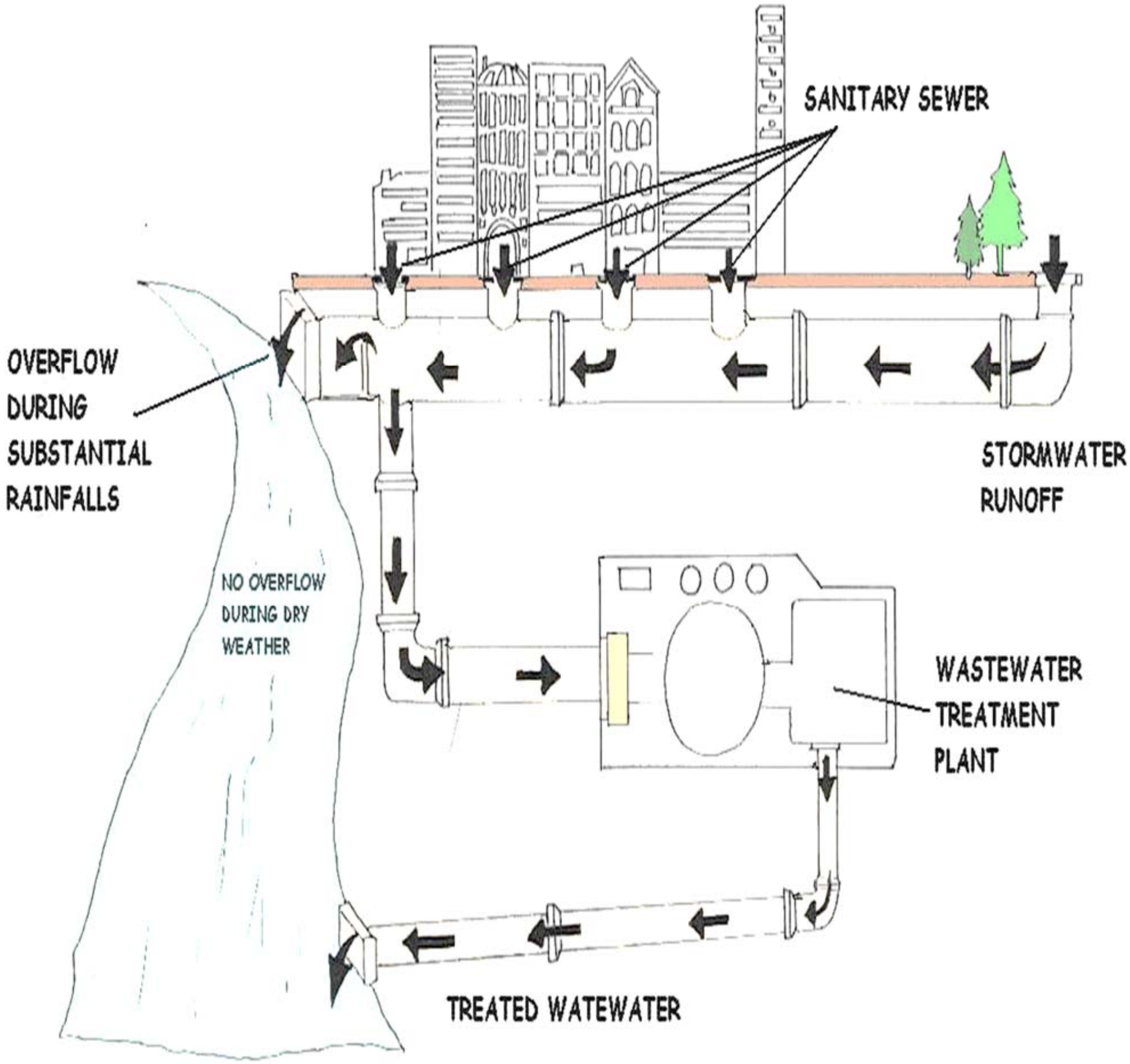
$$\frac{(0.3130)(12 \text{ in})^2}{144 \text{ sq in/sq/ft}}$$

$$= 0.0313 \text{ sq ft}$$

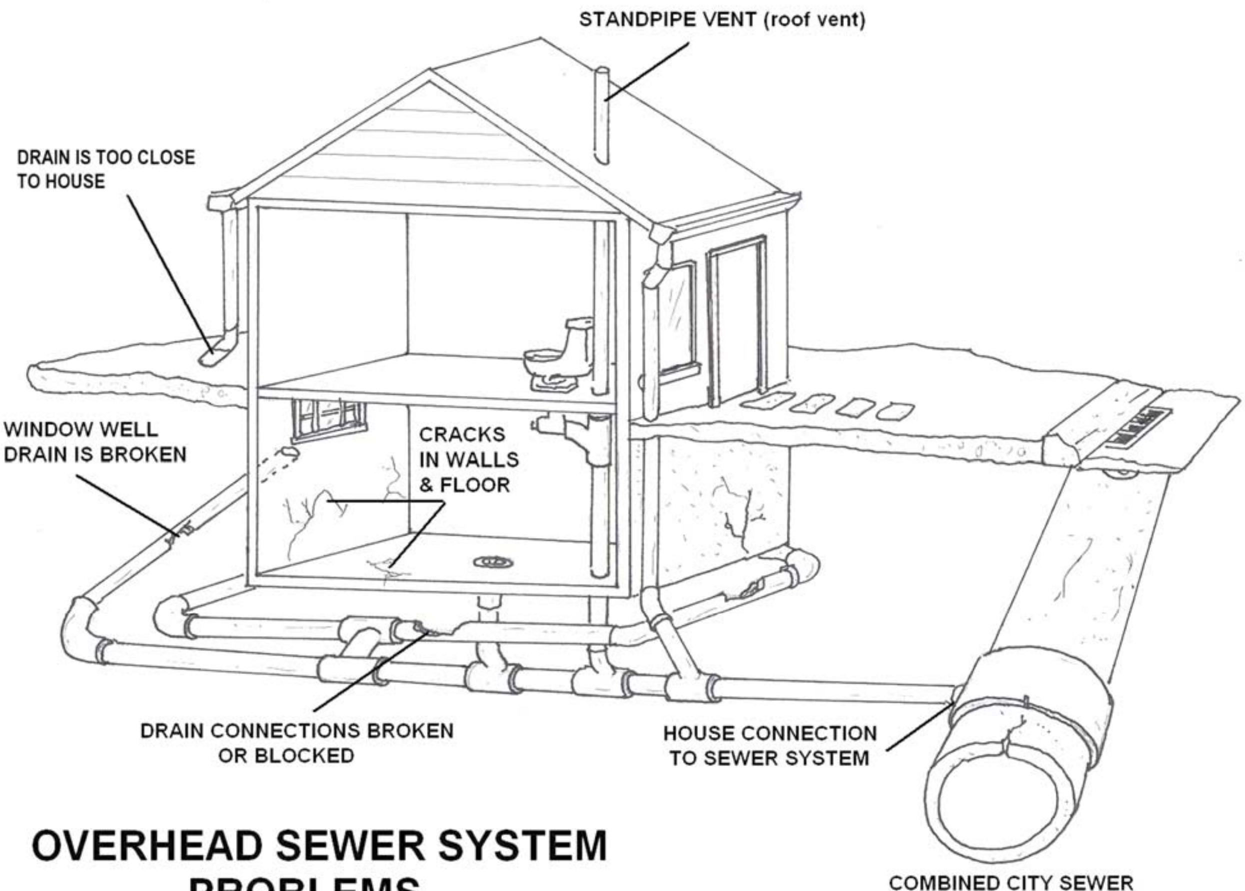
Once the Velocity and the cross-sectional area have been determined, the calculation for flow rate is used. This formula is as followed:

Q, cubic feet per second = (Area, sq ft) (Velocity, ft/sec)

Once this calculation is made, cubic feet can be converted to gallons by multiplying it by 7.48 gal/cubic feet and seconds can be converted to minutes, hours or days by multiplying the gallons with the time.



The complexity and expense associated with a utility's CMOM or MOM programs is specific to the size and complexity of the Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW) and related infrastructure. Factors such as population growth rate and soil/groundwater conditions also dictate the level of investment which should be made.



OVERHEAD SEWER SYSTEM PROBLEMS

Detailed Sewer Cleaning

The purpose of sewer cleaning is to remove accumulated material from the sewer. Cleaning helps to prevent blockages and is also used to prepare the sewer for inspections. Stoppages in gravity sewers are usually caused by a structural defect, poor design, poor construction, an accumulation of material in the pipe (especially grease), or root intrusion. Protruding traps (lateral sewer connections incorrectly installed so that they protrude into the main sewer) may catch debris, which then causes a further buildup of solids that eventually block the sewer.

Results of Various Flow Velocities
Velocity Result
2.0 ft/sec...............................Very little material buildup in pipe.
1.4-2.0 ft/sec.........................Heavier grit (sand and gravel) begin to accumulate.
1.0-1.4 ft/sec.........................Inorganic grit and solids accumulate.
Below 1.0 ft/sec...................Significant amounts of organic and inorganic solids accumulate.
1.0 to 1.4 feet per second, grit and solids can accumulate leading to a potential blockage.

Sewer Cleaning Methods
There are three major methods of sewer cleaning: hydraulic, mechanical, and chemical.

Hydraulic cleaning (also referred to as flushing) refers to any application of water to clean the pipe. Mechanical cleaning uses physical devices to scrape, cut, or pull material from the sewer.

Chemical cleaning can facilitate the control of odors, grease buildup, root growth, corrosion, and insect and rodent infestation.

Sewer Cleaning Records
The backbone of an effective sewer cleaning program is accurate recordkeeping. Accurate recordkeeping provides the collection system owner or operator with information on the areas cleaned. Typical information includes:
• Date, time, and location of stoppage or routine cleaning activity
• Method of cleaning used
• Identity of cleaning crew
• Cause of stoppage
• Further actions necessary and/or initiated
• Weather conditions

The owner or operator should be able to identify problem collection system areas, preferably on a map. Potential problem areas identified should include those due to grease or industrial discharges, hydraulic bottlenecks in the collection system, areas of poor design (e.g., insufficiently sloped sewers), areas prone to root intrusion, sags, and displacements. The connection between problem areas in the collection system and the preventive maintenance cleaning schedule should be clear.

The owner or operator should also be able to identify the number of stoppages experienced per mile of sewer pipe. If the system is experiencing a steady increase in stoppages, the reviewer should try to determine the cause (i.e., lack of preventive maintenance funding, deterioration of the sewers due to age, an increase in grease producing activities, etc.).

Parts and Equipment Inventory

An inventory of spare parts, equipment, and supplies should be maintained by the collection system owner or operator. The inventory should be based on the equipment manufacturer's recommendations, supplemented by historical experience with maintenance and equipment problems. Without such an inventory, the collection system may experience long down times or periods of inefficient operation in the event of a breakdown or malfunction. Files should be maintained on all pieces of equipment and major tools. The owner or operator should have a system to assure that each crew member has adequate and correct tools for the job.

The owner or operator should maintain a yard where equipment, supplies, and spare parts are maintained and personnel are dispatched. Very large systems may maintain more than one yard. In this case, the reviewer should perform a visual survey at the main yard. In small to medium size systems, collection system operations may share the yard with the department of public works, water department, or other municipal agencies. In this case, the reviewer should determine what percentage is being allotted for collection system items. The most important features of the yard are convenience and accessibility.

The reviewer should observe a random sampling of inspection and maintenance crew vehicles for equipment as described above. A review of the equipment and manufacturer's manuals aids will determine what spare parts should be maintained.

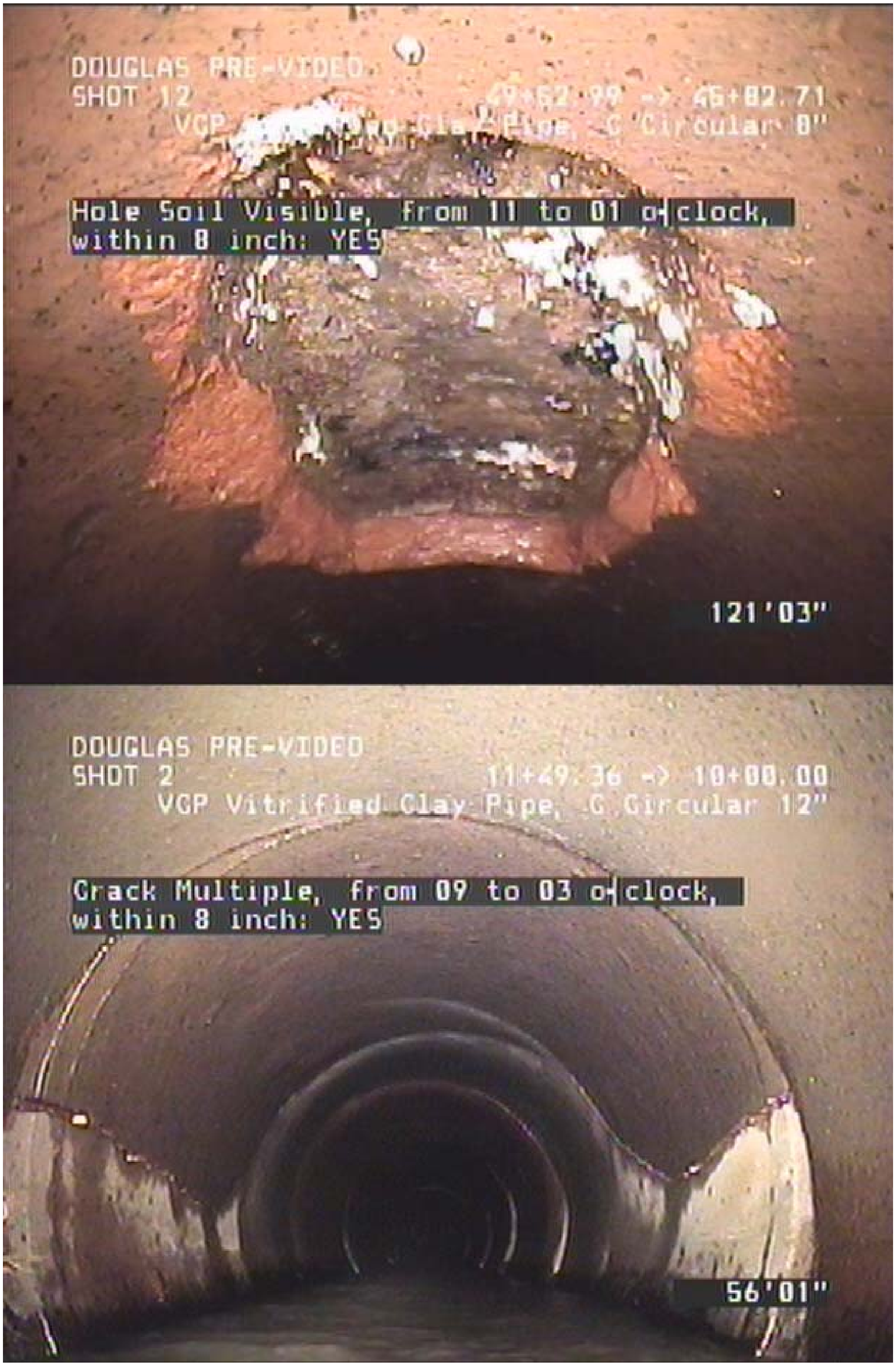
The owner or operator should then consider the frequency of usage of the part, how critical the part is, and finally, how difficult the part is to obtain when determining how many of the part to keep in stock. Spare parts should be kept in a clean, well-protected stock room.

Owner or Operator - Point to Note

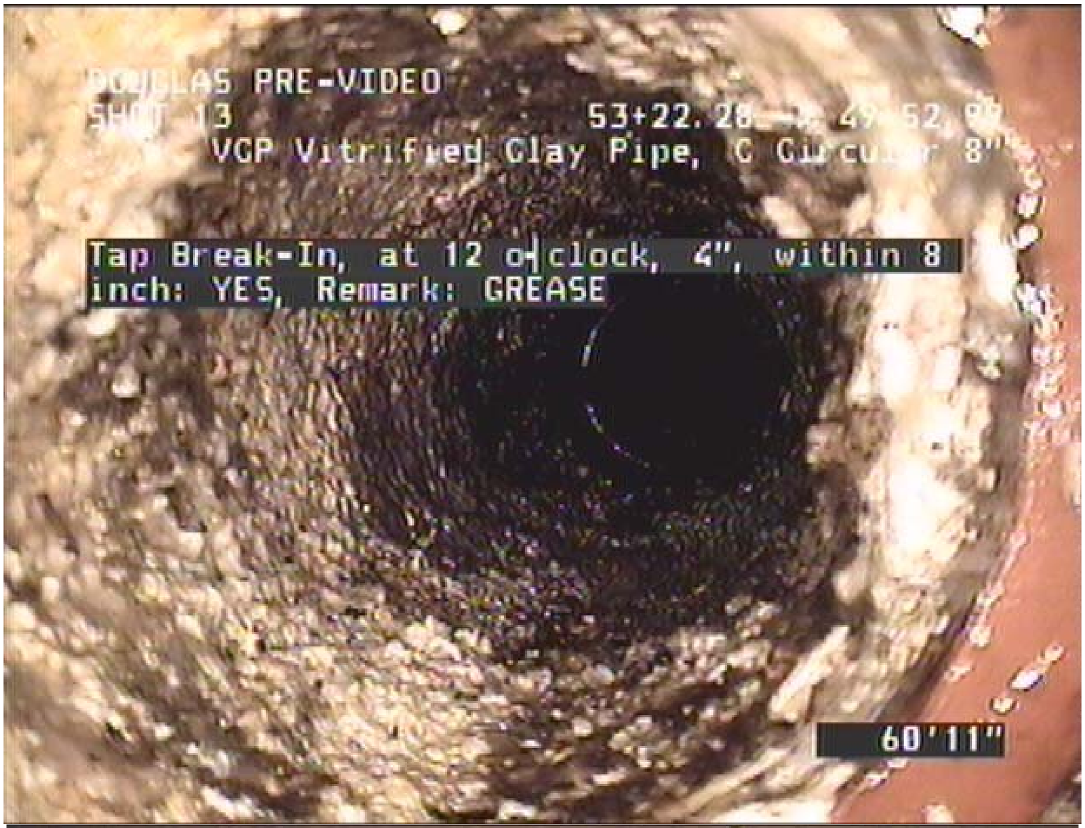
The owner or operator should have a procedure for determining which spare parts are critical for the proper operation of the collection system.

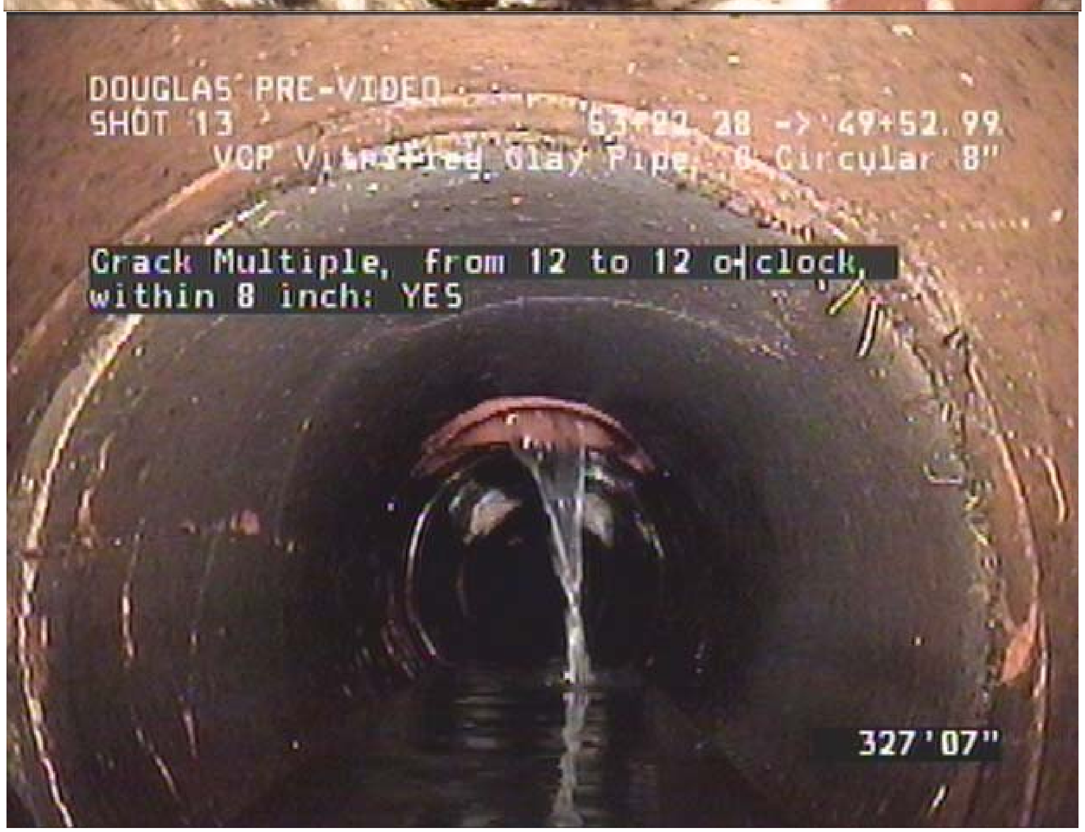
Similar to equipment and tools management, a tracking system should be in place, including Guide for Evaluating CMOM Programs at Sanitary Sewer Collection Systems procedures on logging out materials, and when maintenance personnel must use them.

The owner or operator should be able to produce the spare parts inventory and clearly identify those parts deemed critical. The reviewer should evaluate the inventory and selected items in the stockroom to determine whether the specified numbers of these parts are being maintained.



Photographs courtesy of Propipe.





Photographs courtesy of Propipe.

Infiltration and Inflow Introduction

What is Infiltration/Inflow (I/I)?
Infiltration occurs when groundwater enters the sewer system through cracks, holes, faulty connections, or other openings. Inflow occurs when surface water such as storm water enters the sewer system through roof downspout connections, holes in manhole covers, illegal plumbing connections, or other defects.

The sanitary sewer collection system and treatment plants have a maximum flow capacity of wastewater that can be handled. I/I, which is essentially clean water, takes up this capacity and can result in sewer overflows into streets and waterways, sewer backups in homes, and unnecessary costs for treatment of this water. It can even lead to unnecessary expansion of the treatment plants to handle the extra capacity. These costs are passed on to the consumer.

I&I (Infiltration and Inflow)
- Infiltration is water (typically groundwater) entering the sewer underground through cracks or openings in joints.
- Inflow is water (typically stormwater or surface runoff) that enters the sewer from grates or unsealed manholes exposed to the surface.

Determining I/I
Flow monitoring and flow modeling provide measurements and data used to determine estimates of I/I. Flow meters are placed at varying locations throughout the sewer collection system to take measurements and identify general I/I source areas. Measurements taken before and after a precipitation event indicate the extent that I/I is increasing total flow. Both infiltration and inflow increase with precipitation. Infiltration increases when groundwater rises from precipitation, and inflow is mainly stormwater and rainwater. Rainfall monitoring is also performed to correlate this data.

Identifying Sources of I/I
A Sewer System Evaluation Survey (SSES) involves inspection of the sewer system using several methods to identify sources of I/I:
· Visual inspection - accessible pipes, gutter and plumbing connections, and manholes are visually inspected for faults.
· Smoke testing – smoke is pumped into sewer pipes. Its reappearance aboveground indicates points of I/I. These points can be on public property such as along street cracks or around manholes, or on private property such as along house foundations or in yards where sewer pipes lay underground.
· TV inspection – camera equipment is used to do internal pipe inspections. The City will usually have one 2-3 person crew that can perform TV inspection on over 20 miles of sewer pipe per year.
· Dye testing – Dye is used at suspected I/I sources. The source is confirmed if the dye appears in the sewer system.

Sources of I/I are also sometimes identified when sewer backups or overflows bring attention to that part of the system. The purpose of the SSES is to reduce these incidences by finding sources before they cause a problem.

Repairing I/I Sources
Repair techniques include manhole wall spraying, trenchless sewer pipe relining, manhole frame and lid replacement, and disconnecting illegal plumbing, drains, and roof downspouts.

Efficient Identification of Excessive I/I
The owner or operator should have in place a program for the efficient identification of excessive I/I. The program should look at the wastewater treatment plant, pump stations, permanent meter flows, and rainfall data to characterize peaking factors for the whole system and major drainage basins. The reviewer should evaluate the program, including procedures and records associated with the flow monitoring plan. Temporary meters should be used on a “roving” basis to identify areas with high wet weather flows. Areas with high wet weather flows should then be subject to inspection and rehabilitation activities.

Sewer System Testing
Sewer system testing techniques are often used to identify leaks which allow unwanted infiltration into the sewer system and determine the location of illicit connections and other sources of stormwater inflow.

Two commonly implemented techniques include smoke testing and dyed water testing. Regardless of the program(s) implemented by the owner or operator, the reviewer should evaluate any procedures and records that have been established for these programs. The reviewer should also evaluate any public relations program and assess how the owner or operator communicates with the public during these tests (i.e., when there is a possibility of smoke entering a home or building).

Smoke testing is a relatively inexpensive and quick method of detecting sources of inflow in sewer systems, such as down spouts, or driveway and yard drains, and works best for detecting cross connections and point source inflow leaks. Smoke testing is not typically used on a routine basis, but rather when evidence of excessive I/I already exists. With each end of the sewer of interest plugged, smoke is introduced into the test section. Sources of inflow can then be identified when smoke escapes through them.

Areas Usually Smoke Tested
- Drainage paths
- Ponding areas
- Cellars
- Roof leaders
- Yard and area drains
- Fountain drains
- Faulty service connections
- Abandoned building sewers

If the collection system owner or operator implements a regular program of smoke testing, the program should include a public notification procedure. The owner or operator should also have procedures to define:

- How line segments are isolated.
- The maximum amount of line to be smoked at one time.
- The weather conditions in which smoke testing is conducted (i.e., no rain or snow, little wind and daylight only).

The results of positive smoke tests should be documented with carefully labeled photographs. Building inspections are sometimes conducted as part of a smoke testing program and, in some cases, may be the only way to find illegal connections. If properly connected to the sanitary sewer system, smoke should exit the vent stacks of the surrounding properties. If traces of the smoke or its odor enter the building, it is an indication that gases from the sewer system may also be entering. Building inspections can be labor intensive and require advanced preparation and communication with the public.

Dye Testing

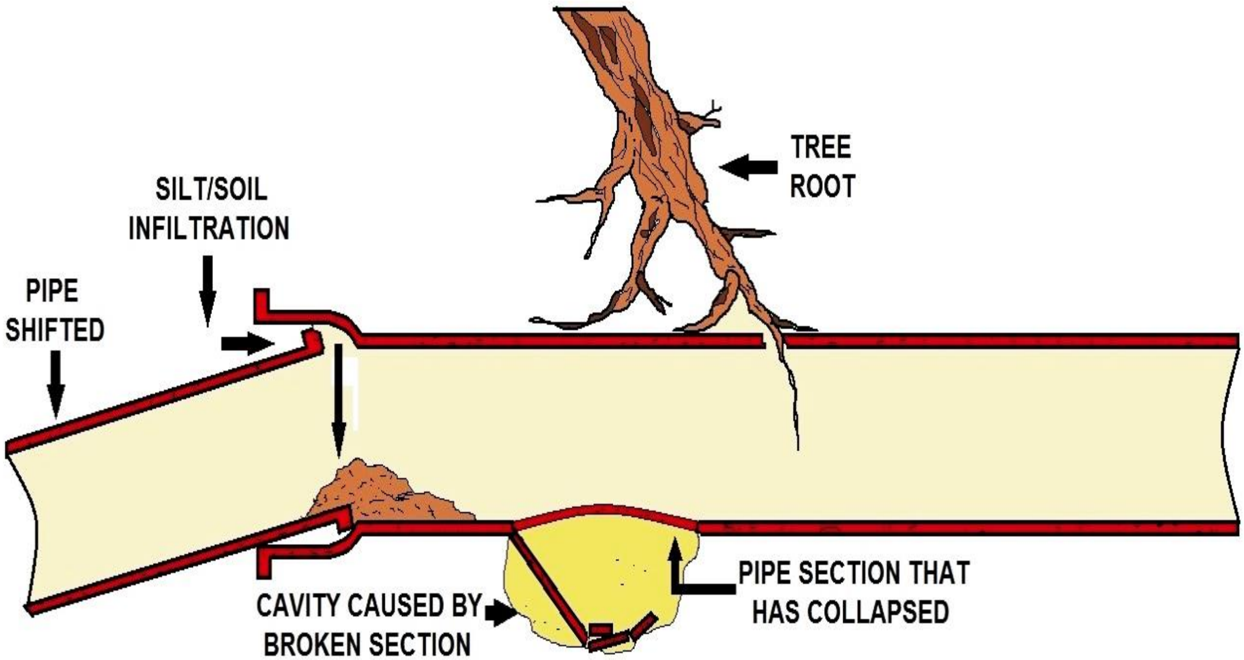
Dyed water testing may be used to establish the connection of a fixture or appurtenance to the sewer. It is often used to confirm smoke testing or to test fixtures that did not smoke. As is the case with smoke testing, it is not used on a routine basis, but rather in areas that have displayed high wet weather flows. Dyed water testing can be used to identify structurally damaged manholes that might create potential I/I problems. This is accomplished by flooding the area close to the suspected manholes with dyed water and checking for entry of dyed water at the frame-chimney area, cone or corbel, and walls of the manhole.

Sewer System Inspection

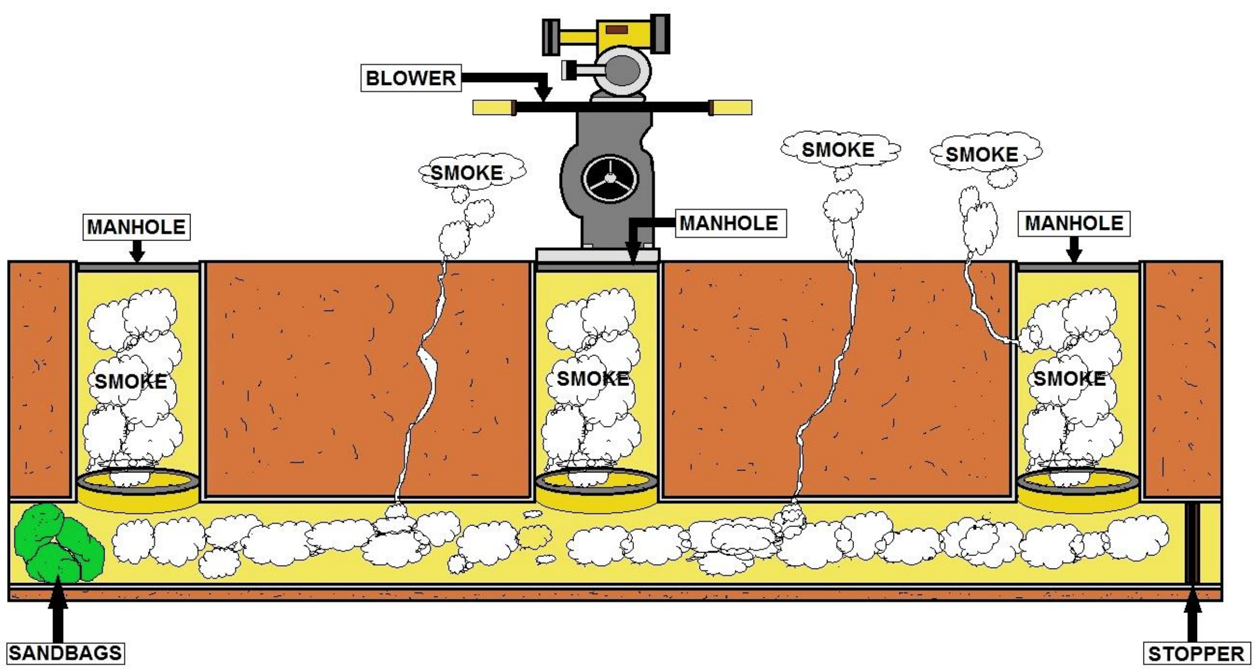
Visual inspection of manholes and pipelines is the first line of defense in the identification of existing or potential problem areas. Visual inspections should take place on both a scheduled basis and as part of any preventive or corrective maintenance activity. Visual inspections provide additional information concerning the accuracy of system mapping, the presence and degree of I/I problems, and the physical state-of-repair of the system. By observing the manhole directly and the incoming and outgoing lines with a mirror, it is possible to determine structural condition, the presence of roots, condition of joints, depth of debris in the line, and depth of flow.

The reviewer should examine the records of visual inspections to ensure that the following information is recorded:

- Manhole identification number and location.
- Cracks or breaks in the manhole or pipe (inspection sheets and/or logs should record details on defects.)
- Accumulations of grease, debris, or grit
- Wastewater flow characteristics (e.g., flowing freely or backed up.)
- Inflow - Infiltration (presence of clear water in or flowing through the manhole.)
- Presence of corrosion.
- Offsets or misalignments.
- Condition of the frame.
- Evidence of surcharge.
- Atmospheric hazard measurements (especially hydrogen sulfide.)
- If repair is necessary, a notation as to whether a work order has been issued.



BROKEN SEWER PIPE



SMOKE TEST IN SEWER MAIN

Manhole Section

Manholes should undergo routine inspection typically every one to five years. There should be a baseline for manhole inspections (e.g., once every two years) with problematic manholes being inspected more frequently. The reviewer should conduct visual observation at a small but representative number of manholes for the items listed below.

There are various pipeline inspection techniques, the most common include: lamping, camera inspection, sonar, and CCTV. These will be explained further in the following sections.

Sewer System Inspection Techniques
Sewer inspection is an important component of any maintenance program. There are a number of inspection techniques that may be employed to inspect a sewer system. The reviewer should determine if an inspection program includes frequency and schedule of inspections and procedures to record the results. Sewer system cleaning should always be considered before inspection is performed in order to provide adequate clearance and inspection results. Additionally, a reviewer should evaluate records maintained for inspection activities, including whether information is maintained on standardized logs, and should include:

- Location and identification of line being inspected.
- Pipe size and type.
- Name of personnel performing inspection.
- Distance inspected.
- Cleanliness of the line.
- Condition of the manhole with pipe defects identified by footage from the starting manhole.
- Results of inspection, including estimates of I/I.

Camera Inspection
Lamping involves lowering a still camera into a manhole. The camera is lined up with the centerline of the junction of the manhole frame and sewer. A picture is the taken down the pipe with a strobe-like flash. A disadvantage of this technique is that only the first 10-12 feet of the pipe can be inspected upstream and downstream of the access point. Additionally, it has limited use in small diameter sewers. The benefits of this technique include not requiring confined space entry and little equipment and set-up time is required.

Camera inspection is more comprehensive than lamping in that more of the sewer can be viewed. A still camera is mounted on a floatable raft and released into a pipe. The camera takes pictures with a strobe-like flash as it floats through the sewer pipe. This technique is often employed in larger lines where access points are far apart. Similar to lamping, portions of the pipe may still be missed using this technique. Obviously, there also must be flow in the pipe for the raft to float. This technique also does not fully capture the invert of the pipe and its condition. Sonar is a newer technology deployed similarly to CCTV cameras, and described in more detail below. The sonar emits a pulse which bounces off the walls of the sewer. The time it takes for this pulse to bounce back provides data and an image of the interior of the pipe, including its structural condition. A benefit of this technique is that it can be used in flooded or inaccessible sections of the sewer. The drawback is that the technique requires heavy and expensive equipment.

Sewer scanner and evaluation is an experimental technology where a 360 degree scanner produces a full digital photograph of the interior of the pipe. This technique is similar to sonar in that a more complete image of a pipe can be made than with CCTV, but not all types of sewer defects may be identified as readily (i.e., infiltration, corrosion).

Raising the Ring, jackhammer, install the crown, patch the street.

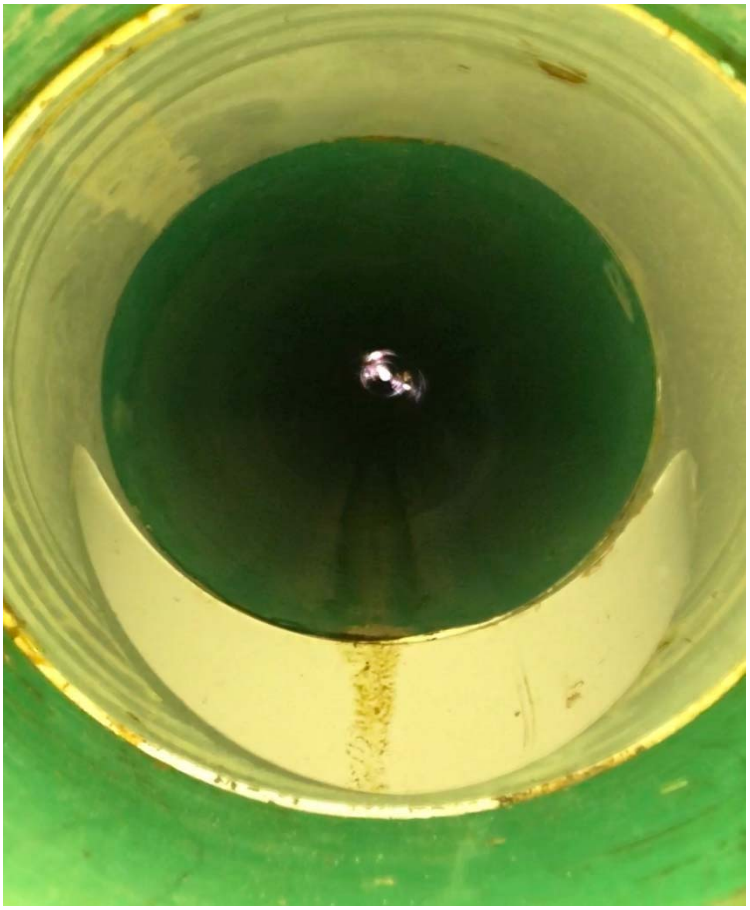
Looking down inside the manhole.

Camel or Vactor Truck.

Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) Inspections

Closed Circuit Television (CCTV) inspections are a helpful tool for early detection of potential problems. This technique involves a closed-circuit camera with a light which is self-propelled or pulled down the pipe.

As it moves it records the interior of the pipe. CCTV inspections may be done on a routine basis as part of the preventive maintenance program, as well as part of an investigation into the cause of I/I. CCTV, however, eliminates the hazards associated with confined space entry. The output is displayed on a monitor and videotaped. A benefit of CCTV inspection is that a permanent visual record is captured for subsequent reviews.



An offset discovered by CCTV.

A remotely controlled TV camera on the top left is utilized by crews to identify and video tape problem areas within the system. By using this equipment, staff can determine what the cause of the problem is, what materials will be needed for repair, and where the problem area is.

Repairs can be made quickly without digging up large areas to find and correct a problem, as was done in the past. There are many reasons for inspecting sewer lines with a closed circuit television (CCTV). All of the following are valid reasons; locating sources of inflow and infiltration, locating buried manholes, and locating illegal sewer taps such as industrial or storm drains.

The Televising Van should be equipped with two cameras, one color camera for televising main sanitary lines and one color or black & white camera for televising house services (connection from the main sanitary line to a house).

Sewer System Rehabilitation Introduction

The collection system owner or operator should have a sewer rehabilitation program. The objective of sewer rehabilitation is to maintain the overall viability of a collection system. This is done in three ways:
(1) ensuring its structural integrity;
(2) limiting the loss of conveyance and wastewater treatment capacity due to excessive I/I; and
(3) limiting the potential for groundwater contamination by controlling exfiltration from the pipe network.

The rehabilitation program should build on information obtained as a result of all forms of maintenance and observations made as part of the capacity evaluation and asset inventory to assure the continued ability of the system to provide sales and service at the least cost. The reviewer should try to gain a sense of how rehabilitation is prioritized. Priorities may be stated in the written program or may be determined through interviews with system personnel.

There are many rehabilitation methods; the choice of methods depends on pipe size, type, location, dimensional changes, sewer flow, material deposition, surface conditions, severity of I/I, and other physical factors. Non-structural repairs typically involve the sealing of leaking joints in otherwise sound pipe.

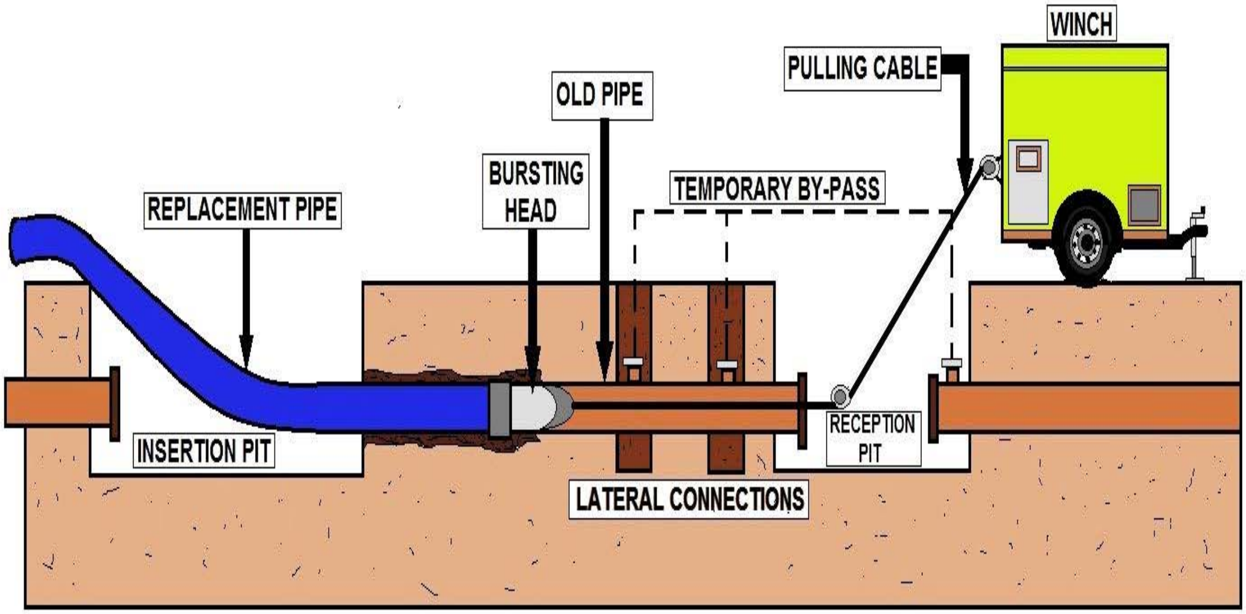
Structural repairs involve either the replacement of all or a portion of a sewer line, or the lining of the sewer. These repairs can be carried out by excavating, usually for repairs limited to one or two pipe segments (these are known as point repairs) or by trenchless technologies (in which repair is carried out via existing manholes or a limited number of access excavations).

The rehabilitation program should identify the methods that have been used in the past, their success rating, and methods to be used in the future. A reviewer who wants further guidance on methods of rehabilitation may consult the owner's or operator's policies regarding service lateral rehabilitation, since service laterals can constitute a serious source of I/I.

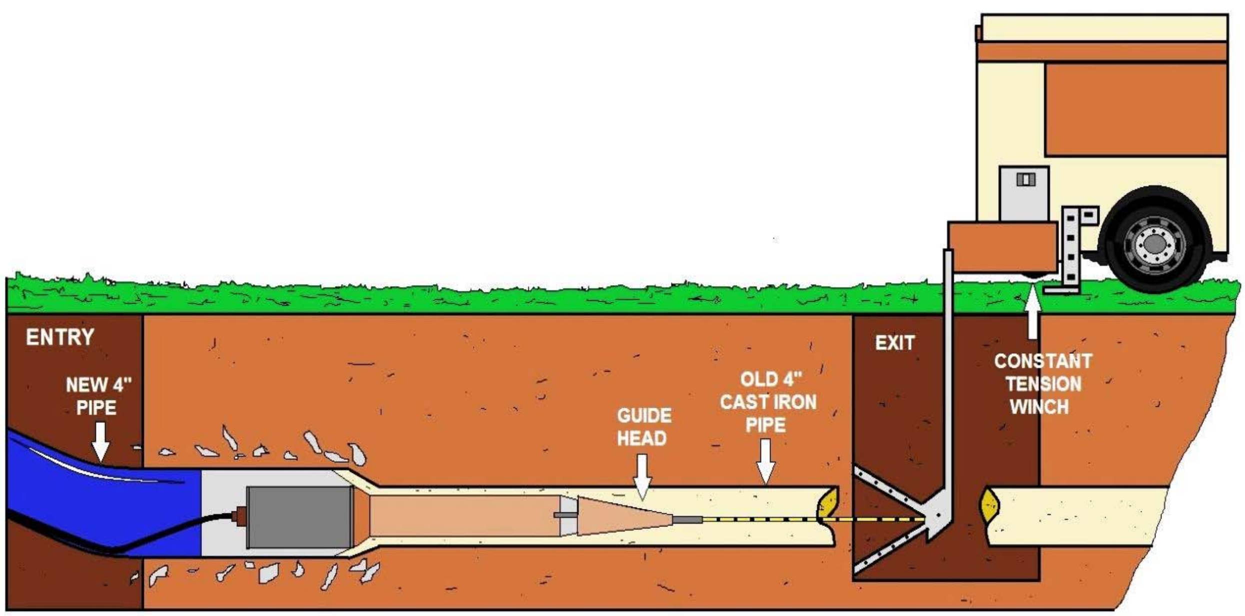
Manholes should not be neglected in the rehabilitation program. Manhole covers can allow significant inflow to enter the system because they are often located in the path of surface runoff. Manholes themselves can also be a significant source of infiltration from cracks in the barrel of the manhole. The owner or operator should be able to produce documentation on the location and methods used for sewer rehabilitation.

The reviewer should compare the rehabilitation accomplished with that recommended by the capacity evaluation program. When examining the collection system rehabilitation program, the reviewer should be able to answer the following questions:

- Is rehabilitation taking place before it becomes emergency maintenance?
- Are recommendations made as a result of the previously described inspections?
- Does the rehabilitation program take into account the age and condition of the sewers?



TRENCHLESS PIPE REPLACEMENT



TRENCHLESS SEWER REPAIR

Tree Roots vs. Sanitary Sewer Lines

Root Growth in Pipes

Roots require oxygen to grow, they do not grow in pipes that are full of water or where high ground water conditions prevail. Roots thrive in the warm, moist, nutrient rich atmosphere above the water surface inside sanitary sewers. The flow of warm water inside the sanitary sewer service pipe causes water vapor to escape to the cold soil surrounding the pipe. Tree roots are attracted to the water vapor leaving the pipe and they follow the vapor trail to the source of the moisture, which are usually cracks or loose joints in the sewer pipe. Upon reaching the crack or pipe joint, tree roots will penetrate the opening to reach the nutrients and moisture inside the pipe. This phenomenon continues in winter even though trees appear to be dormant.

Problems Caused by Roots Inside Sewers

Once inside the pipe, roots will continue to grow, and if not disturbed, they will completely fill the pipe with multiple hair-like root masses at each point of entry. The root mass inside the pipe becomes matted with grease, tissue paper, and other debris discharged from the residence or business. Homeowners will notice the first signs of a slow flowing drainage system by hearing gurgling noises from toilet bowls and observing wet areas around floor drains after completing the laundry. A complete blockage will occur if no remedial action is taken to remove the roots/blockage. As roots continue to grow, they expand and exert considerable pressure at the crack or joint where they entered the pipe. The force exerted by the root growth will break the pipe and may result in total collapse of the pipe. Severe root intrusion and pipes that are structurally damaged will require replacement.

Tree Roots in Sewer

Tree roots growing inside sewer pipes are generally the most expensive sewer maintenance item experienced by City residents. Roots from trees growing on private property and on parkways throughout the City are responsible for many of the sanitary sewer service backups and damaged sewer pipes.

Homeowners should be aware of the location of their sewer service and refrain from planting certain types of trees and hedges near the sewer lines. The replacement cost of a sanitary sewer service line as a result of damage from tree roots may be very expensive.

Pipes Susceptible to Root Damage

Some pipe material is more resistant to root intrusion than others. Clay tile pipe that was commonly installed by developers and private contractors until the late 1980's is easily penetrated and damaged by tree roots. Concrete pipe and PVC pipe may also allow root intrusions, but to a lesser extent than clay tile pipe. PVC pipe is more resistant to root intrusion because it usually has fewer joints. The tightly fitting PVC joints are less likely to leak as a result of settlement of backfill around the pipe.

Root Spread

During drought conditions and in winter, tree roots travel long distances in search of moisture. As a general rule, tree roots will extend up to 2.5 times the height of the tree, and some species of trees may have roots extending five to seven times the height of the tree.

Root Growth Control
The common method of removing roots from sanitary sewer service pipes involves the use of augers, root saws, and high pressure flushers. These tools are useful in releasing blockages in an emergency, however, cutting and tearing of roots encourages new growth. The effect is the same as pruning a hedge to promote faster, thicker, and stronger regrowth.

Roots removed by auguring are normally just a small fraction of the roots inside the pipe. To augment the cutting and auguring methods, there are products available commercially that will kill the roots inside the pipe without harming the tree. The use of products such as copper sulfate and sodium hydroxide are not recommended because of negative environmental impacts on the downstream receiving water. Also, these products may kill the roots but they do not inhibit regrowth.

The more modern method used throughout Canada and the United States for controlling root growth involves the use of an herbicide mixed with water and a foaming agent. The foam mixture is pumped into the sewer pipe to kill any roots that come into contact with the mixture. New root growth will be inhibited from three to five years after the treatment, according to the manufacturers.

FlexKid is an accessory for Ripper tools designed to clear roots and other blockages from sewer pipes. The unit readily passes through pipes and around or over typical obstructions like offset joints, hand taps and debris. Available for pipes 18 inches and larger, it features durable cable and easy attachment to the rear of any root-cutting motor. It is designed for quick setup and quick size changes in field. No underground (in-manhole) assembly is required, and no manhole modification is necessary.

The Knocker is a chain cleaner designed to use in conjunction with The Ripper. The Ripper positions The Knocker's chain-knocking action in the center of the pipe and keeps the chain from hanging up on offsets and hand-taps. The Ripper follows up by removing loose debris - leaving pipes cleaner than any other sewer cleaning tool - period.

Courtesy of DML, LLC
419 Colford Avenue
West Chicago, Il 60185
Phone (630) 293-3653
rootripper@ameritech.net

Smoking out Sewer Leaks

An overview of smoke testing, an important part of successful ***I & I*** *studies.*
By Paul Tashian, Superior Signal Company, Inc.

Used extensively for over 40 years, smoke testing has proven to be a vital ingredient of successful inflow and infiltration (I&I) studies. It is as important now as it has ever been, as growing municipalities increase demands on aging, often deteriorating collection systems. In addition, programs such as the EPA's new CMOM (capacity, management, operations, and maintenance) emphasize a focus on proactive, preventive maintenance practices. Smoke testing is an effective method of documenting sources of inflow and should be part of any CMOM program.

Just as a doctor would require the aid of several instruments to evaluate the status of one's health, various test methods should be used in performing a complete sanitary sewer evaluation survey (SSES). In addition to smoke testing, these could include dyed water testing, manhole inspection, TV inspection, flow monitoring, and more. Specializing in sanitary sewer evaluation surveys, Wade & Associates of Lawrence Kansas states a reduction of 30 to 50% in peak flows can be expected as a result of implementing these types of programs.

Smoke testing is a relatively simple process, which consists of blowing smoke mixed with larger volumes of air into the sanitary sewer line, usually induced through the manhole. The smoke travels the path of least resistance and quickly shows up at sites that allow surface water inflow. Smoke will identify broken manholes, illegal connections (including roof drains, sump pumps, yard drains and more), uncapped lines, and will even shows cracked mains and laterals providing there is a passageway for the smoke to travel to the surface.

Although video inspection and other techniques are certainly important components of an I&I survey, research has shown that approximately 65% of all extraneous stormwater inflow enters the system from somewhere other than the main line (see private sector diagram). Smoke testing is an excellent method of inspecting both the mainlines, laterals and more.

Smoke travels throughout the system, identifying problems in all connected lines, even sections of line that were not known to exist, or thought to be independent or unconnected. Best results are obtained during dry weather, which allows smoke better opportunity to travel to the surface.

Necessary Equipment

Blowers; Most engineering specifications for smoke testing identify the use of a blower able to provide 1750 cfm (cubic feet of air per minute), however in today's world it seems to be the mindset that bigger is better. New smoke blowers on the market can deliver over 3000 cfm, but is this really needed? Once the manhole area is filled, the smoke only needs to travel sections of generally 8 or 10-inch pipe.

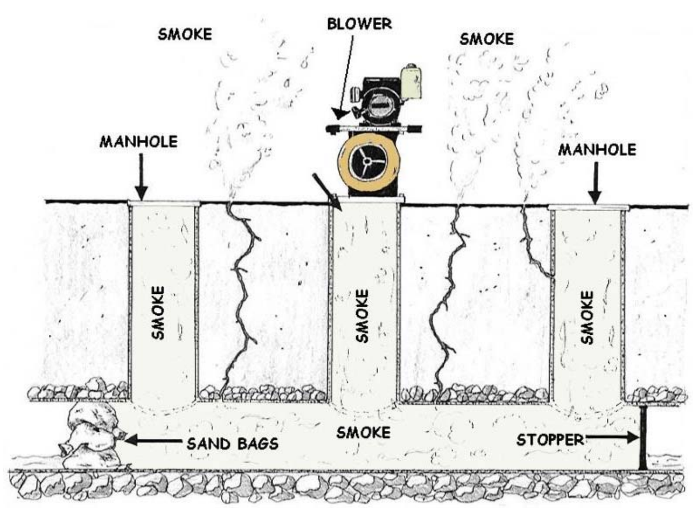
Moving the air very quickly is useless if the blower does not have the static pressure to push that air/smoke through the lines. If you've used high CFM blowers and found that smoke frequently backs up to the surface, this may be your problem.

Blowers

There are two types of blowers available for smoke testing sewers: squirrel cage and direct drive propeller. In general, squirrel cage blowers are usually larger in size, but can provide more static pressure in relation to CFM. The output of the squirrel cage type is usually adjustable by alternating pulleys and belts to meet the demands of the job. Propeller style blowers are usually more compact and generally offer approx. 3,200 CFM.

Other than reducing the engine throttle, the output is not adjustable since the fan blade is attached directly to the engine shaft. If purchasing a smoke blower you should ask the manufacturer if the CFM and static pressure output they are quoting is the specification of the propeller itself (uninstalled/free air), or if it is the actual performance when installed in the blower assembly. These two numbers can vary significantly.

Smoke Types; There are two types of smoke currently offered for smoke testing sewers, classic smoke candles and smoke fluids.



Smoke candles were first used for testing sewers when the process began its popularity back in 1961, and continue to be the most widely used. They are used by simply placing a smoke candle on the fresh air intake side of the blower. Once ignited, the exiting smoke is drawn in with the fresh air and blown down into the manhole and throughout the system. Smoke candles are available in various sizes that can be used singularly or in combination to meet any need. This type of smoke is formed by a chemical reaction, creating a smoke which contains a high content of atmospheric moisture. It is very visible even at low concentrations, and extremely effective at finding leaks.

Another available source of smoke is a smoke fluid system. Although they have just recently been more aggressively marketed, smoke fluids became available for sewer testing shortly after smoke candles, some 30 years ago. They can certainly be used effectively, but it is important to understand how they work. This system involves injecting a smoke fluid (usually a petroleum based product) into the hot exhaust stream of the engine where it is heated within the muffler (or heating chamber) and exhausted into the air intake side of the blower. One gallon of smoke fluid is generally less expensive than one dozen smoke candles, however smoke fluids do not consistently provide the same quality of smoke. When using smoke fluid, it is important to understand that as fluid is injected into the heating chamber (or muffler) it immediately begins to cool the unit. The heating chamber will eventually reach a point where it is not hot enough to completely convert all the fluid to smoke, thus creating thin/wet smoke. This can actually happen quickly, depending on the rate of fluid flow. If the smoke has become thin it can be especially difficult to see at greater distances.

Blocking off sections of line is usually a good idea with any type of smoke, but becomes almost a necessity when using smoke fluid. Some manufactures have taken steps to address this issue, and now offer better flow control, fluid distribution, and most importantly *insulated heating chambers* to help maintain necessary temperatures.

Safety; Maybe one of the more talked about, yet least understood aspects of smoke testing is the use and safety of these products. As manufacturers have become more competitive, some marketing programs and advertisements have implied danger in the use of competitive types of smoke products. Laboratory reports, scientific studies, and even Material Safety Data Sheets can be quite confusing to most of us who are not trained or qualified to make scientific judgments on this data. Having this information delivered to us in the form of advertising can be dangerous, as most of us tend to believe what we read.

An author of an associated industry publication once stated… "*Do not use smoke bombs, as they give off a toxic gas*". Although the author quotes no scientific literature to support this statement, competitive propaganda has made such implications. It is interesting to note that the same exact statement could be made for smoke fluids. Smoke from fluid is created in the exhaust system of the engine, which contains carbon monoxide. Is carbon monoxide not a toxic gas?

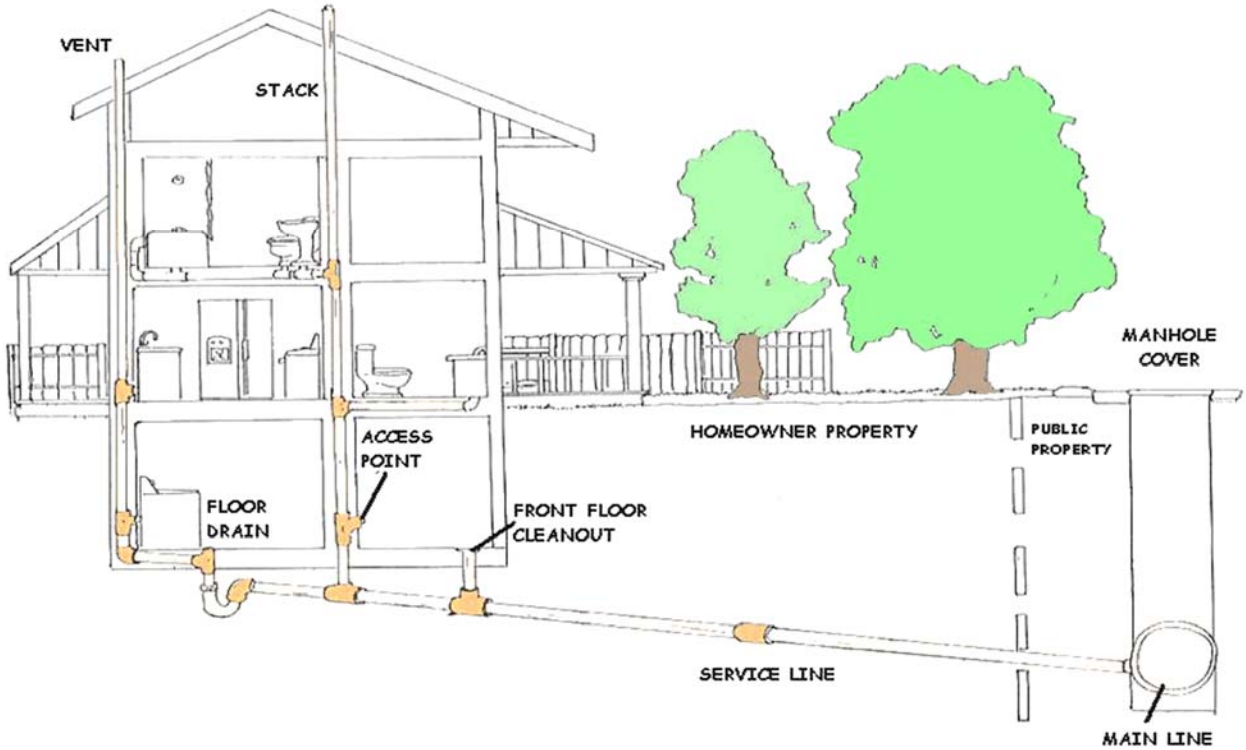
Other statements that have been made include warnings to wear a respirator while smoke testing. While certain manufacturers have issued this warning about competitive products, they do not qualify the statement, nor do they mention the fact that the same thing could be said of their own product.

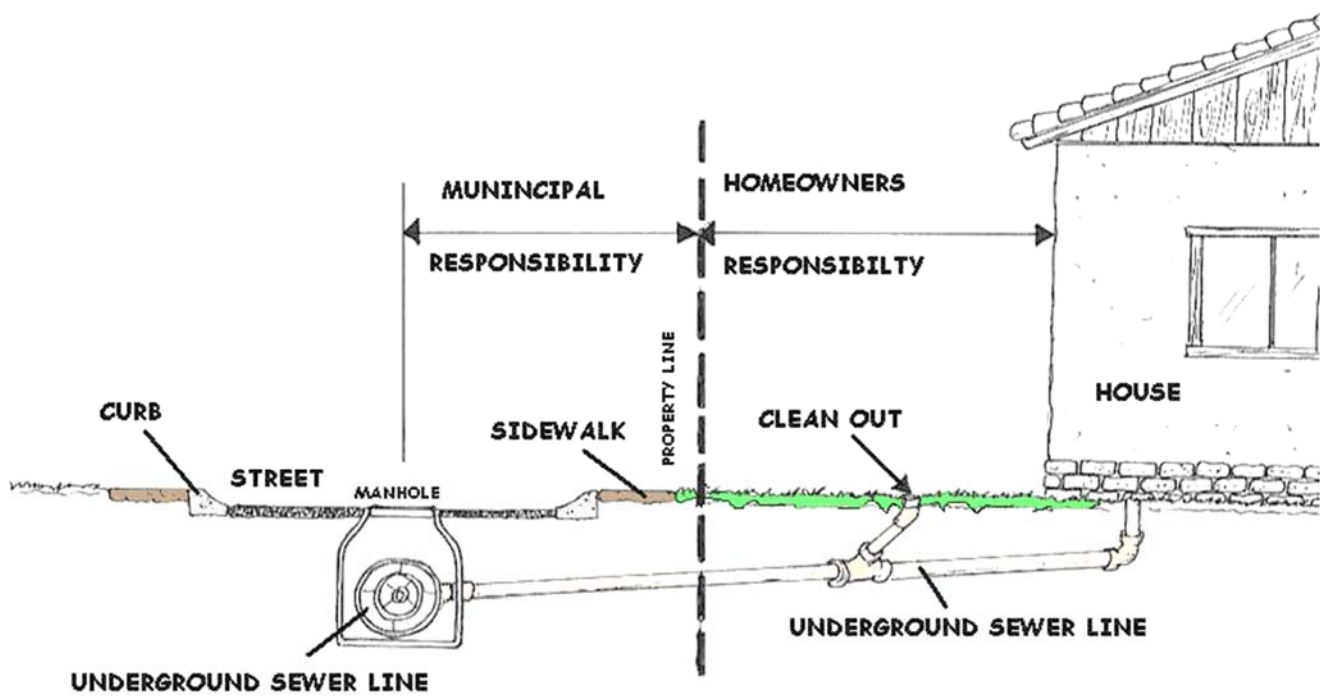
The fact is that a respirator should be worn whenever a person would be exposed to ANY substance in quantities that exceeded OSHA limits. The bottom line on safety is that it is important to use common sense. All smokes, candles, and fluids can be used safely and effectively when used as directed.

When planning to smoke test, it is important to develop a proactive public notice program. Ads in local papers, door hangers, mailers, as well as door to door inquiries are recommended. It is helpful to educate the public as to why the test is being performed and the positive benefits to the community. In addition, it should instruct residents on what to do and who to call if smoke should enter their homes. It is also important to notify local police and fire departments daily, as to where and when smoke testing will be taking place.

Reducing stormwater inflow into collection systems means reduced chances of overflows, less emergency maintenance and less money spent on treatment. If these are goals of your organization, consider smoke testing as a fairly easy, inexpensive, and effective way of achieving your objectives.

Paul Tashian is employed by Superior Signal Company Inc., a manufacturer of all types of smoke testing equipment, and a major contributor to the original development of smoke testing practices. Paul can be reached at (732) 251-0800, or ptashian@superiorsignal.com. Also, thanks to Wade & Associates (a company specializing in sanitary sewer evaluation surveys) for offering reference material, and providing artwork and photographs used in this article. For information on Wade's services call (785) 841-1774, or visit www.wadeinc.com.


VENT
STACK
MANHOLE COVER
HOMEOWNER PROPERTY
PUBLIC PROPERTY
ACCESS POINT
FLOOR DRAIN
FRONT FLOOR CLEANOUT
SERVICE LINE
MAIN LINE


MUNINCIPAL
RESPONSIBILITY
HOMEOWNERS
RESPONSIBILTY
PROPERTY LINE
HOUSE
CURB
STREET
MANHOLE
SIDEWALK
CLEAN OUT
UNDERGROUND SEWER LINE
UNDERGROUND SEWER LINE

More on Manholes

When designing a wastewater system, the design engineer begins by first determining the types and quantities of sewage to be handled. This is accomplished through a careful study of the area to be served. The design engineer bases his design on the average daily use of water per person in the area to be served. A typical value is 100 gallons per person per day. But, the use of water is not constant.

Use is greater in the summer than in the winter and greater during the morning and evening than it is in the middle of the day or at night. Therefore, the average daily flow (based on the average utilization) is multiplied by a peak flow factor to obtain the design flow.

Typical peak flow factors range from 4 to 6 for small areas down to 1.5 to 2.5 for larger areas. An allowance for unavoidable infiltration of surface and subsurface water into the lines is sometimes added to the peak flow to obtain the design flow. A typical infiltration allowance is 500 gallons per inch of pipe diameter per mile of sewer per day. From the types of sewage and the estimated design flow, the engineer can then tentatively select the types, sizes, slopes, and distances below grade of the piping to be used for the system.

Upon acceptance of the preliminary designs, final design may begin. During this phase, adjustments to the preliminary design should be made as necessary, based upon additional surveys, soil analysis, or other design factors. The final designs should include a general map of the area that shows the locations of all sewer lines and structures.

They also should include detailed plans and profiles of the sewers showing ground elevations, pipe sizes and slopes, and the locations of any appurtenances and structures, such as manholes and lift stations.

Construction plans and details are also included for those appurtenances and structures.

Newly finished Manhole and Laterals.

Lead and Oakum Joint, Compression Joint and No-Hub Joints— These types of joints are used to connect cast-iron soil pipes (CISP) and fittings. In lead and oakum joints, oakum (made of hemp impregnated with bituminous compound and loosely twisted or spun into a rope or yarn) is packed into the hub completely around the joint, and melted lead is poured over it.

In compression joints, an assembly tool is used to force the spigot end of the pipe or fitting into the lubricated gasket inside the hub. A no-hub joint uses a gasket on the end of one pipe and a stainless steel shield and clamp assembly on the end of the other pipe.

Mortar or Bituminous Joints — This type of joint is common to vitrified clay and concrete pipes and fittings. Mortar joints may be made of grout (a mixture of cement, sand, and water).

The use of ***SPEED SEAL JOINTS*** (rubber rings) in joining vitrified clay pipe has become widespread. Speed seal joints eliminate the use of oakum and mortar joints for sewer mains. This type of seal is made a part of the vitrified pipe joint when manufactured. It is made of polyvinyl chloride and is called a plastisol joint connection

Smoke Testing is accomplished by forcing a non-toxic smoke into the sewer system and looking for locations where it is improperly exiting.

These locations are considered illegal connections in that they allow stormwater directly or indirectly to enter the sanitary sewer system.

Typical illegal connections found are roof drains tied directly into the system, abandoned customer sewer lines that were not properly capped, as well as an occasional broken sewer line.

Low Pressure System Description and Operation

Vacuum Sewers

Wastewater from one or more homes flows by gravity to a holding tank known as the valve pit. When the wastewater level reaches a certain level, sensors within the holding tank open a vacuum valve that allows the contents of the tank to be sucked into the network of collection piping. There are no manholes with a vacuum system; instead, access can be obtained at each valve pit. The vacuum or draw within the system is created at a vacuum station. Vacuum stations are small buildings that house a large storage tank and a system of vacuum pumps.

Vacuum sewer systems are limited to an extent by elevation changes of the land. Rolling terrain with small elevation changes can be accommodated, yet steep terrain would require the addition of lift stations like those used for conventional sewer systems. It is generally recommended that there be at least 75 properties per pump station for the use of a vacuum sewer system to be cost effective.

This minimum property requirement tends to make vacuum sewers most conducive for small communities with a relatively high density of properties per acre. The maintenance and operation of this system requires a full-time system operator with the necessary training. This can make the operation and maintenance costs of vacuum sewers exceed those of other systems.

Applications

Vacuum collection and transportation systems can provide significant capital and ongoing operating cost advantages over conventional gravity systems, particularly in flat terrain, high water table, or hard rock areas. Vacuum sewer systems are installed at shallow depths, significantly reducing excavation, shoring and restoration requirements, and minimizing the disruption to the community. The alignment of vacuum mains is extremely flexible, without the need for manholes at changes in grade or direction.

Vacuum sewer mains can skip over and around other services or obstacles and can be used to achieve uphill flow. Turbulent velocities of 5 to 6m/sec are developed as the sewage and air passes through the interface valve. This disintegrates solids and reduces the risks of sewer blockages in a correctly designed and constructed vacuum system.

No electricity is required at the interface valve, enabling the system to be installed in virtually any location. Fractures in gravity systems may go undetected for a long time. A leak in a vacuum main will raise an alarm within minutes of the break. The mains have to be repaired for sewage transport to continue, ensuring up to date maintenance and eliminating deterioration and infiltration.

Due to the shallow depth of the installation, additional connections can be quickly and simply made by a small construction crew, thus reducing the disruption and restoration work normally required for conventional gravity sewers. Vacuum collection and transport systems have many applications in industry for collecting all forms of liquid waste, including toxic and radioactive fluids. Collection pipes may be installed above ground, overhead or in utility ducts.

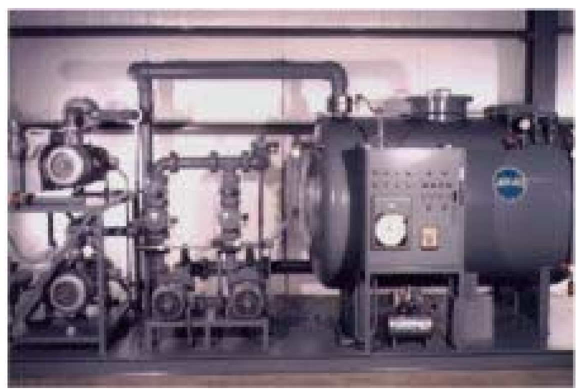
The versatility of the vacuum sewer system can be employed in a variety of locations and situations, such as:

- Rural community sewerage schemes.
- Industrial redevelopments.

- Camping and caravan sites.
- New residential and industrial developments.
- Existing towns (especially where narrow streets or congested service corridors occur).
- Diversion of small sea outfalls.
- Hospital effluent collection.
- Airports/Shopping centers.
- Railway services.
- Replacement of failed gravity systems.
- Petrol-chemical industry.
- Food processing plants.
- Roof drainage.
- Retrofitting factories for the management of segregated wastestreams.
- Collection of toxic and radioactive waste.
- Condensate collection systems.
- Factory sewerage.
- Leachate from landfills.
- Spillage around tank farms.
- Collecting used oil and fluids.
- River and lakeside communities.
- Quayside redevelopments.
- Arctic communities.

Vacuum Interface Valves

There is an interface between the vacuum within the vacuum mains and the atmospheric pressure is maintained within the vacuum interface chamber. When sewage is entering the system from a source and the sewage level in the chamber rises, it pressurizes air in the 63mm sensor line. This air pressure is transmitted by a hose to the controller/sensor unit, which opens the valve and the wastewater is rapidly drawn into the vacuum main. This suction of the sewer creates a vortex in the sump and air is drawn into the sewer with the sewage.



As the valve opens, a pneumatic timer in the controller/sensor unit starts a pre-set time cycle. The timer holds the valve open for sufficient time to draw all the sewage out of the sump and allows a designated amount of air to enter the system. The interface valve is capable of serving at least four equivalent tenements, and multiple valve chambers may be installed to serve higher flow rates. No electricity is required at the valve chamber. The vacuum valve is automatically operated by the pressure generated with the rising sewage level and the pneumatic timer, and actuated by the vacuum in the sewer.

Differential air pressure is the driving force in vacuum sewer systems. The vacuum sewer lines are under a vacuum of 16"-20" Hg (-0.5 to -0.7 bar) created by vacuum pumps located at the vacuum station. The pressure differential between the atmospheric pressure and the vacuum in the sewer lines of 7 to 10 psi (0.5 - 0.7 bar) provides the energy required to open the vacuum interface valves and to transport the sewage. Sewage flows by gravity from homes into a collection sump.

When 10 gallons (40 liters) accumulates in the sump, the vacuum interface valve located above the sump automatically opens and differential air pressure propels the sewage through the valve and into the vacuum main. Sewage flows through the vacuum lines and into the collection tank at the vacuum station.

Sewage pumps transfer the sewage from the collection tank to the wastewater treatment facility or nearby gravity manhole. There are no electrical connections required at the home. Power is necessary only at the vacuum station.

Valve Pit Package
The Valve Pit Package connects the homes to the vacuum sewer system. Raw sewage flows by gravity from up to four homes into a sealed fiberglass sump. Located above the sewage sump and surrounded by a fiberglass valve pit is a 3" (90 mm) vacuum interface valve, which is pneumatically controlled and operated. Vacuum from the sewer line opens the valve and outside air from a breather pipe closes it.

Sewage level sensing is remarkably simple. As the sewage level rises, air trapped in the empty 2" (50 mm) diameter sensor pipe pushes on a diaphragm in the valve's controller/sensor unit, signaling the valve to open. When ten gallons of sewage accumulates in the sump the valve automatically opens. The differential air pressure propels the sewage at velocities of 15-18 feet per second (4.5 - 5.5 m/s), disintegrating solids while being transported to the vacuum station. The valve stays open for four to six seconds during this cycle.

Atmospheric air used for transport enters through the 4" (100 mm) screened air intake on the gravity line. There are no odors at this air inlet due to the small volumes of sewage (10 gallons - 40 liters) and short detention times in the sump. The valve is 3" and designed for handling nominal 3" (75 mm) solids. Homes connected to vacuum sewers don't require any special plumbing fixtures. Typically one valve pit package serves two homes. Install the valve pit package in the street, if desired. With the optional traffic cast iron cover the valve pit package has a water loading rating.

Vacuum Lines
Vacuum sewer lines are installed in narrow trenches in a saw tooth profile for grade and uphill transport. Vacuum lines follow grade for downhill transport. Vacuum lines are slightly sloped (0.2%) towards the collection station. Unlike gravity sewers that must be laid at a minimum slope to obtain a 2 ft./sec. (0.6 m/s) scouring velocity, vacuum has a flatter slope since a high scouring velocity is a feature of vacuum sewage transport.

Line Sizes
The vacuum service line from the valve to the main in the street is 3" diameter (90 mm). The vacuum mains are 4", 6", 8" and 10" diameter (110 mm to 250 mm) schedule 40 or SDR 21 gasketed PVC pipe. PE pipe can also be used. In general, a potential vacuum loss is associated with every lift. This limits the length of each vacuum line to about 2 to 3 miles (3 to 5 km) in flat terrain. Elevation changes can extend or reduce this range. Longer distances are possible depending on local topography.

Vacuum Station

The vacuum station is similar in function to a lift station in a gravity sewer system. Sewage pumps transfer the sewage from the collection tank, through a force main, to the treatment plant. Unlike a lift station, the vacuum station has two vacuum pumps that create vacuum in the sewer lines and an enclosed collection tank.

Vacuum Pumps

The vacuum pumps maintain the system vacuum in the 16" to 20" mercury vacuum (-0.5 to -0.7 bar) operating range. Vacuum pumps typically run 2 to 3 hours each per day (4 to 6 hours total) and don't need to run continuously since the vacuum interface valves are normally closed. As sewage enters the system, driven by air at atmospheric pressure, the system vacuum will slowly decrease from 20" to 16" Hg. The vacuum pumps are sized to increase the system vacuum from 16" to 20" Hg in three minutes or less.

Typical vacuum pump sizes are 10, 15, and 25 horsepower (7.5, 11 and 18.6 kw). Busch rotary vane vacuum pumps are standard. The two non-clog sewage pumps are each sized for peak flow. The collection tank is steel or fiberglass and is sized according to flow, with typical sizes ranging from 1,000 to 4,000 gallons (3.8 to 15 cubic meters). The incoming vacuum lines connect individually to the collection tank, effectively dividing the system into zones. A stand-by generator keeps the vacuum sewer system in operation during extended power outages. An automatic telephone dialer alerts the operator to alarm conditions.

Review

Pressure Sewers

Instead of relying on gravity, pressure sewers utilize the force supplied by pumps, which deliver the wastewater to the system from each property. Since pressure sewers do not rely on gravity, the system's network of piping can be laid in very shallow trenches that follow the contour of the land.

There are two kinds of pressure sewer systems, based upon the type of pump used to provide the pressure. Systems that use a septic tank/effluent pump combination are referred to as STEP pressure sewers.

Like the small diameter gravity system, STEP pressure sewers utilize septic tanks to settle out the solids; this allows for the use of piping that is extremely narrow in diameter. The effluent pump delivers the wastewater to the sewer pipes and provides the necessary pressure to move it through the system. The other type of pressure sewer uses a grinder pump.

Wastewater from each property goes to a tank containing a pump with grinder blades that shred the solids into tiny particles. Both solids and liquids are then pumped into the sewer system. Because the effluent contains a mixture of solids as well as liquids, the diameter of the pipes must be slightly larger. However, grinder pumps eliminate the need to periodically pump the septic tanks for all the properties connected to the system.

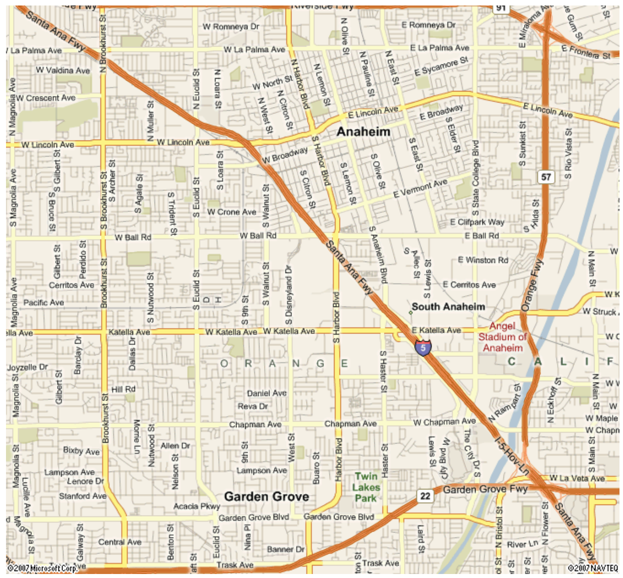
Both the STEP and grinder systems are installed with high water alarms. Because of the addition of the pumps, pressure sewers tend to require more operation and maintenance than small diameter gravity sewers.

Operators can usually be hired on a part time basis, as long as someone is on call at all times. Operators will need training on both the plumbing and electrical aspects of the system.

Sewer Line Mapping

The importance of maintaining accurate, current maps of the collection system cannot be overstated. Efficient collection system maintenance and repairs are unlikely if mapping is not adequate. Collection system maps should clearly indicate the information that personnel need to carry out their assignments. The collection system maps should contain information on the following:

- Main, trunk and interceptor sewers
- Building/house laterals
- Manholes
- Cleanouts
- Force mains
- Pump stations
- Service area boundaries
- Other landmarks (roads, water bodies, etc.)



Collection system maps should have a numbering system which uniquely identifies all manholes and sewer cleanouts. The system should be simple and easy to understand. Manholes and sewer cleanouts should have permanently assigned numbers and never be renumbered. Maps should also indicate the property served and reference its cleanout.

Sewer line maps should indicate the diameter, the length between the centers of manholes, and the slope or direction of flow. The dimensions of easements and property lines should be included on the maps. Other information that should be included on maps are access and overflow points, a scale, and a north arrow. All maps should have the date the map was drafted and the date of the last revision. Although optional, maps often include materials of pipe construction. Maps may come in different sizes and scales to be used for different purposes. Detailed local maps may be used by maintenance or repair crews to perform the duties. However, these detailed local maps should be keyed to one overall map that shows the entire system.

Geographic Information System (GIS)

GIS technology has made the mapping and map updating process considerably more efficient. GIS is a computerized mapping program capable of combining mapping with detailed information about the physical structures within the collection system. If a GIS program is being used by the owner or operator, the reviewer should ask if the program is capable of accepting information from the owner or operator's management program.

Specific procedures should be established for correction of errors and updating maps and drawings. Field personnel should be properly trained to recognize discrepancies between field conditions and map data and record changes necessary to correct the existing mapping system.

Reviewers should check to see that maps and plans are available to the personnel in the office and to field personnel or contractors involved in all engineering endeavors.

Key Design Characteristics

- Line locations, grades, depths, and capacities
- Maximum manhole spacing and size
- Minimum pipe size
- Pumping Station dimensions and capacities
- Drop manholes
- Flow velocities and calculations (peak flow and low-flow)
- Accessibility features
- Other technical specifications (e.g., materials, equipment)

New Sewer Construction

The owner or operator should maintain strict control over the introduction of flows into the system from new construction. New construction may be public (i.e., an expansion of the collection system) or private (i.e., a developer constructing sewers for a new development). Quality sanitary sewer designs keep costs and problems associated with operations, maintenance, and construction to a minimum. Design flaws are difficult to correct once construction is complete. The reviewer should be aware that this has historically not been adequately addressed in some collection systems. The owner or operator should have standards for new construction, procedures for reviewing designs and protocols for inspection, start-up, testing, and approval of new construction. The procedures should provide documentation of all activities, especially inspection.

Reviewers should examine construction inspection records and be able to answer the following:

- Does the volume of records seem reasonable given system size?

- Do records reflect that the public works inspectors are complying with procedures?

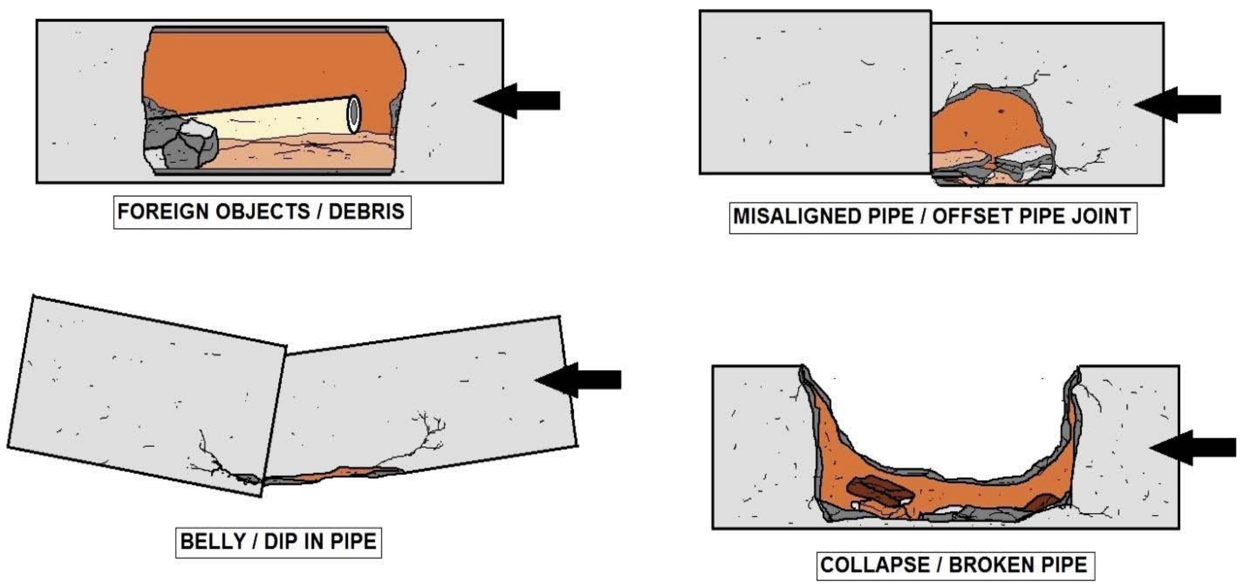
The state or other regulatory authority may also maintain standards for new construction. The standards held by the owner or operator should be at least as stringent. Start-up and testing should be in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations where applicable, and with recognized industry practices. Each step of the review, start-up, testing, and approval procedures should be documented.

The owner or operator approval procedure should reflect future ease of maintenance concerns. After construction is complete, a procedure for construction testing and inspection should be used. Construction supervision should be provided by qualified personnel such as a registered professional engineer.

Collection Systems O&M Summary

Sewer Cleaning and Inspection
As sewer system networks age, the risk of deterioration, blockages, and collapses becomes a major concern. As a result, municipalities worldwide are taking proactive measures to improve performance levels of their sewer systems.

Cleaning and inspecting sewer lines is essential to maintaining a properly functioning system; these activities further a community's reinvestment into its wastewater infrastructure.



COMMON CAUSES OF SEWER LATERAL BLOCKAGES

Inspection Techniques
Inspection programs are required to determine current sewer conditions and to aid in planning a maintenance strategy. Ideally, sewer line inspections need to take place during low flow conditions. If the flow conditions can potentially overtop the camera, then the inspection should be performed during low flow times between midnight and 5 AM, or the sewer lines can be temporarily plugged to reduce the flow.

Most sewer lines are inspected using one or more of the following techniques:
- Closed-circuit television (CCTV).
- Cameras.
- Visual inspection.
- Lamping inspection.

Television (TV) inspections are the most frequently used most cost efficient in the long term, and most effective method to inspect the internal condition of a sewer. CCTV inspections are recommended for sewer lines with diameters of 0.1-1.2 m (4 - 48 inches.)

The CCTV camera must be assembled to keep the lens as close as possible to the center of the pipe. In larger sewers, the camera and lights are attached to a raft, which is floated through the sewer from one manhole to the next. To see details of the sewer walls, the camera and lights swivel both vertically and horizontally.

In smaller sewers, the cable and camera are attached to a sled, to which a parachute or droge is attached and floated from one manhole to the next. Documentation of inspections is very critical to a successful operation and maintenance (O&M) program. CCTV inspections produce a video record of the inspection that can be used for future reference. In larger sewers where the surface access points are more than 300 m (1000 linear feet) apart, camera inspections are commonly performed. This technique involves a raft-mounted film camera and strobe light. This method requires less power than the CCTV, so the power cable is smaller and more manageable. Inspections using a camera are documented on Polaroid or digital still photographs that are referenced in a log book according to date, time, and location.

Visual inspections are vital in fully understanding the condition of a sewer system. Visual inspections of manholes and pipelines are comprised of surface and internal inspections. Operators should pay specific attention to sunken areas in the groundcover above a sewer line and areas with ponding water. In addition, inspectors should thoroughly check the physical conditions of stream crossings, the conditions of manhole frames and covers or any exposed brickwork, and the visibility of manholes and other structures. For large sewer lines, a walk-through or internal inspection is recommended. This inspection requires the operator to enter a manhole, the channel, and the pipeline, and assess the condition of the manhole frame, cover, and chimney, and the sewer walls above the flow line.

When entering a manhole or sewer line, it is very important to observe the latest Occupational Safety and Health Administration confined space regulations. If entering the manhole is not feasible, mirrors can be used. Mirrors are usually placed at two adjacent manholes to reflect the interior of the sewer line. Lamping inspections are commonly used in low priority pipes, which tend to be pipes that are less than 20 years old.

Lamping is also commonly used on projects where funds are extremely limited. In the lamping technique, a camera is inserted and lowered into a maintenance hole and then positioned at the center of the junction of a manhole frame and the sewer. Visual images of the pipe interior are then recorded with the camera. Several specialized inspection techniques have been recently developed worldwide. This includes Light-line based and sonar-based equipment that measures the internal cross-sectional profile of sewer systems.

Sonar technology could be very useful in inspecting depressed sewers (inverted siphons), where the pipe is continually full of water under pressure. Melbourne Water and CSIRO Division of Manufacturing Technology have introduced a new technology called PIRAT, which consists of an in-pipe vehicle with a laser scanner. This instrument is capable of making a quantitative and automatic assessment of sewer conditions. The geometric data that is gathered is then used to recognize, identify, and rate defects found in the sewer lines.

Cleaning Techniques

To maintain its proper function, a sewer system needs a cleaning schedule. There are several traditional cleaning techniques used to clear blockages and to act as preventative maintenance tools. When cleaning sewer lines, local communities need to be aware of EPA regulations on solid and hazardous waste as defined in 40 CFR 261. In order to comply with state guidelines on testing and disposal of hazardous waste, check with the local authorities.

Hydraulic cleaning developments have also been emerging on the international frontier. France and Germany have developed several innovative flushing systems using a 'dam break' concept. France has developed a flushing system called the Hydrass.

The design of the Hydrass consists of a gate that pivots on a hinge to a near horizontal position. As the gate opens and releases a flow, a flush wave is generated that subsequently washes out any deposited sediments. Germany has also developed a similar system called GNA Hydroself®. This is a flushing system that requires no electricity, no maintenance and no fresh water. The Hydroself® consists of a hydraulically-operated gate and a concrete wall section constructed to store the flush water. This system can be installed into a large diameter sewer.

There appears to be no limit on the flushing length, as more flush water may be stored without incurring any additional construction or operating costs. Another example of such a technology is seen in the Brussels Sewer System. A wagon with a flushing vane physically moves along the sewer and disturbs the sediments so that they are transported with the sewer flow.

Although all of these methods have proven effective in maintaining sewer systems, the ideal method of reducing and controlling the materials found in sewer lines is education and pollution prevention. The public needs to be informed that common household substances such as grease and oil need to be disposed in the garbage in closed containers, and not into the sewer lines. This approach will not only minimize a homeowner's plumbing problems, but will also help keep the sewer lines clear.

In recent years, new methodologies and accelerated programs have been developed to take advantage of the information obtained from sewer line maintenance operations. Such programs incorporate information gathered from various maintenance activities with basic sewer evaluations to create a system that can remedy and prevent future malfunctions and failures more effectively and efficiently.

Some cities have attempted to establish a program that would optimize existing maintenance activities to reduce customer complaints, sanitary sewer overflows, time and money spent on sewer blockages, and other reactive maintenance activities.

Their plan is based on maintenance frequencies, system performance, and maintenance costs over a period of time. This plan was developed using Geographical Information System (GIS) and historical data to show areas of complaints, back-ups, and general maintenance information for the area.

The sewer vacuum truck utilizes both a high pressure stream of water and a vacuum system to clean and remove built up debris from sewer lines. These versatile vehicles are also used to clean lift station wet wells, stormwater catch basins, and to perform excavations to locate broken water or sewer lines. It reduces repair times and costs by over 50%.

Various Jetter or hydraulic cleaning attachments.

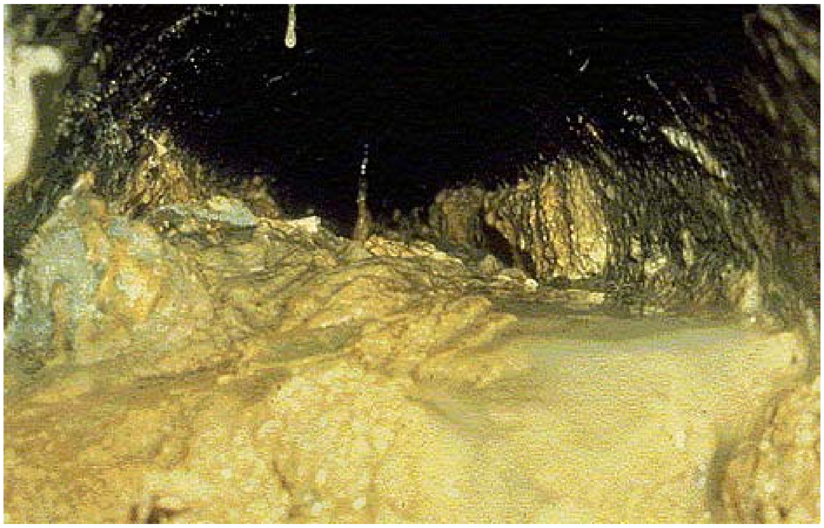
Grease Chapter 3

A grease interceptor commonly used in a commercial food service operations.

Most stoppages in the sewer are caused by grease. It is best to have a strong Ordinance that prevents restaurants from dumping grease into the system; also a process of back charging the restaurants that do clog the sewers as payment for cleaning.

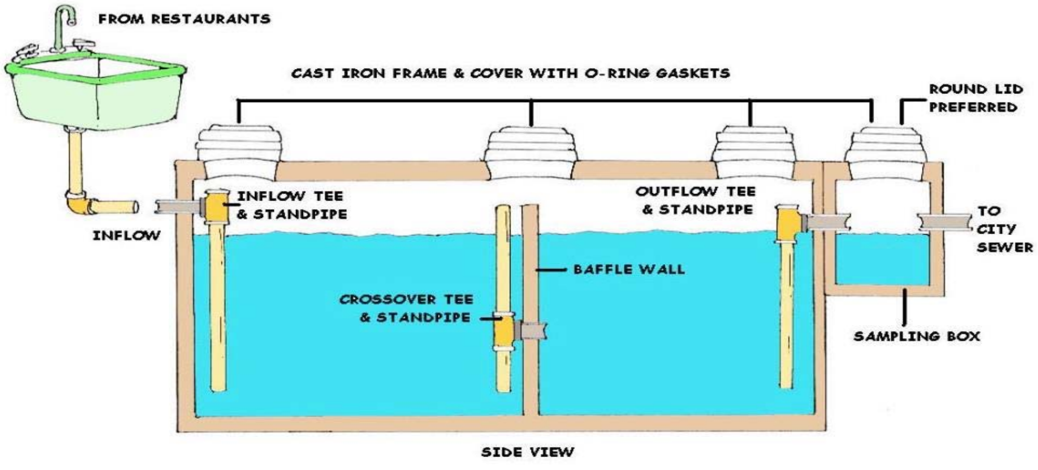
Grease

If left unmanaged, grease can cause interference in wastewater collection, transmission, and treatment systems. Blockages due to grease build-up are a common cause of sanitary sewer overflows, and grease accumulation at treatment facilities can lead to pass-through of contaminants. Proactive municipal governments have a grease ordinance which provides them legal authority to require that grease generators have devices to catch the grease before it enters the public wastewater system. These devices are often referred to as "grease traps."



Grease build-up inside a sewer causing interference with flow.

Proactive municipal governments also have in place an inspection and enforcement program to ensure grease generators clean the traps on an appropriate schedule and in a proper manner. Failure to do so incurs a penalty levied by the municipality, so there is incentive to correct problems before they result in sanitary sewer overflows, interference, or pass-through. Proactive municipalities often have public education programs to ensure non-commercial contributions of grease to the wastewater system are minimized.



Cooking Grease

Did you know that cooking grease is one of the major causes of residential sewer main clogs resulting in sewer spills?

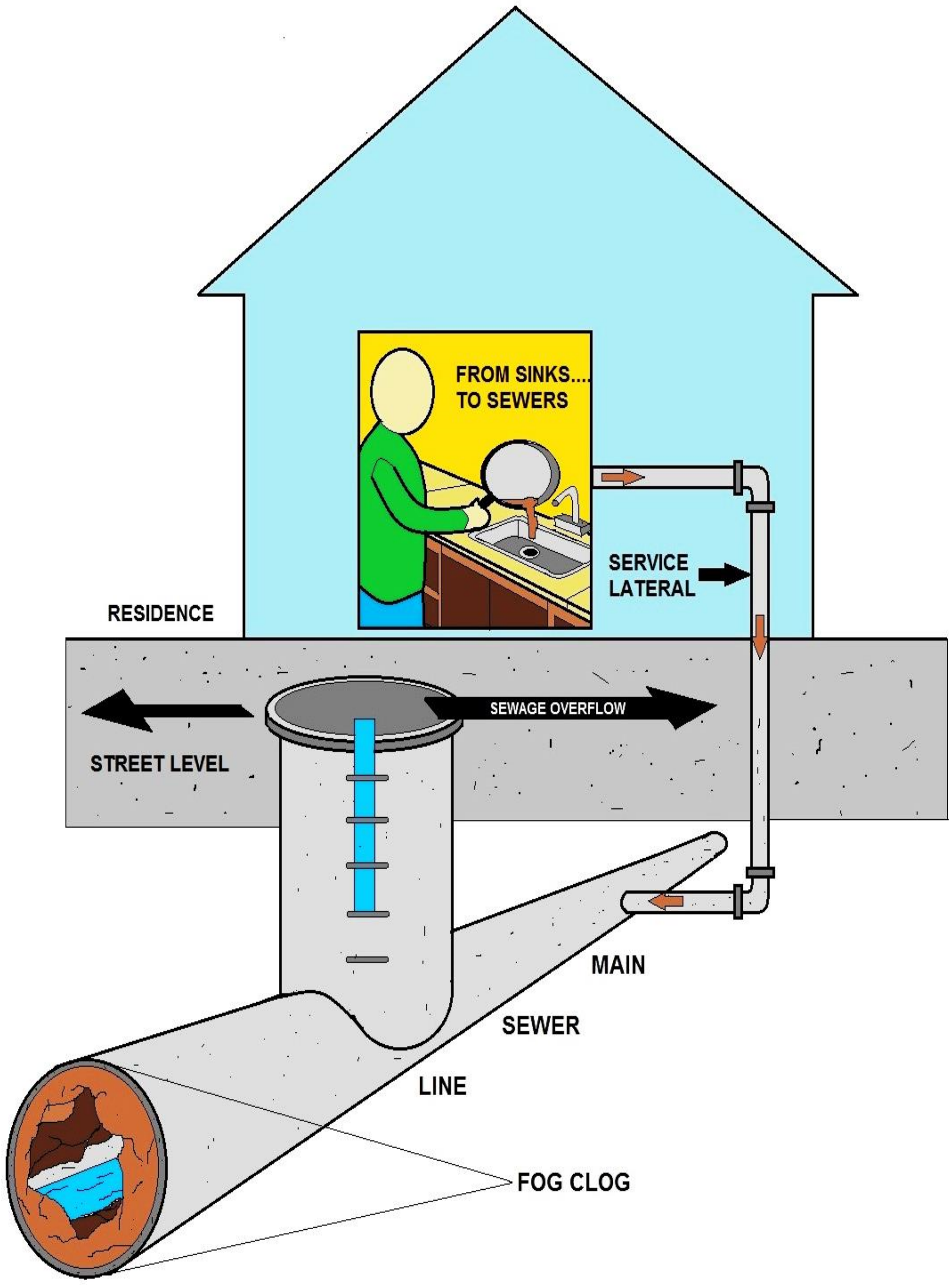
Cooking grease coats pipelines much like fatty foods clog human arteries. The grease clings to the insides of the pipe, eventually causing blockage and potential sewer spills. By following a few simple steps, you can help prevent costly sewer spills in the future.

- All cooking oil (this includes salad oil, frying oil and bacon fat) should be poured into an old milk carton, frozen juice container, or other non-recyclable package, and disposed of in the garbage.
- Dishes and pots that are coated with greasy leftovers, should be wiped clean with a disposable towel prior to washing or placing in the dishwasher.
- Instead of placing fat trimmings from meat down the garbage disposal, place them in a trash can.

Grease Trap

The trap prevents excess grease from getting into the sewer system from existing plumbing lines within facilities. Traps are small and are usually installed inside a facility. Generally, they range in size from 20 gallons per minute (gpm) to 50 gpm.

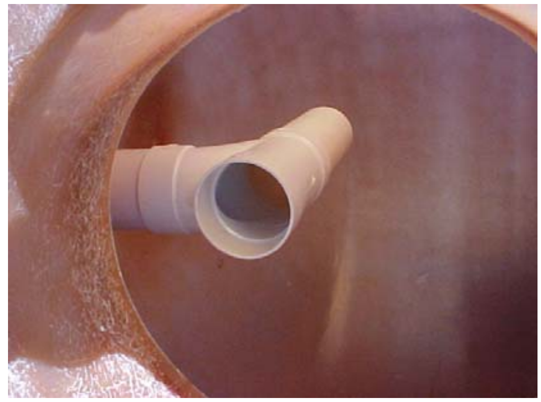
In-floor Grease trap being removed and replaced with a grease interceptor.
This device is common to find inside a Chinese and Mexican Restaurant.



WHAT HAPPENS WHEN YOU POUR GREASE DOWN DRAINS

Grease Interceptors

High-volume or new establishments use grease interceptors which are larger than the traps and are installed underground, outside of a facility. Grease is actually "**intercepted**" in these concrete or fiberglass tanks before it reaches the sewer main. Grease interceptors should be accessible by three manhole covers, and a sample box. Interceptors and traps cause the flow of water to slow down, allowing the grease to naturally float to the top of the tank for easy removal.



New fiberglass three compartment grease interceptor. You will need to fill the interceptor with water before connecting it to the sewer main.

Plan Checks and Inspections

All plans for new commercial food establishments (including new construction remodels and retrofits) should receive a plan review from the POTW. This review assures that appropriate grease-removal equipment is installed during construction.

Grease Blockages

Shortly after sewer-spills caused by grease are reported or discovered, POTW inspectors investigate facilities within the immediate area. A determination is made as to which commercial facilities contributed to the blockage, and more in-depth inspections are conducted at those facilities. Where appropriate, additional requirements and/or procedures are put in place. When requirements are made for additional grease-removal equipment, the facility is given a due date to comply.

A Notice of Violation, with an administrative fee, is issued once a facility has passed its final due date. Administrative hearings, permit revocation, and ultimately, termination of sewer service may occur for those facilities that remain out of compliance.

Regular Grease Inspection

Regular inspection and maintenance is essential to the proper operation of a grease removal device. The local ordinance should require a minimum cleaning frequency of once every six months. However, that frequency will increase depending on the capacity of the device, the amount of grease in the wastewater, and the degree to which the facility has contributed to blockages in the past.

Regular cleaning at the appropriate interval is necessary to maintain the rated efficiency of the device. Equipment that is not regularly maintained puts the food service facility at risk of violating the sewer use ordinance, and this may not be known until an overflow and violation have occurred.

Most POTWs suggest businesses start with quarterly cleanings and should be done when 75 percent of the retention capacity of the unit is 75 percent full of accumulated grease. A large measuring stick and/or a clear piece of conduit may be used to determine the depth of the grease accumulation. You should require that restaurants contract with a licensed grease hauler to remove it from the premises for appropriate disposal.

Choosing a Grease Hauler

When you speak to a restaurant owner, inform them that while selecting a grease hauler, be aware that services and prices can vary. Minimum services should include:

- Complete pumping and cleaning of the interceptor and sample box, rather than just skimming the grease layer.
- Deodorizing and thorough cleaning of affected areas, as necessary.
- Disposal/reclamation at an approved location.
- Notes concerning the condition of the interceptor
- Complete pumping and cleaning record.

The restaurant owner and grease hauler should agree on an adequate cleaning frequency to avoid blockage of the line. Waste grease from a kitchen is recyclable for use in making soap, animal feed, etc. Grease from a grease trap or interceptor may not be reused in this way. For recyclable grease, some POTWs recommend that all facilities have waste grease containers with tight fitting lids that are either secondarily contained or kept in a bermed area to protect floor drains and storm drain inlets from spills.

Keeping up-to-date Records

Careful record keeping is one of the best ways to ensure that the grease removal device is being cleaned and maintained on a regular basis. City codes and ordnances require records be maintained for a minimum of three to five years.

Other Types of Devices

A grease trap may be approved in lieu of an interceptor for full service food service facilities only in very limited circumstances when space is not available. Grease traps may also be approved by the Industrial Pretreatment Program for facilities such as delicatessens and small bakeries that produce small quantities of oil, grease, or fat. Refer to the International Plumbing Code for requirements related to grease traps such as installation of flow-control devices, flow rates, and other structural requirements.

Please Note: Flow restrictors are required for grease traps because they increase retention time and efficiency. Automatic grease skimming devices collect small volumes of water and remove grease into a side container at preset times each day. Usually, special approval from the Industrial Pretreatment Staff or the POTW is required to install one of these devices in lieu of a grease interceptor.

Magic Grease “Bugs” and Bacterial Additives

Manufacturers of bacterial additives claim that their products remove grease and enhance the performance of grease traps and interceptors. Such additives cannot be substituted for a grease removal device and regular inspection and maintenance. If a customer decides to use an additive, they need to make sure the product you select is not an emulsifier, which simply keeps grease in suspension temporarily and allows it to flow to the sewer system.

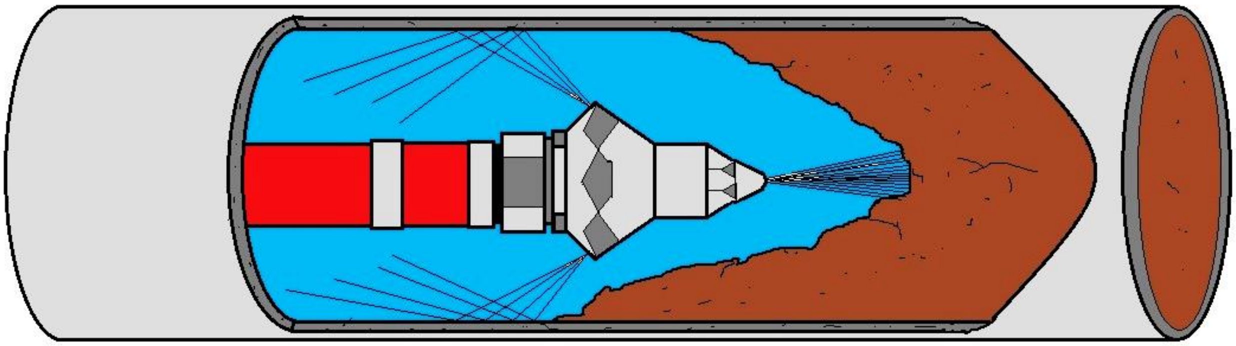
Obtaining necessary permits

- Building departments prefer in-ground installations that drain by gravity to the sanitary sewer. Avoid pumps and other mechanical devices in your connection to the sewer if possible.
- The interceptor or grease trap needs to be properly sized in accordance with the International Plumbing Code, IAPMO, or local ordinance.

Chain Cutter

This tool is attached to the flush truck. When water pressure is applied, the 3 chains at the head spin at tremendous speeds. These spinning chains will cut roots, grease build-up, and even a protruding tap.

This is a sewer line that has a large amount of grease buildup that will be cut out. Grease gets into the sewer line by pouring grease left over from cooking, down the kitchen sink.



JETTING A SEWER LINE

Sewer Cleaning Advantages and Disadvantages

The primary benefit of implementing a sewer maintenance program is the reduction of SSOs, basement backups, and other releases of wastewater from the collection system due to substandard sewer conditions. Improper handling of instruments and chemicals used in inspecting and maintaining sewer lines may cause environmental harm.

Examples include:

- Improperly disposing of collected materials and chemicals from cleaning operations.
- Improperly handling chemical powdered dyes.
- Inadequately maintaining inspection devices.

Visual Inspection
In smaller sewers, the scope of problems detected is minimal because the only portion of the sewer that can be seen in detail in near the manhole. Therefore, any definitive information on cracks or other structural problems is unlikely. However, this method does provide information needed to make decisions on rehabilitation.

Camera Inspection
When performing a camera inspection in a large diameter sewer, the inspection crew is essentially taking photographs haphazardly, and as a result, the photographs tend to be less comprehensive.

Closed Circuit Television (CCTV)
This method requires late night inspection and as a result, the TV operators are vulnerable to lapses in concentration. CCTV inspections are also expensive and time consuming. Sometimes the video camera does not fit into the pipe and during the inspection, the camera remains only in the maintenance hole. The newer cameras are smaller and can fit in these tight spaces.

Lamping Inspection
Is generally used in the first 10 feet of the pipe. Source: Water Pollution Control Federation, 1989. Some instruments have a tendency to become coated with petroleum-based residues and if not handled properly they can become a fire hazard.

The following case study provides additional case study data for sewer cleaning methods.

Fairfax County, Virginia
The Fairfax County Sanitary Sewer System comprises over 3000 miles of sewer lines. As is the case with its sewer rehabilitation program, the county's sewer maintenance program also focuses on inspection and cleaning of sanitary sewers, especially in older areas of the system. Reorganization and streamlining of the sewer maintenance program, coupled with a renewed emphasis on increasing productivity, has resulted in very significant reductions in sewer backups and overflows during the past few years.

1998, there were a total of 49 such incidents including 25 sewer backups and 24 sewer overflows. The sewer maintenance program consists of visual inspections, scheduled sewer cleanings based on maintenance history, unscheduled sewer cleanings as determined by visual or closed circuit television inspections, and follow-up practices to determine the cause of backups and overflows.

Visual inspections are carried out by using a mirror attached to a pole; however, use of portable cameras has been recently introduced to enhance the effectiveness of visual inspections. Older areas of the sewer system are inspected every two years; whereas, the inspection of relatively new areas may be completed in 3 to 4 years. Cleaning is an important part of pipe maintenance. Sewer line cleaning is prioritized based on the age of the pipe and the frequency of the problems within it. Most cities use rodding and pressurized cleaning methods to maintain the pipes.

Bucket machines are rarely used because cleaning by this method tends to be time consuming. Most cities use mechanical, rather than chemical, methods to remove grease and roots. Introducing chemicals into the cleaning program may require hiring an expert crew, adopting a new program, and instituting a detention time to ensure the chemicals' effectiveness.

Sewer Cleaning Method Limitations

Balling, Jetting, Scooter: In general, these methods are only successful when necessary water pressure or head is maintained without flooding basements or houses at low elevations.

Jetting - The main limitation of this technique is that cautions need to be used in areas with basement fixtures and in steep-grade hill areas.

Balling - Balling cannot be used effectively in pipes with bad offset joints or protruding service connections because the ball can become distorted.

Scooter - When cleaning larger lines, the manholes need to be designed to a larger size in order to receive and retrieve the equipment. Otherwise, the scooter needs to be assembled in the manhole. Caution also needs to be used in areas with basement fixtures and in steep-grade hill areas.

Bucket Machine - This device has been known to damage sewers. The bucket machine cannot be used when the line is completely plugged because this prevents the cable from being threaded from one manhole to the next. Set-up of this equipment is time-consuming.

Flushing - This method is not very effective in removing heavy solids. Flushing does not remedy this problem because it only achieves temporary movement of debris from one section to another in the system.

High Velocity Cleaner - The efficiency and effectiveness of removing debris by this method decreases as the cross-sectional areas of the pipe increase. Backups into residences have been known to occur when this method has been used by inexperienced operators. Even experienced operators require extra time to clear pipes of roots and grease.

Kite or Bag - When using this method, use caution in locations with basement fixtures and steep-grade hill areas.

Rodding - Continuous rods are harder to retrieve and repair if broken and they are not useful in lines with a diameter of greater than 300 mm (0.984 feet) because the rods have a tendency to coil and bend. This device also does not effectively remove sand or grit, but may only loosen the material to be flushed out at a later time. Source: U.S. EPA, 1993.

Limitations of Cleaning Methods

• Sewer Cleaning and Stoppage Section- this section responds to customer complaints, pinpoints problems within the lines, and clears all blockages.

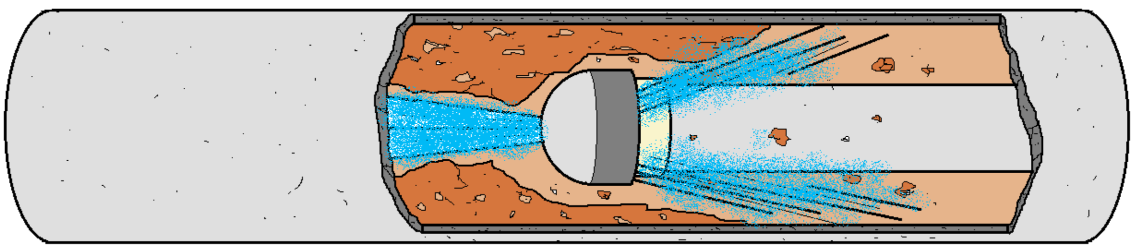
• TV Section- this section locates defects and building sewer connections (also referred to as taps) within the system.

• Preventive Maintenance Section- this section cleans and inspects the lines and also provides for Quality Assurance and Quality Control (QA/QC).

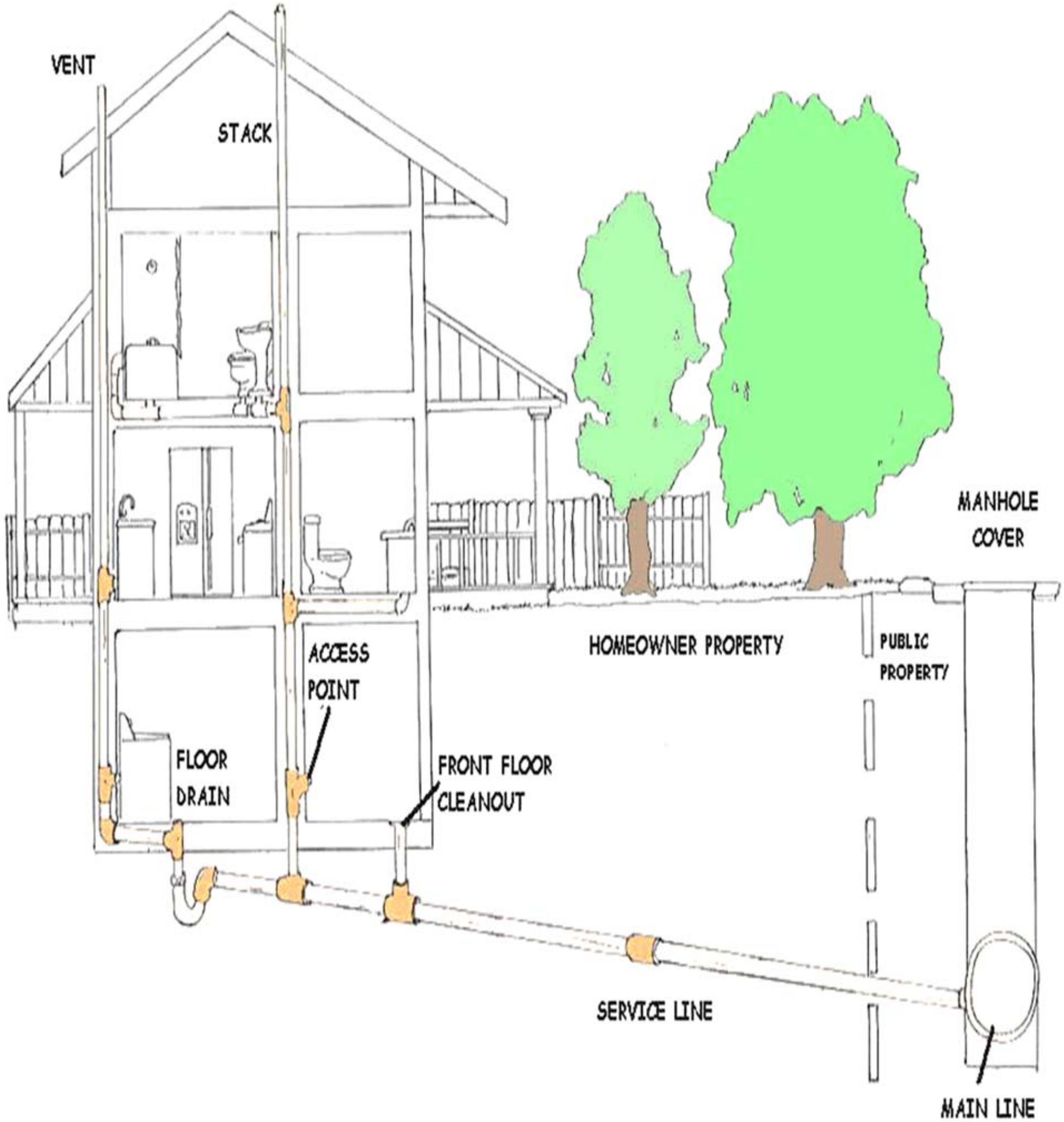
Most of collection inspections use CCTV system. However, a large percent of the lines in the worst and oldest sections of the system are inspected visually.

Visual inspections are also used in the most recently installed lines and manholes. The collection system will normally utilize a variety of cleaning methods including jetting, high velocity cleaning, rodding, bucket machining, and using stop trucks (sectional rods with an attached motor).

As part of a preventive maintenance approach, most collection system operators also have been using combination trucks with both flush and vacuum systems. To control roots, most collection system operators uses a vapor rooter eradication system which can ensure that no roots return to the line for up to five years. The cleaning and inspection crews will usually consist of two members to operate each of the combination trucks and TV trucks.



PRESSURE WASHER SEWER JETTER

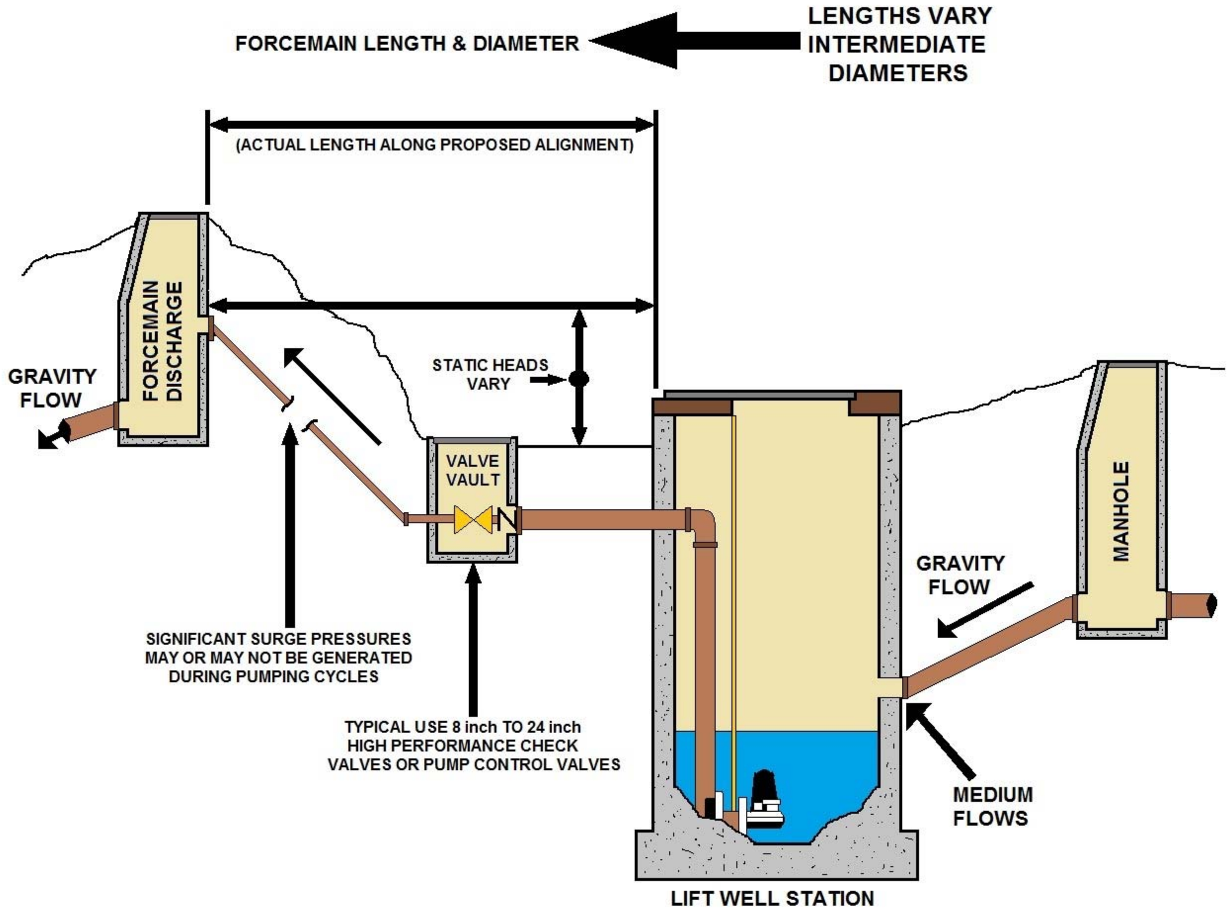

VENT
STACK
MANHOLE COVER
HOMEOWNER PROPERTY
PUBLIC PROPERTY
ACCESS POINT
FLOOR DRAIN
FRONT FLOOR CLEANOUT
SERVICE LINE
MAIN LINE

Pumps and Lift Stations Chapter 4

Lift Station: A facility in a sewer system consisting of a receiving chamber, pumping equipment, and associated drive and control devices which collect and lift wastewater to a higher elevation when the continuance of the sewer at reasonable slopes would involve excessive trench depths; or that collects and raises wastewater through the use of force mains from areas too low to drain into available sewers. There should not be an odor coming from a Lift Station.

Pumping Station: A relatively large sewage pumping installation designed not only to lift sewage to a higher elevation, but also to convey it through force mains to gravity flow points located relatively long distances from the pumping station.

Pumps at a temporary sewer manhole by-pass.



MEDIUM SEWAGE LIFT STATION TYPICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Lift Stations – Wet Well/Dry Well

Sewer pipes are generally gravity driven. Wastewater flows slowly downhill until it reaches a certain low point. Then, pump or "lift" stations push the wastewater back uphill to a high point where gravity can once again take over the process.

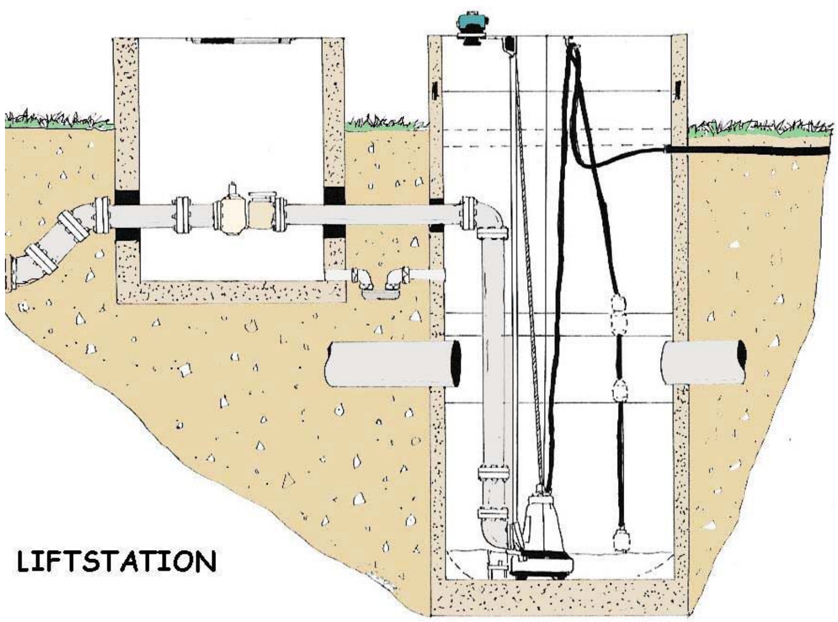
Lift stations are used in sanitary sewer systems where water is accumulated in wet wells and then pumped to a higher elevation. They are generally designed to operate continuously to keep sewerage from backing up through the system. That means that most lift stations have a backup electrical supply in the event that normal power is disrupted.

Most Wastewater Collection systems will have installed radio telemetry, or SCADA systems. The telemetry system is used to monitor and control pump stations via computer at the WW Collections facility.

This type of system gives up to the minute pump station status such as wet well level, pump performance, electrical power conditions, etc. This allows wastewater technicians to prevent wastewater spills and protect public health. Using telemetry, Operators have the ability to identify potential problems instantaneously and take the proper steps to rectify the situation before it becomes a public health risk.

A Lift Station typically contains 4 main Components:

- A wet well - usually 15+ ft. in depth and 8ft. in diameter - that houses two submersible pumps (there are some stations with up to 5 submersibles) of varying horsepower, discharging piping and floats that operate the pumps and keep a set level in the well.
- A dry well that houses the piping and valves that prevent backflow in the station, and camlock connection used to bypass the submersibles in an emergency situation.
- An electrical panel houses control for the submersible pumps. It also houses the telemetry used to monitor and control the station remotely.
- A “Log Book” or “Station Book” which contains the records and maps of the Lift Station’s area.



Common Hydraulic Terms

Head
The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point expressed in linear units. Head is often used to indicate gauge pressure. Pressure is equal to the height times the density of the liquid.

Head, Friction
The head required to overcome the friction at the interior surface of a conductor and between fluid particles in motion. It varies with flow, size, type, and conditions of conductors and fittings, and the fluid characteristics.

Head, Static
The height of a column or body of fluid above a given point.

Hydraulics
Engineering science pertaining to liquid pressure and flow.

Hydrokinetics
Engineering science pertaining to the energy of liquid flow and pressure.

Pascal's Law
A pressure applied to a confined fluid at rest is transmitted with equal intensity throughout the fluid.

Pressure
The application of continuous force by one body upon another that it is touching; compression.
Force per unit area, usually expressed in pounds per square inch (Pascal or bar).

Pressure, Absolute
The pressure above zone absolute, i.e. the sum of atmospheric and gauge pressure. In vacuum related work it is usually expressed in millimeters of mercury. (mmHg).

Pressure, Atmospheric
Pressure exerted by the atmosphere at any specific location. (Sea level pressure is approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute, 1 bar = 14.5psi.)

Pressure, Gauge
Pressure differential above or below ambient atmospheric pressure.

Pressure, Static
The pressure in a fluid at rest.

Collection Systems, Lift Stations Introduction

Wastewater lift stations are facilities designed to move wastewater from lower to higher elevation through pipes. Key elements of lift stations include a wastewater receiving well (wet-well), often equipped with a screen or grinding to remove coarse materials; pumps and piping with associated valves; motors; a power supply system; an equipment control and alarm system; and an odor control system and ventilation system.

Lift station equipment and systems are often installed in an enclosed structure. They can be constructed on-site (custom-designed) or prefabricated. Lift station capacities range from 20 gallons per minute to more than 100,000 gallons per minute. Pre-fabricated lift stations generally have capacities of up to 10,000 gallons per minute.

Centrifugal pumps are commonly used in lift stations. A trapped air column, or bubbler system, that senses pressure and level is commonly used for pump station control. Other control alternatives include electrodes placed at cut-off levels, floats, mechanical clutches, and floating mercury switches. A more sophisticated control operation involves the use of variable speed drives. Lift stations are typically provided with equipment for easy pump removal. Floor access hatches or openings above the pump room and an overhead monorail beam, bridge crane, or portable hoist are commonly used.

The two most common types of lift stations are the dry-pit or dry-well and submersible lift stations. In dry-well lift stations, pumps and valves are housed in a pump room (dry pit or dry-well), that is easily accessible. The wet-well is a separate chamber attached or located adjacent to the dry-well (pump room) structure.

Submersible lift stations do not have a separate pump room; the lift station header piping, associated valves, and flow meters are located in a separate dry vault at grade for easy access. Submersible lift stations include sealed pumps that operate submerged in the wet-well. These are removed to the surface periodically and reinstalled using guide rails and a hoist. A key advantage of dry-well lift stations is that they allow easy access for routine visual inspection and maintenance. In general, they are easier to repair than submersible pumps. An advantage of submersible lift stations is that they typically cost less than dry-well stations and operate without frequent pump maintenance.

Submersible lift stations do not usually include large aboveground structures and tend to blend in with their surrounding environment in residential areas. They require less space and are easier and less expensive to construct for wastewater flow capacities of 10,000gallons per minute or less.

Applicability

Lift stations are used to move wastewater from lower to higher elevation, particularly where the elevation of the source is not sufficient for gravity flow and/or when the use of gravity conveyance will result in excessive excavation depths and high sewer construction costs.

Current Status

Lift stations are widely used in wastewater conveyance systems. Dry-well lift stations have been used in the industry for many years. However, the current industry-wide trend is to replace drywell lift stations of small and medium size (typically less than 6,350 gallons per minute with submersible lift stations mainly because of lower costs, a smaller footprint, and simplified operation and maintenance.

Variable speed pumping is often used to optimize pump performance and minimize power use. Several types of variable-speed pumping equipment are available, including variable voltage and frequency drives, eddy current couplings, and mechanical variable-speed drives.

Variable-speed pumping can reduce the size and cost of the wetwell and allows the pumps to operate at maximum efficiency under a variety of flow conditions. Because variable-speed pumping allows lift station discharge to match inflow, only nominal wet-well storage volume is required and the well water level is maintained at a near constant elevation. Variable-speed pumping may allow a given flow range to be achieved with fewer pumps than a constant-speed alternative.

Variable-speed stations also minimize the number of pump starts and stops, reducing mechanical wear. Although there is significant energy saving potential for stations with large friction losses, it may not justify the additional capital costs unless the cost of power is relatively high. Variable speed equipment also requires more room within the lift station and may produce more noise and heat than constant speed pumps.

Lift stations are complex facilities with many auxiliary systems. Therefore, they are less reliable than gravity wastewater conveyance. However, lift station reliability can be significantly improved by providing stand-by equipment (pumps and controls) and emergency power supply systems. In addition, lift station reliability is improved by using non-clog pumps suitable for the particular wastewater quality and by applying emergency alarm and automatic control systems.

Advantages
Lift stations are used to reduce the capital cost of sewer system construction. When gravity sewers are installed in trenches deeper than 10 feet, the cost of sewer line installation increases significantly because of the more complex and costly excavation equipment and trench shoring techniques required. The size of the gravity sewer lines is dependent on the minimum pipe slope and flow. Pumping wastewater can convey the same flow using smaller pipeline size at shallower depth, and thereby, reducing pipeline costs.

Disadvantages
Compared to sewer lines where gravity drives wastewater flow, lift stations require a source of electric power. If the power supply is interrupted, flow conveyance is discontinued and can result in flooding upstream of the lift station, It can also interrupt the normal operation of the downstream wastewater conveyance and treatment facilities. This limitation is typically addressed by providing an emergency power supply.

Key disadvantages of lift stations include the high cost to construct and maintain and the potential for odors and noise. Lift stations also require a significant amount of power, are sometimes expensive to upgrade, and may create public concerns and negative public reaction. The low cost of gravity wastewater conveyance and the higher costs of building, operating, and maintaining lift stations means that wastewater pumping should be avoided, if possible and technically feasible.

Wastewater pumping can be eliminated or reduced by selecting alternative sewer routes or extending a gravity sewer using direction drilling or other state-of-the-art deep excavation methods. If such alternatives are viable, a cost benefit analysis can determine if a lift station is the most viable choice.

Design Criteria

Cost effective lift stations are designed to: (1) match pump capacity, type, and configuration with wastewater quantity and quality; (2) provide reliable and uninterruptible operation; (3) allow for easy operation and maintenance of the installed equipment; (4) accommodate future capacity expansion; (5) avoid septic conditions and excessive release of odors in the collection system and at the lift station; (6) minimize environmental and landscape impacts on the surrounding residential and commercial developments; and (7) avoid flooding of the lift station and the surrounding areas.

Wet-well

Wet-well design depends on the type of lift station configuration (submersible or dry-well) and the type of pump controls (constant or variable speed). Wet-wells are typically designed large enough to prevent rapid pump cycling but small enough to prevent a long detention time and associated odor release.

Wet-well maximum detention time in constant speed pumps is typically 20 to 30 minutes. Use of variable frequency drives for pump speed control allows wet-well detention time reduction to 5 to 15 minutes. The minimum recommended wet-well bottom slope is to 2:1 to allow self-cleaning and minimum deposit of debris. Effective volume of the wet-well may include sewer pipelines, especially when variable speed drives are used. Wet-wells should always hold some level of sewage to minimize odor release. Bar screens or grinders are often installed in or upstream of the wet-well to minimize pump clogging problems.

Wastewater Pump Introduction

The number of wastewater pumps and associated capacity should be selected to provide head capacity characteristics that correspond as nearly as possible to wastewater quantity fluctuations. This can be accomplished by preparing pump/pipeline system head-capacity curves showing all conditions of head (elevation of a free surface of water) and capacity under which the pumps will be required to operate.

The number of pumps to be installed in a lift station depends on the station capacity, the range of flow and the regulations. In small stations, with maximum inflows of less than 700 gallons per minute), two pumps are customarily installed, with each unit able to meet the maximum influent rate. For larger lift stations, the size and number of pumps should be selected so that the range of influent flow rates can be met without starting and stopping pumps too frequently and without excessive wet-well storage.

Depending on the system, the pumps are designed to run at a reduced rate. The pumps may also alternate to equalize wear and tear. Additional pumps may provide intermediate capacities better matched to typical daily flows. An alternative option is to provide flow flexibility with variable speed pumps.

For pump stations with high head-losses, the single pump flow approach is usually the most suitable. Parallel pumping is not as effective for such stations because two pumps operating together yield only slightly higher flows than one pump. If the peak flow is to be achieved with multiple pumps in parallel, the lift station must be equipped with at least three pumps: two duty pumps that together provide peak flow and one standby pump for emergency backup.

Parallel peak pumping is typically used in large lift stations with relatively flat system head curves. Such curves allow multiple pumps to deliver substantially more flow than a single pump. The use of multiple pumps in parallel provides more flexibility.

Several types of centrifugal pumps are used in wastewater lift stations. In the straight-flow centrifugal pumps, wastewater does not change direction as it passes through the pumps and into the discharge pipe. These pumps are well suited for low-flow/high head conditions.

In angle-flow pumps, wastewater enters the impeller axially and passes through the volute casing at 90 degrees to its original direction. This type of pump is appropriate for pumping against low or moderate heads. Mixed flow pumps are most viable for pumping large quantities of wastewater at low head. In these pumps, the outside diameter of the impeller is less than an ordinary centrifugal pump, increasing flow volume.

Ventilation

Ventilation and heating are required if the lift station includes an area routinely entered by personnel. Ventilation is particularly important to prevent the collection of toxic and/or explosive gases. According to the Nation Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Section 820, all continuous ventilation systems should be fitted with flow detection devices connected to alarm systems to indicate ventilation system failure. Dry-well ventilation codes typically require six continuous air changes per hour or 30 intermittent air changes per hour. Wet-wells typically require 12 continuous air changes per hour or 60 intermittent air changes per hour. Motor control center (MCC) rooms should have a ventilation system adequate to provide six air changes per hour and should be air conditioned to between 13 and 32 degrees Celsius (55 to 90 degrees F).

If the control room is combined with an MCC room, the temperature should not exceed 30 degrees C or 85 degrees F. All other spaces should be designed for 12 air changes per hour. The minimum temperature should be 13 degrees C (55 degrees F) whenever chemicals are stored or used.

Odor Control

Odor control is frequently required for lift stations. A relatively simple and widely used odor control alternative is minimizing wet-well turbulence. More effective options include collection of odors generated at the lift station and treating them in scrubbers or biofilters or the addition of odor control chemicals to the sewer upstream of the lift station. Chemicals typically used for odor control include chlorine, hydrogen peroxide, metal salts (ferric chloride and ferrous sulfate) oxygen, air, and potassium permanganate. Chemicals should be closely monitored to avoid affecting downstream treatment processes, such as extended aeration.

Power Supply

The reliability of power for the pump motor drives is a basic design consideration. Commonly used methods of emergency power supply include electric power feed from two independent power distribution lines; an on-site standby generator; an adequate portable generator with quick connection; a stand-by engine driven pump; ready access to a suitable portable pumping unit and appropriate connections; and availability of an adequate holding facility for wastewater storage upstream of the lift station.

Performance

The overall performance of a lift station depends on the performance of the pumps. All pumps have four common performance characteristics: capacity, head, power, and overall efficiency. Capacity (flow rate) is the quantity of liquid pumped per unit of time, typically measured as gallons per minute (gpm) or million gallons per day (mgd).

Head is the energy supplied to the wastewater per unit weight, typically expressed as feet of water. Power is the energy consumed by a pump per unit time, typically measured as kilowatt-hours. Overall efficiency is the ratio of useful hydraulic work performed to actual work input. Efficiency reflects the pump relative power losses and is usually measured as a percentage of applied power.

Operation and Maintenance

Lift station operation is usually automated and does not require continuous on-site operator presence. However, frequent inspections are recommended to ensure normal functioning and to identify potential problems. Lift station inspection typically includes observation of pumps, motors and drives for unusual noise, vibration, heating and leakage, check of pump suction and discharge lines for valving arrangement and leakage, check of control panel switches for proper position, monitoring of discharge pump rates and pump speed, and monitoring of the pump suction and discharge pressure.

Weekly inspections are typically conducted, although the frequency really depends on the size of the lift station. If a lift station is equipped with grinder bar screens to remove coarse materials from the wastewater, these materials are collected in containers and disposed of to a sanitary landfill site as needed. If the lift station has a scrubber system for odor control, chemicals are supplied and replenished typically every three months. If chemicals are added for odor control ahead of the lift station, the chemical feed stations should be inspected weekly and chemicals replenished as needed.

The most labor-intensive task for lift stations is routine preventive maintenance. A well-planned maintenance program for lift station pumps prevents unnecessary equipment wear and downtime. Lift station operators must maintain an inventory of critical spare parts. The number of spare parts in the inventory depends on the critical needs of the unit, the rate at which the part normally fails, and the availability of the part. The operator should tabulate each pumping element in the system and its recommended spare parts. This information is typically available from the operation and maintenance manuals provided with the lift station.

Operating Costs
Lift station costs depend on many factors, including
(1) wastewater quality, quantity, and projections;
(2) zoning and land use planning of the area where the lift station will be located;
(3) alternatives for standby power sources;
(4) operation and maintenance needs and support;
(5) soil properties and underground conditions;
(6) required lift to the receiving (discharge) sewer line;
(7) the severity of impact of accidental sewage spill upon the local area; and
(8) the need for an odor control system.

These site and system specific factors must be examined and incorporated in preparing a lift station cost estimate.

Construction Costs
The most important factors influencing cost are the design lift station capacity and the installed pump power. Another cost factor is the lift station complexity. Factors which classify a lift station as complex include two or more of the following:
(1) extent of excavation;
(2) congested site and/or restricted access;
(3) rock excavation;
(4) extensive dewatering requirements, such as cofferdams;
(5) site conflicts, including modification or removal of existing facilities;
(6) special foundations, including piling;
(7) dual power supply and on-site switch stations and emergency power generator; and
(8) high pumping heads (design heads in excess of 200 ft).

Mechanical, electrical, and control equipment delivered to a pumping station construction site typically account for 15 to 30 percent of total construction costs. Lift station construction has a significant economy-of-scale. Typically, if the capacity of a lift station is increased 100 percent, the construction cost would increase only 50 to 55 percent. An important consideration is that two identical lift stations will cost 25 to 30 percent more than a single station of the same combined capacity. Usually, complex lift stations cost two to three times more than more simple lift stations with no construction complications.

Pump performance curves are used to define and compare the operating characteristics of a pump and to identify the best combination of performance characteristics under which a lift station pumping system will operate under typical conditions (flows and heads). Pump systems operate at 75 to 85 percent efficiency most of the time, while overall pump efficiency depends on the type of installed pumps, their control system, and the fluctuation of influent wastewater flow.

Performance optimization strategies focus on different ways to match pump operational characteristics with system flow and head requirements. They may include the following options: adjusting system flow paths installing variable speed drives; using parallel pumps installing pumps of different sizes trimming a pump impeller; or putting a two-speed motor on one or more pumps in a lift station. Optimizing system performance may yield significant electrical energy savings.

Operation and Maintenance Costs
Lift station operation and maintenance costs include power, labor, maintenance, and chemicals (if used for odor control). Usually, the costs for solids disposal are minimal, but are included if the lift station is equipped with bar screens to remove coarse materials from the wastewater.

Typically, power costs account for 85 to 95 percent of the total operation and maintenance costs and are directly proportional to the unit cost of power and the actual power used by the lift station pumps. Labor costs average 1 to 2 percent of total costs. Annual maintenance costs vary, depending on the complexity of the equipment and instrumentation.

Hydraulic Principles Section

Definition: Hydraulics is a branch of engineering concerned mainly with moving liquids. The term is applied commonly to the study of the mechanical properties of water, other liquids, and even gases when the effects of compressibility are small. Hydraulics can be divided into two areas, hydrostatics and hydrokinetics.

Hydraulics: *The Engineering science pertaining to liquid pressure and flow.*
The word ***hydraulics*** is based on the Greek word for water, and originally covered the study of the physical behavior of water at rest and in motion. Use has broadened its meaning to include the behavior of all liquids, although it is primarily concerned with the motion of liquids. Hydraulics includes the manner in which liquids act in tanks and pipes, deals with their properties, and explores ways to take advantage of these properties.

Hydrostatics, the consideration of liquids at rest, involves problems of buoyancy and flotation, pressure on dams and submerged devices, and hydraulic presses. The relative incompressibility of liquids is one of its basic principles.

Hydrodynamics, the study of liquids in motion, is concerned with such matters as friction and turbulence generated in pipes by flowing liquids, the flow of water over weirs and through nozzles, and the use of hydraulic pressure in machinery.

Hydrostatics
Hydrostatics is about the pressures exerted by a fluid at rest. Any fluid is meant, not just water. Research and careful study on water yields many useful results of its own, however, such as forces on dams, buoyancy and hydraulic actuation, and is well worth studying for such practical reasons. Hydrostatics is an excellent example of deductive mathematical physics, one that can be understood easily and completely from a very few fundamentals, and in which the predictions agree closely with experiment.

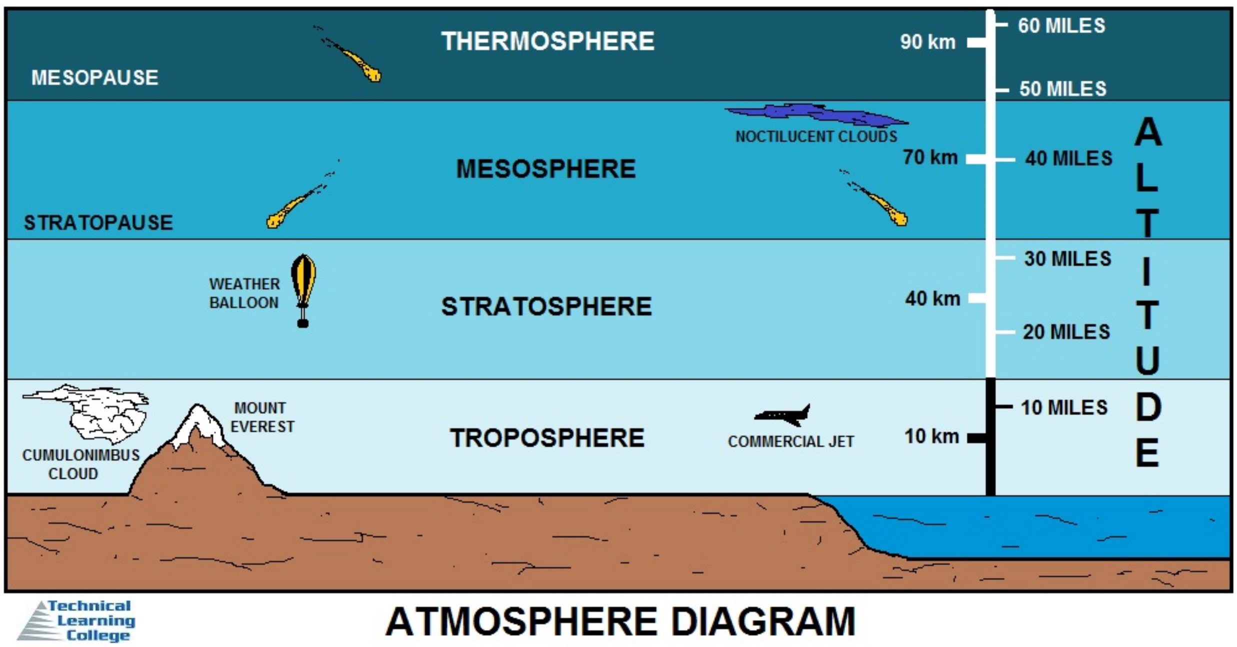
There are few better illustrations of the use of the integral calculus, as well as the principles of ordinary statics, available to the student. A great deal can be done with only elementary mathematics. Properly adapted, the material can be used from the earliest introduction of school science, giving an excellent example of a quantitative science with many possibilities for hands-on experiences.

The definition of a fluid deserves careful consideration. Although time is not a factor in hydrostatics, it enters in the approach to hydrostatic equilibrium. It is usually stated that a fluid is a substance that cannot resist a shearing stress, so that pressures are normal to confining surfaces. Geology has now shown us clearly that there are substances which can resist shearing forces over short time intervals, and appear to be typical solids, but which flow like liquids over long time intervals. Such materials include wax and pitch, ice, and even rock.

A ball of pitch, which can be shattered by a hammer, will spread out and flow in months. Ice, a typical solid, will flow in a period of years, as shown in glaciers, and rock will flow over hundreds of years, as in convection in the mantle of the earth.

Shear earthquake waves, with periods of seconds, propagate deep in the earth, though the rock there can flow like a liquid when considered over centuries. The rate of shearing may not be strictly proportional to the stress, but exists even with low stress.

Viscosity may be the physical property that varies over the largest numerical range, competing with electrical resistivity. There are several familiar topics in hydrostatics which often appears in expositions of introductory science, and which are also of historical interest and can enliven their presentation. Let's start our study with the principles of our atmosphere.



ATMOSPHERE DIAGRAM

Atmospheric Pressure

The atmosphere is the entire mass of air that surrounds the earth. While it extends upward for about 500 miles, the section of primary interest is the portion that rests on the earth's surface and extends upward for about 7 1/2 miles. This layer is called the troposphere.

If a column of air 1-inch square extending all the way to the "***top***" of the atmosphere could be weighed, this column of air would weigh approximately 14.7 pounds at sea level. Thus, atmospheric pressure at sea level is approximately 14.7 psi.

As one ascends, the atmospheric pressure decreases by approximately 1.0 psi for every 2,343 feet. However, below sea level, in excavations and depressions, atmospheric pressure increases. Pressures under water differ from those under air only because the weight of the water must be added to the pressure of the air.

Atmospheric pressure can be measured by any of several methods. The common laboratory method uses the mercury column barometer.

The height of the mercury column serves as an indicator of atmospheric pressure.

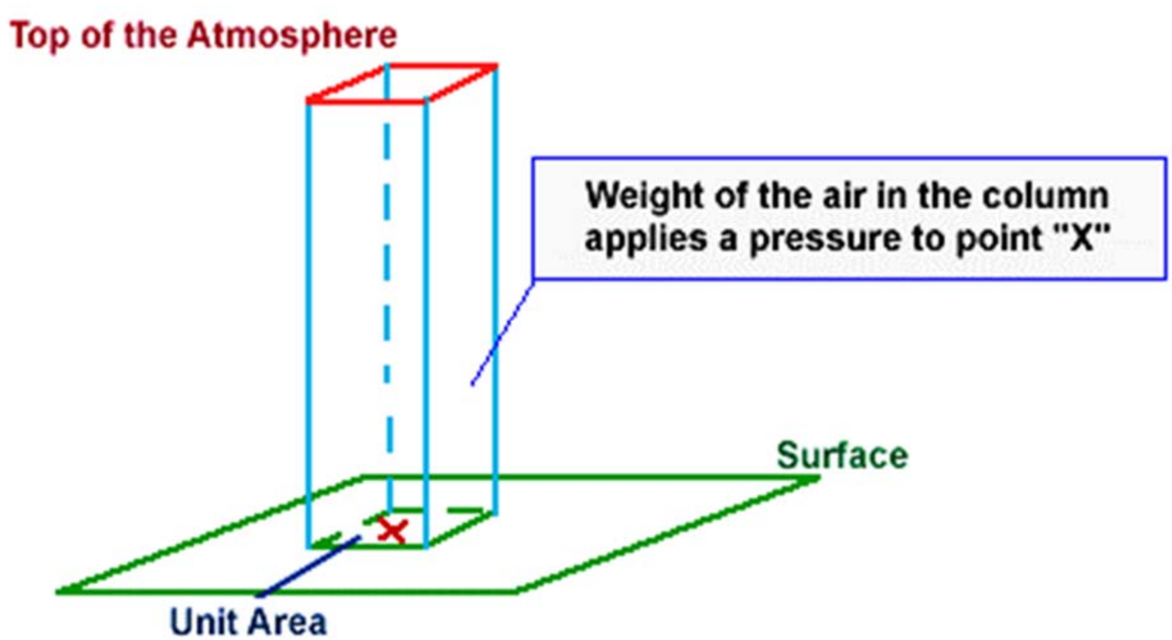
At sea level and at a temperature of 0° Celsius (**C**), the height of the mercury column is approximately 30 inches, or 76 centimeters. This represents a pressure of approximately 14.7 psi. The 30-inch column is used as a reference standard.

Another device used to measure atmospheric pressure is the aneroid barometer. The aneroid barometer uses the change in shape of an evacuated metal cell to measure variations in atmospheric pressure. The thin metal of the aneroid cell moves in or out with the variation of pressure on its external surface. This movement is transmitted through a system of levers to a pointer, which indicates the pressure.

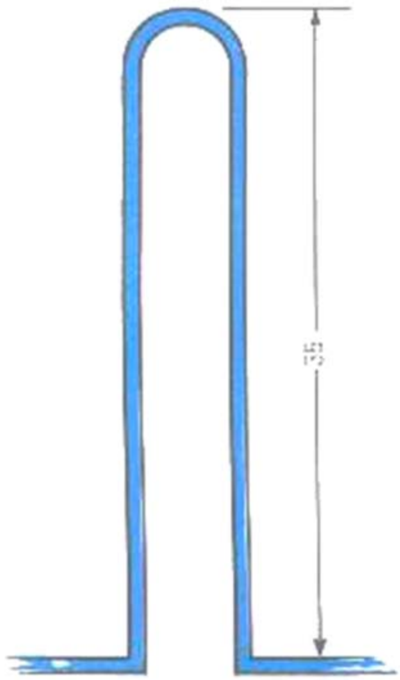
The atmospheric pressure does not vary uniformly with altitude. It changes very rapidly. Atmospheric pressure is defined as the force per unit area exerted against a surface by the weight of the air above that surface.

In the diagram below, the pressure at point "**X**" increases as the weight of the air above it increases.

The same can be said about decreasing pressure, where the pressure at point "**X**" decreases if the weight of the air above it also decreases.



Barometric Loop



The barometric loop consists of a continuous section of supply piping that abruptly rises to a height of approximately 35 feet and then returns back down to the originating level. It is a loop in the piping system that effectively protects against backsiphonage. It may not be used to protect against back-pressure.

Its operation, in the protection against backsiphonage, is based upon the principle that a water column, at sea level pressure, will not rise above 33.9 feet. In general, barometric loops are locally fabricated, and are 35 feet high.

Pressure may be referred to using an absolute scale, pounds per square inch absolute (**psia**), or gauge scale, (**psiag**). Absolute pressure and gauge pressure are related.

Absolute pressure is equal to gauge pressure plus the atmospheric pressure. At sea level, the atmospheric pressure is 14.7 psai.

Absolute pressure is the total pressure.

Gauge pressure is simply the pressure read on the gauge. If there is no pressure on the gauge other than atmospheric, the gauge will read zero. Then the absolute pressure would be equal to 14.7 psi, which is the atmospheric pressure.

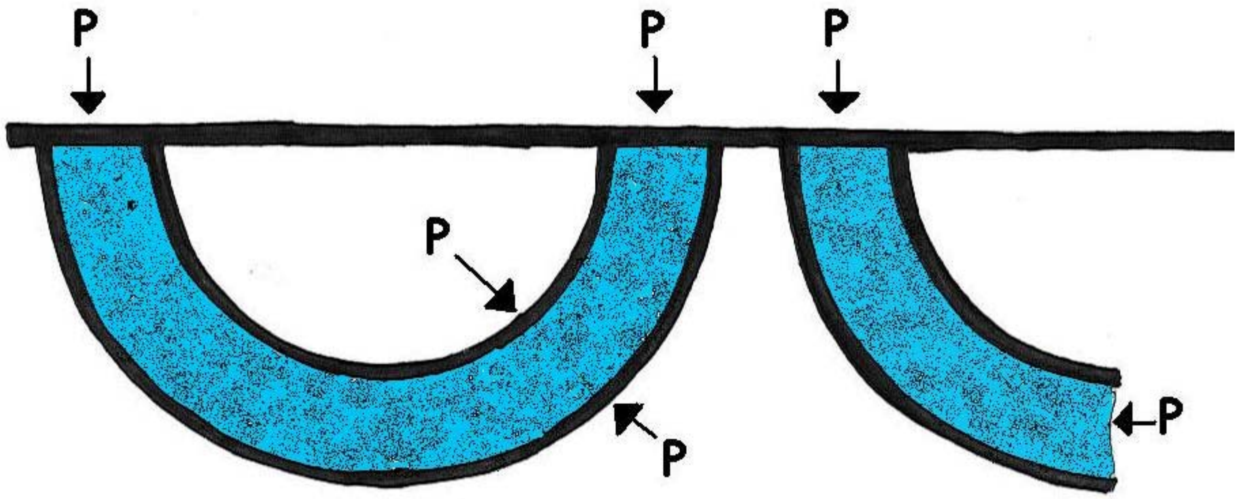
UNIT	ABBREVIATION	EQUIVALENT NUMBER OF PASCALS
ATMOSPHERE	atm	1 atm = 101,325 Pa
BAR	bar	1 bar = 100,025 Pa
MILLIMETER OF MERCURY	mmHg	1 mmHg = 133.322 Pa
INCHES OF MERCURY	inHg	1 inHg = 3386 Pa
PASCAL	Pa	1
KILOPASCAL	kPa	1 kPa = 1000 Pa
POUNDS PER SQUARE INCH	psi	1 psi = 6,893 Pa
TORR	torr	1 torr = 133.322 Pa

Technical Learning College

DIFFERENT UNITS OF PRESSURE

Pressure

By a fluid, we have a material in mind like water or air, two very common and important fluids. Water is incompressible, while air is very compressible, but both are fluids. Water has a definite volume; air does not. Water and air have low viscosity; that is, layers of them slide very easily on one another, and they quickly assume their permanent shapes when disturbed by rapid flows. Other fluids, such as molasses, may have high viscosity and take a long time to come to equilibrium, but they are no less fluids. The coefficient of viscosity is the ratio of the shearing force to the velocity gradient. Hydrostatics deals with permanent, time-independent states of fluids, so viscosity does not appear, except as discussed in the Introduction.



EQUALITY OF PRESSURE

A fluid, therefore, is a substance that cannot exert any permanent forces tangential to a boundary. Any force that it exerts on a boundary must be normal to the boundary. Such a force is proportional to the area on which it is exerted, and is called a pressure.

We can imagine any surface in a fluid as dividing the fluid into parts pressing on each other, as if it were a thin material membrane, and so think of the pressure at any point in the fluid, not just at the boundaries. In order for any small element of the fluid to be in equilibrium, the pressure must be the same in all directions (or the element would move in the direction of least pressure), and if no other forces are acting on the body of the fluid, the pressure must be the same at all neighboring points.

Therefore, in this case the pressure will be the same throughout the fluid, and the same in any direction at a point (Pascal's Principle). Pressure is expressed in units of force per unit area such as dyne/cm^2, N/cm^2 (pascal), pounds/in^2 (psi) or pounds/ft^2 (psf).

The axiom that if a certain volume of fluid were somehow made solid, the equilibrium of forces would not be disturbed, is useful in reasoning about forces in fluids.

On earth, fluids are also subject to the force of gravity, which acts vertically downward, and has a magnitude $\gamma = \rho g$ per unit volume, where g is the acceleration of gravity, approximately 981 cm/s^2 or 32.15 ft/s^2, ρ is the density, the mass per unit volume, expressed in g/cm^3, kg/m^3, or $slug/ft^3$, and γ is the specific weight, measured in lb/in^3, or lb/ft^3 (pcf).

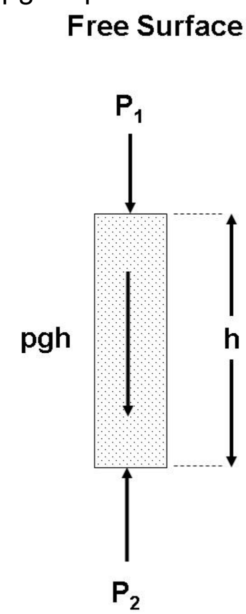
Gravitation is an example of a body force that disturbs the equality of pressure in a fluid. The presence of the gravitational body force causes the pressure to increase with depth, according to the equation $dp = \rho g\, dh$, in order to support the water above.

We call this relation the barometric equation, for when this equation is integrated, we find the variation of pressure with height or depth. If the fluid is incompressible, the equation can be integrated at once, and the pressure as a function of depth h is $p = \rho gh + p0$.

The density of water is about 1 g/cm^3, or its specific weight is 62.4 pcf. We may ask what depth of water gives the normal sea-level atmospheric pressure of 14.7 psi, or 2117 psf.

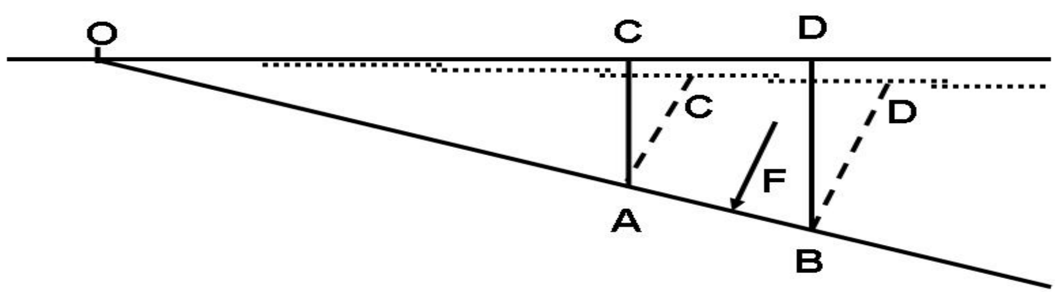
This is simply 2117 / 62.4 = 33.9 ft of water. This is the maximum height to which water can be raised by a suction pump, or, more correctly, can be supported by atmospheric pressure. Professor James Thomson (brother of William Thomson, Lord Kelvin) illustrated the equality of pressure by a "curtain-ring" analogy shown in the diagram. A section of the toroid was identified, imagined to be solidified, and its equilibrium was analyzed.

The forces exerted on the curved surfaces have no component along the normal to a plane section, so the pressures at any two points of a plane must be equal, since the fluid represented by the curtain ring was in equilibrium.



Increase of Pressure with Depth

The diagram illustrates the equality of pressures in orthogonal directions. This can be extended to any direction whatever, so Pascal's Principle is established. This demonstration is similar to the usual one using a triangular prism and considering the forces on the end and lateral faces separately.



Thrust on a Plane

Free Surface Perpendicular to Gravity

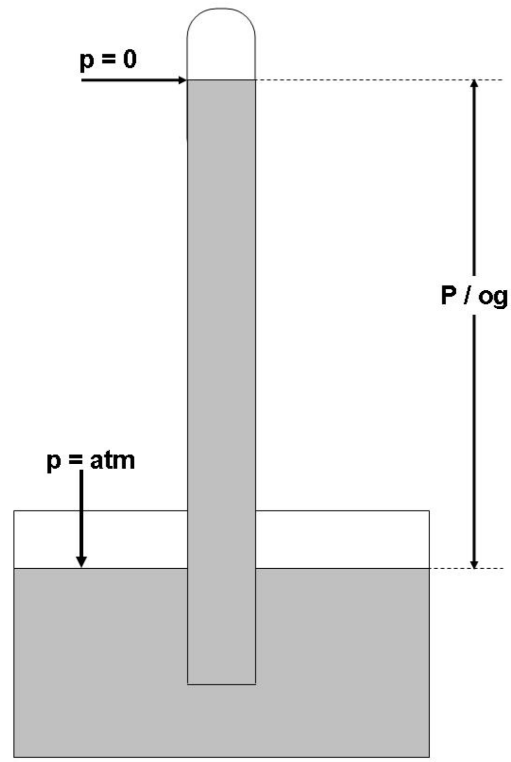
When gravity acts, the liquid assumes a free surface perpendicular to gravity, which can be proved by Thomson's method. A straight cylinder of unit cross-sectional area (assumed only for ease in the arithmetic) can be used to find the increase of pressure with depth. Indeed, we see that $p2 = p1 + \rho gh$. The upper surface of the cylinder can be placed at the free surface if desired. The pressure is now the same in any direction at a point, but is greater at points that lie deeper. From this same figure, it is easy to prove Archimedes' Principle that the buoyant force is equal to the weight of the displaced fluid, and passes through the center of mass of this displaced fluid.

Geometric Arguments

Ingenious geometric arguments can be used to substitute for easier, but less transparent arguments using calculus. For example, the force acting on one side of an inclined plane surface whose projection is AB can be found as in the diagram above. O is the point at which the prolonged projection intersects the free surface.

The line AC' perpendicular to the plane is made equal to the depth AC of point A, and line BD' is similarly drawn equal to BD. The line OD' also passes through C', by proportionality of triangles OAC' and OAD'. Therefore, the thrust F on the plane is the weight of a prism of fluid of cross-section AC'D'B, passing through its centroid normal to plane AB.

Note that the thrust is equal to the density times the area times the depth of the center of the area; its line of action does not pass through the center, but below it, at the center of thrust. The same result can be obtained with calculus by summing the pressures and the moments, of course.



Barometer

Atmospheric Pressure and its Effects

Suppose a vertical pipe is stood in a pool of water, and a vacuum pump applied to the upper end. Before we start the pump, the water levels outside and inside the pipe are equal, and the pressures on the surfaces are also equal and are equal to the atmospheric pressure.

Now start the pump. When it has sucked all the air out above the water, the pressure on the surface of the water inside the pipe is zero, and the pressure at the level of the water on the outside of the pipe is still the atmospheric pressure.

Of course, there is the vapor pressure of the water to worry about if you want to be precise, but we neglect this complication in making our point. We require a column of water 33.9 ft high inside the pipe, with a vacuum above it, to balance the atmospheric pressure. Now do the same thing with liquid mercury, whose density at 0 °C is 13.5951 times that of water. The height of the column is 2.494 ft, 29.92 in, or 760.0 mm.

Standard Atmospheric Pressure

This definition of the standard atmospheric pressure was established by Regnault in the mid-19th century. In Britain, 30 in Hg (inches of mercury) had been used previously.

As a practical matter, it is convenient to measure pressure differences by measuring the height of liquid columns, a practice known as manometry.

The barometer is a familiar example of this, and atmospheric pressures are traditionally given in terms of the length of a mercury column. To make a barometer, the barometric tube, closed at one end, is filled with mercury and then inverted and placed in a mercury reservoir.

Corrections must be made for temperature, because the density of mercury depends on the temperature, and the brass scale expands, for capillarity if the tube is less than about 1 cm in diameter, and even slightly for altitude, since the value of g changes with altitude.

The vapor pressure of mercury is only 0.001201 mmHg at 20°C, so a correction from this source is negligible. For the usual case of a mercury column (α = 0.000181792 per °C) and a brass scale (&alpha = 0.0000184 per °C) the temperature correction is -2.74 mm at 760 mm and 20°C.

Before reading the barometer scale, the mercury reservoir is raised or lowered until the surface of the mercury just touches a reference point, which is mirrored in the surface so it is easy to determine the proper position.

An aneroid barometer uses a partially evacuated chamber of thin metal that expands and contracts according to the external pressure. This movement is communicated to a needle that revolves in a dial. The materials and construction are arranged to give a low temperature coefficient. The instrument must be calibrated before use, and is usually arranged to read directly in elevations.

An aneroid barometer is much easier to use in field observations, such as in reconnaissance surveys. In a particular case, it would be read at the start of the day at the base camp, at various points in the vicinity, and then finally at the starting point, to determine the change in pressure with time.

The height differences can be calculated from $h = 60{,}360 \log(P/p) [1 + (T + t - 64)/986)$ feet, where P and p are in the same units, and T, t are in °F.

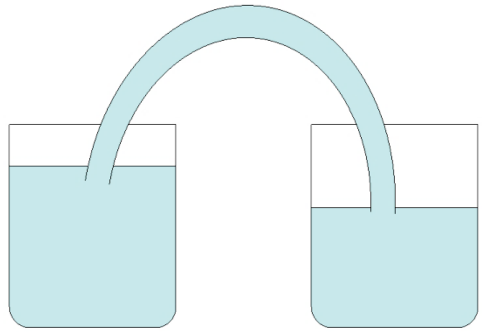
An absolute pressure is referring to a vacuum, while a gauge pressure is referring to the atmospheric pressure at the moment.

A negative gauge pressure is a (partial) vacuum. When a vacuum is stated to be so many inches, this means the pressure below the atmospheric pressure of about 30 in.

A vacuum of 25 inches is the same thing as an absolute pressure of 5 inches (of mercury).

Vacuum

The term ***vacuum*** indicates that the absolute pressure is less than the atmospheric pressure and that the gauge pressure is negative. A complete or total vacuum would mean a pressure of 0 psia or –14.7 psig. Since it is impossible to produce a total vacuum, the term vacuum, as used in this document, will mean all degrees of partial vacuum. In a partial vacuum, the pressure would range from slightly less than 14.7 psia (0 psig) to slightly greater than 0 psia (-14.7 psig). Backsiphonage results from atmospheric pressure exerted on a liquid forcing it toward a supply system that is under a vacuum.

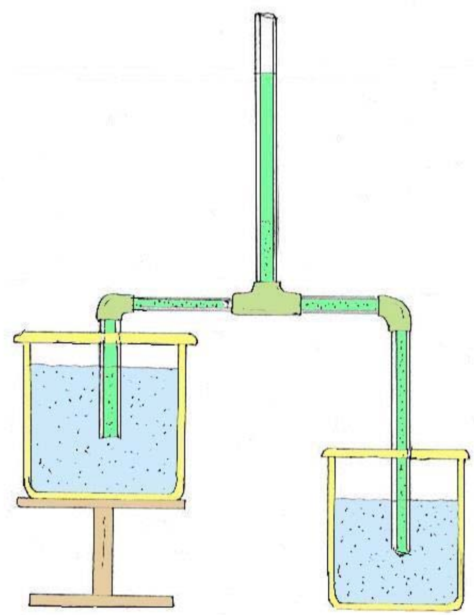


Siphon

Water Pressure

The weight of a cubic foot of water is 62.4 pounds per square foot. The base can be subdivided into 144-square inches with each subdivision being subjected to a pressure of 0.433 psig. Suppose you placed another cubic foot of water on top of the first cubic foot. The pressure on the top surface of the first cube which was originally atmospheric, or 0 psig, would now be 0.4333 psig as a result of the additional cubic foot of water. The pressure of the base of the first cubic foot would be increased by the same amount of 0.866 psig or two times the original pressure.

Pressures are very frequently stated in terms of the height of a fluid. If it is the same fluid whose pressure is being given, it is usually called "head," and the factor connecting the head and the pressure is the weight density ρg. In the English engineer's system, weight density is in pounds per cubic inch or cubic foot.



PASCAL'S SIPHON

A head of 10 ft is equivalent to a pressure of 624 psf, or 4.33 psi. It can also be considered an energy availability of ft-lb per lb.

Water with a pressure head of 10 ft can furnish the same energy as an equal amount of water raised by 10 ft. Water flowing in a pipe is subject to head loss because of friction.

Take a jar and a basin of water. Fill the jar with water and invert it under the water in the basin. Now raise the jar as far as you can without allowing its mouth to come above the water surface. It is always a little surprising to see that the jar does not empty itself, but the water remains with no visible means of support.

By blowing through a straw, one can put air into the jar, and as much water leaves as air enters.

In fact, this is a famous method of collecting insoluble gases in the chemical laboratory, or for supplying hummingbird feeders. It is good to remind oneself of exactly the balance of forces involved.

Another application of pressure is the siphon. The name is Greek for the tube that was used for drawing wine from a cask. This is a tube filled with fluid connecting two containers of fluid, normally rising higher than the water levels in the two containers, at least to pass over their rims. In the diagram, the two water levels are the same, so there will be no flow.

When a siphon goes below the free water levels, it is called an inverted siphon. If the levels in the two basins are not equal, fluid flows from the basin with the higher level into the one with the lower level, until the levels are equal.

A siphon can be made by filling the tube, closing the ends, and then putting the ends under the surface on both sides. Alternatively, the tube can be placed in one fluid and filled by sucking on it. When it is full, the other end is put in place. The analysis of the siphon is easy, and should be obvious. The pressure rises or falls as described by the barometric equation through the siphon tube.

There is obviously a maximum height for the siphon which is the same as the limit of the suction pump, about 34 feet. Inverted siphons are sometimes used in pipelines to cross valleys. Differences in elevation are usually too great to use regular siphons to cross hills, so the fluids must be pressurized by pumps so the pressure does not fall to zero at the crests.

Liquids at Rest

In studying fluids at rest, we are concerned with the transmission of force and the factors which affect the forces in liquids. Additionally, pressure in and on liquids and factors affecting pressure are of great importance.

Pressure and Force

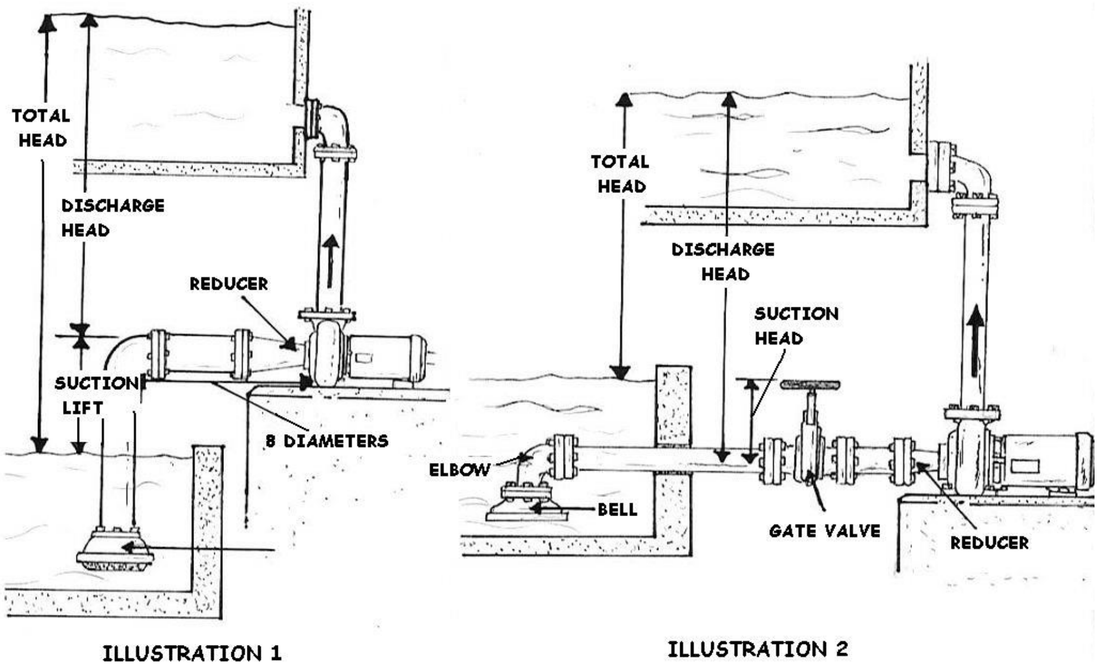
Pressure is the force that pushes water through pipes. Water pressure determines the flow of water from the tap. If pressure is not sufficient then the flow can reduce to a trickle and it will take a long time to fill a kettle or a cistern. The terms ***force*** and ***pressure*** are used extensively in the study of fluid power. It is essential that we distinguish between the terms.

Force means a total push or pull. It is the push or pull exerted against the total area of a particular surface and is expressed in pounds or grams. Pressure means the amount of push or pull (force) applied to each unit area of the surface and is expressed in pounds per square inch (lb/in^2) or grams per square centimeter (gm/cm^2). Pressure maybe exerted in one direction, in several directions, or in all directions.

Computing Force, Pressure, and Area

A formula is used in computing force, pressure, and area in fluid power systems. In this formula, P refers to pressure, F indicates force, and A represents area. Force equals pressure times area. Thus, the formula is written

General Pumping Fundamentals

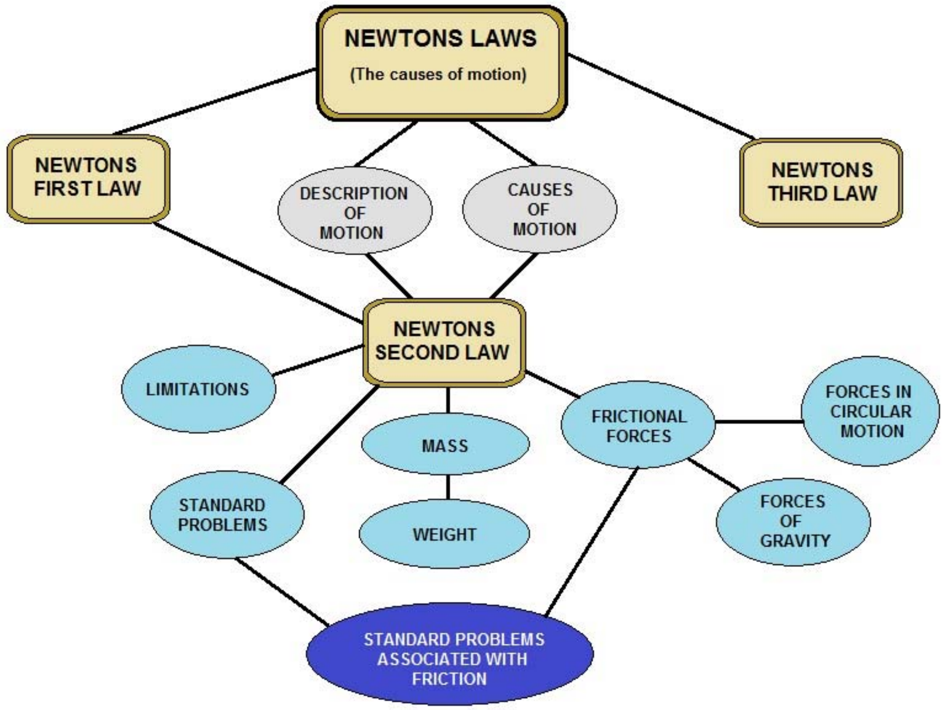


Here are the important points to consider about suction piping when the liquid being pumped is below the level of the pump:

- First, suction lift is when the level of water to be pumped is below the centerline of the pump. Sometimes suction lift is also referred to as '**negative suction head'**.
- The ability of the pump to lift water is the result of a partial vacuum created at the center of the pump.
- This works similar to sucking soda from a straw. As you gently suck on a straw, you are creating a vacuum or a pressure differential. Less pressure is exerted on the liquid inside the straw, so that the greater pressure is exerted on the liquid around the outside of the straw, causing the liquid in the straw to move up. By sucking on the straw, this allows atmospheric pressure to move the liquid.
- Look at the diagram illustrated as "**1**". The foot valve is located at the end of the suction pipe of a pump. It opens to allow water to enter the suction side, but closes to prevent water from passing back out of the bottom end.
- The suction side of pipe should be one diameter larger than the pump inlet. The required eccentric reducer should be turned so that the top is flat and the bottom tapered.

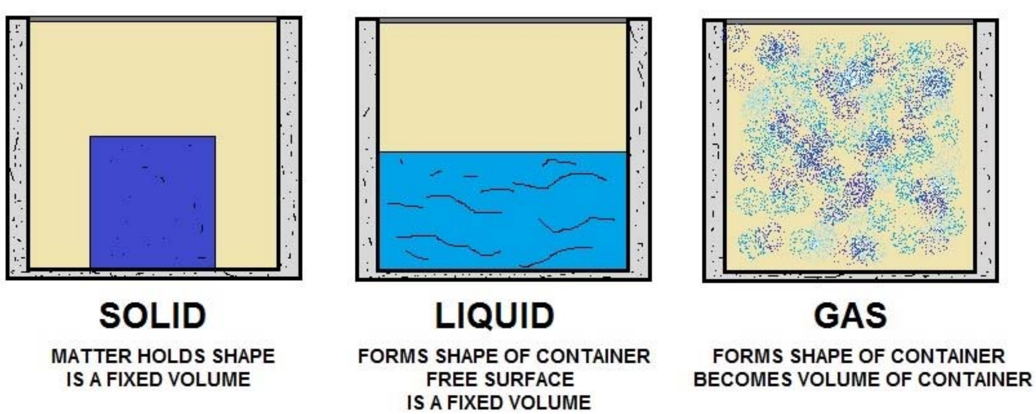
Notice in illustration "**2**" that the liquid is above the level of the pump. Sometimes this is referred to as ***'flooded suction'*** or ***'suction head'*** situations.

Points to Note are:
If an elbow and bell are used, they should be at least one pipe diameter from the tank bottom and side. This type of suction piping must have a gate valve which can be used to prevent the reverse flow when the pump has to be removed. In the illustrations you can see in both cases the discharge head is from the centerline of the pump to the level of the discharge water. The total head is the difference between the two liquid levels.



FIRST LAW:	Objects at rest remain at rest and objects in motion in a straight line unless acted upon by an unbalanced force.
SECOND LAW:	Forces equal mass times acceleration (f = ma).
THIRD LAW:	For every action, there is an equal and opposite reaction

NEWTON'S THREE LAWS OF MOTION



DIFFERENT PHASES OF MATTER

Pump Definitions *(Larger Glossary in the rear of this manual)*

Fluid: Any substance that can be pumped such as oil, water, refrigerant, or even air.

Gasket: Flat material that is compressed between two flanges to from a seal.

Gland follower: A bushing used to compress the packing in the stuffing box and to control leakoff.

Gland sealing line: A line that directs sealing fluid to the stuffing box.

Horizontal pumps: Pumps in which the Center line of the shaft is horizontal.

Impeller: The part of the pump that increases the speed of the fluid being handled.

Inboard: The end of the pump closest to the motor.

Inter-stage diaphragm: A barrier that separates stages of a multi-stage pump.

Key: A rectangular piece of metal that prevents the impeller from rotating on the shaft.

Keyway: The area on the shaft that accepts the key.

Kinetic energy: Energy associated with motion.

Lantern ring: A metal ring located between rings of packing that distributes gland sealing fluid.

Leak-off: Fluid that leaks from the stuffing box.

Mechanical seal: A mechanical device that seals the pump stuffing box.

Mixed flow pump: A pump that uses both axial-flow and radial-flow components in one impeller.

Multi-stage pumps: Pumps with more than one impeller.

Outboard: The end of the pump farthest from the motor.

Packing: Soft, pliable material that seals the stuffing box.

Positive displacement pumps: Pumps that move fluids by physically displacing the fluid inside the pump.

Radial bearings: Bearings that prevent shaft movement in any direction outward from the center line of the pump.

Radial flow: Flow at 90° to the center line of the shaft.

Retaining nut: A nut that keeps the parts in place.

Rotor: The rotating parts, usually including the impeller, shaft, bearing housings, and all other parts included between the bearing housing and the impeller.

Score: To cause lines, grooves or scratches.

Shaft: A cylindrical bar that transmits power from the driver to the pump impeller.

Shaft sleeve: A replaceable tubular covering on the shaft.

Shroud: The metal covering over the vanes of an impeller.

Slop drain: The drain from the area that collects leak-off from the stuffing box.

Slurry: A thick, viscous fluid, usually containing small particles.

Stages: Impellers in a multi-stage pump.

Stethoscope: A metal device that can amplify and pinpoint pump sounds.

Strainer: A device that retains solid pieces while letting liquids through.

Stuffing box: The area of the pump where the shaft penetrates the casing.

Suction: The place where fluid enters the pump.

Suction eye: The place where fluid enters the pump impeller.

Throat bushing: A bushing at the bottom of the stuffing box that prevents packing from being pushed out of the stuffing box into the suction eye of the impeller.

Thrust: Force, usually along the center line of the pump.

Thrust bearings: Bearings that prevent shaft movement back and forth in the same direction as the center line of the shaft.

Troubleshooting: Locating a problem.

Vanes: The parts of the impeller that push and increase the speed of the fluid in the pump.

Vertical pumps: Pumps in which the center line of the shaft runs vertically.

Volute: The part of the pump that changes the speed of the fluid into pressure.

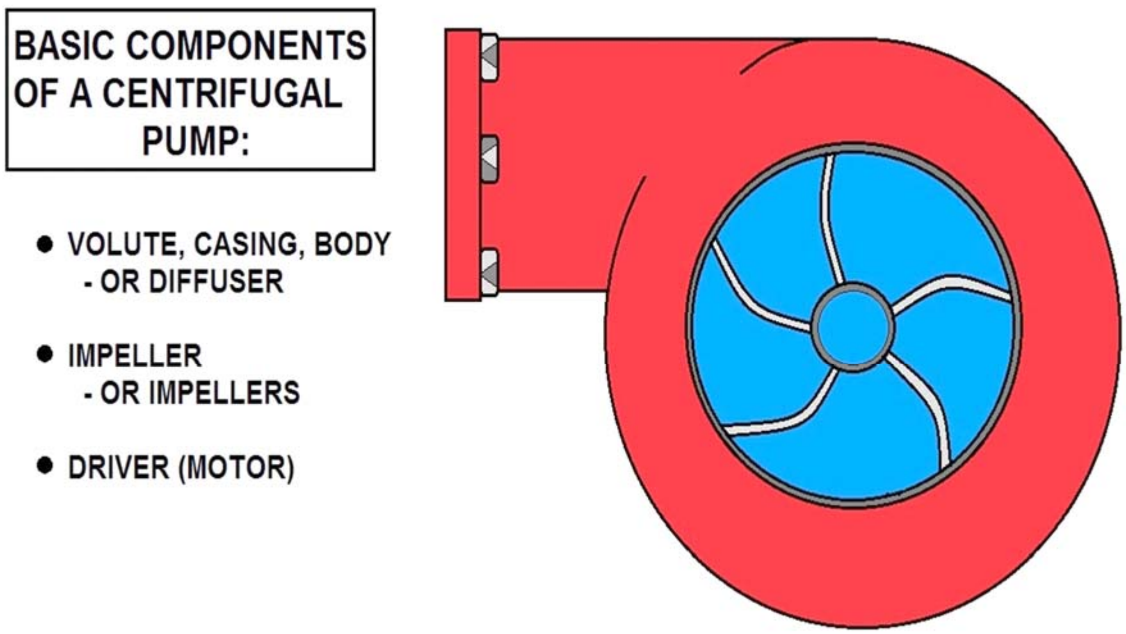
Wearing rings: Replaceable rings on the impeller or the casing that wear as the pump operates.

.

Pump Basics – Breakdown of Pumps

Pumps are used to move or raise fluids. They are not only very useful, but are excellent examples of hydrostatics. Pumps are of two general types, hydrostatic or positive displacement pumps, and pumps depending on dynamic forces, such as centrifugal pumps.

Here we will only consider positive displacement pumps, which can be understood purely by hydrostatic considerations. They have a piston (or equivalent) moving in a closely-fitting cylinder, and forces are exerted on the fluid by motion of the piston.



BASICS OF A CENTRIFUGAL PUMP

We have already seen an important example of this in the hydraulic lever or hydraulic press, which we have called quasi-static. The simplest pump is the syringe, filled by withdrawing the piston and emptied by pressing it back in, as its port is immersed in the fluid or removed from it.

More complicated pumps have valves allowing them to work repetitively. These are usually check valves that open to allow passage in one direction, and close automatically to prevent reverse flow. There are many kinds of valves, and they are usually the most trouble-prone and complicated part of a pump.

The force pump has two check valves in the cylinder, one for supply and the other for delivery. The supply valve opens when the cylinder volume increases, the delivery valve when the cylinder volume decreases.

The lift pump has a supply valve and a valve in the piston that allows the liquid to pass around it when the volume of the cylinder is reduced. The delivery in this case is from the upper part of the cylinder which the piston does not enter.

Diaphragm pumps are force pumps in which the oscillating diaphragm takes the place of the piston. The diaphragm may be moved mechanically, or by the pressure of the fluid on one side of the diaphragm.

Some positive displacement pumps are shown below. The force and lift pumps are typically used for water. The force pump has two valves in the cylinder, while the lift pump has a one valve in the cylinder and one in the piston. The maximum lift, or "suction," is determined by the atmospheric pressure, and either cylinder must be within this height of the free surface. The force pump, however, can give an arbitrarily large pressure to the discharged fluid, as in the case of a diesel engine injector. A nozzle can be used to convert the pressure to velocity, to produce a jet, as for firefighting. Fire fighting force pumps usually have two cylinders feeding one receiver alternately. The air space in the receiver helps to make the water pressure uniform.

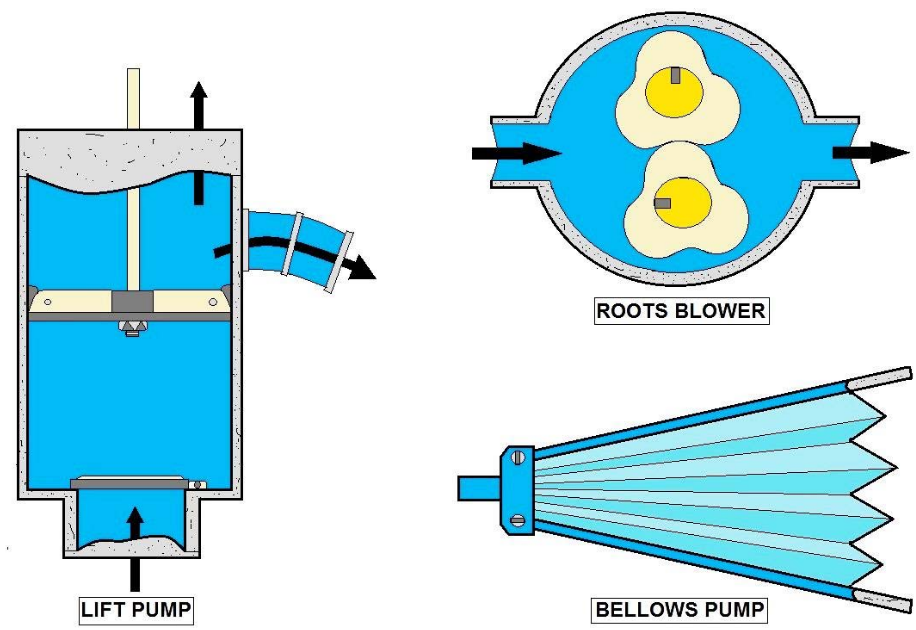
The three pumps below are typically used for air, but would be equally applicable to liquids.

The Roots blower has no valves, their place taken by the sliding contact between the rotors and the housing. The Roots blower can either exhaust a receiver or provide air under moderate pressure, in large volumes.

The bellows is a very old device, requiring no accurate machining. The single valve is in one or both sides of the expandable chamber. Another valve can be placed at the nozzle if required. The valve can be a piece of soft leather held close to holes in the chamber.

The bicycle pump uses the valve on the valve stem of the tire or inner tube to hold pressure in the tire. The piston, which is attached to the discharge tube, has a flexible seal that seals when the cylinder is moved to compress the air, but allows air to pass when the movement is reversed.

Diaphragm and vane pumps are not shown, but they act the same way by varying the volume of a chamber, and directing the flow with check valves.



TYPES OF POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT PUMPS

Types of Pumps

The family of pumps comprises a large number of types based on application and capabilities. The two major groups of pumps are dynamic and positive displacement.

Dynamic Pumps (Centrifugal Pump)

Centrifugal pumps are classified into three general categories:
Radial flow—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed wholly by centrifugal force.
Mixed flow—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed partly by centrifugal force and partly by the lift of the vanes of the impeller on the liquid.
Axial flow—a centrifugal pump in which the pressure is developed by the propelling or lifting action of the vanes of the impeller on the liquid.

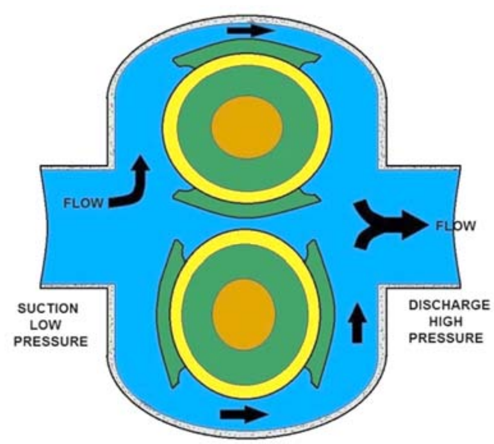
Positive Displacement Pumps

A Positive Displacement Pump has an expanding cavity on the suction side of the pump and a decreasing cavity on the discharge side. Liquid is allowed to flow into the pump as the cavity on the suction side expands and the liquid is forced out of the discharge as the cavity collapses. This principle applies to all types of Positive Displacement Pumps whether the pump is a rotary lobe, gear within a gear, piston, diaphragm, screw, progressing cavity, etc.

A Positive Displacement Pump, unlike a Centrifugal Pump, will produce the same flow at a given RPM no matter what the discharge pressure is. A Positive Displacement Pump cannot be operated against a closed valve on the discharge side of the pump, i.e. it does not have a shut-off head like a Centrifugal Pump does. If a Positive Displacement Pump is allowed to operate against a closed discharge valve it will continue to produce flow which will increase the pressure in the discharge line until either the line bursts or the pump is severely damaged or both.

Types of Positive Displacement Pumps

Single Rotor	Multiple Rotor
Vane	Gear
Piston	Lobe
Flexible Member	Circumferential Piston
Single Screw	Multiple Screw



COMMONLY FOUND POSITIVE DISPLACEMENT PUMP

There are many types of positive displacement pumps. We will look at:

- Plunger pumps
- Diaphragm pumps
- Progressing cavity pumps, and
- Screw pumps

Single Rotator

Component	Description
Vane	The vane(s) may be blades, buckets, rollers, or slippers that cooperate with a dam to draw fluid into and out of the pump chamber.
Piston	Fluid is drawn in and out of the pump chamber by a piston(s) reciprocating within a cylinder(s) and operating port valves.
Flexible Member	Pumping and sealing depends on the elasticity of a flexible member(s) that may be a tube, vane, or a liner.
Single Screw	Fluid is carried between rotor screw threads as they mesh with internal threads on the stator.

Multiple Rotator

Component	Description
Gear	Fluid is carried between gear teeth and is expelled by the meshing of the gears that cooperate to provide continuous sealing between the pump inlet and outlet.
Lobe	Fluid is carried between rotor lobes that cooperate to provide continuous sealing between the pump inlet and outlet.
Circumferential piston	Fluid is carried in spaces between piston surfaces not requiring contacts between rotor surfaces.
Multiple Screw	Fluid is carried between rotor screw threads as they mesh.

In the same way, the progressing cavity and the screw are two other types of mechanical action that can be used to provide movement of the liquid through the pump.

Plunger Pump
The plunger pump is a positive displacement pump that uses a plunger or piston to force liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. It is used for heavy sludge. The movement of the plunger or piston inside the pump creates pressure inside the pump, so you have to be careful that this kind of pump is never operated against any closed discharge valve.

All discharge valves must be open before the pump is started, to prevent any fast build-up of pressure that could damage the pump.

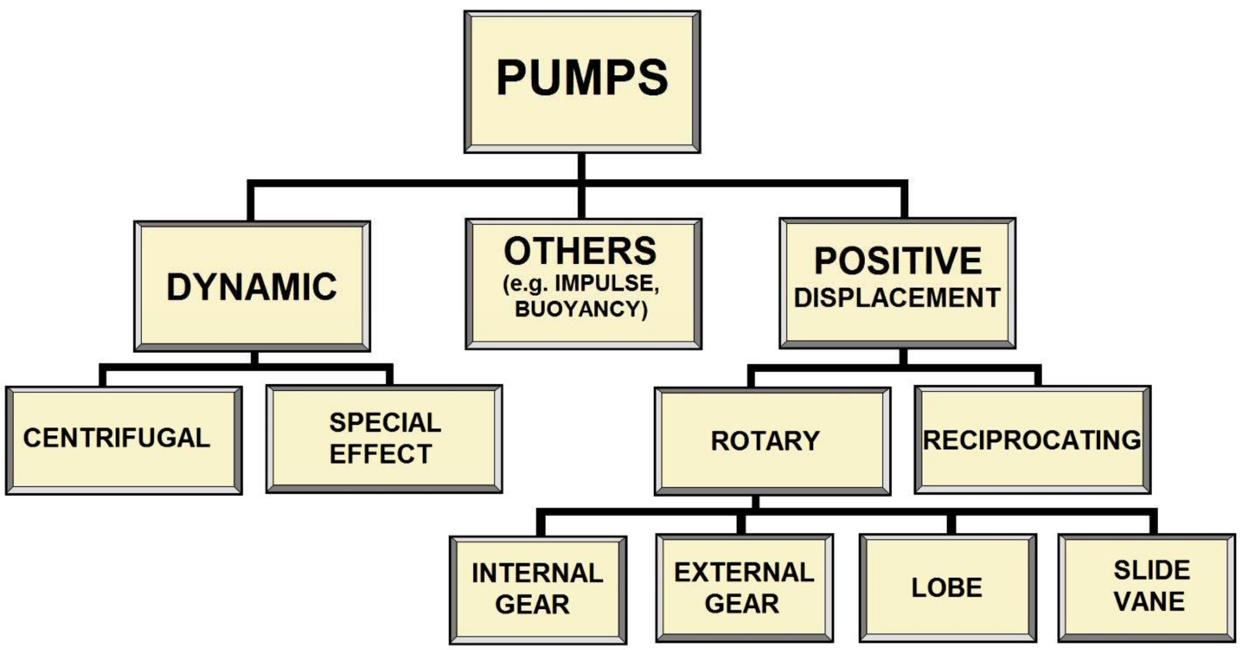
Diaphragm Pumps
In this type of pump, a diaphragm provides the mechanical action used to force liquid from the suction to the discharge side of the pump. The advantage the diaphragm has over the plunger is that the diaphragm pump does not come in contact with moving metal. This can be important when pumping abrasive or corrosive materials.

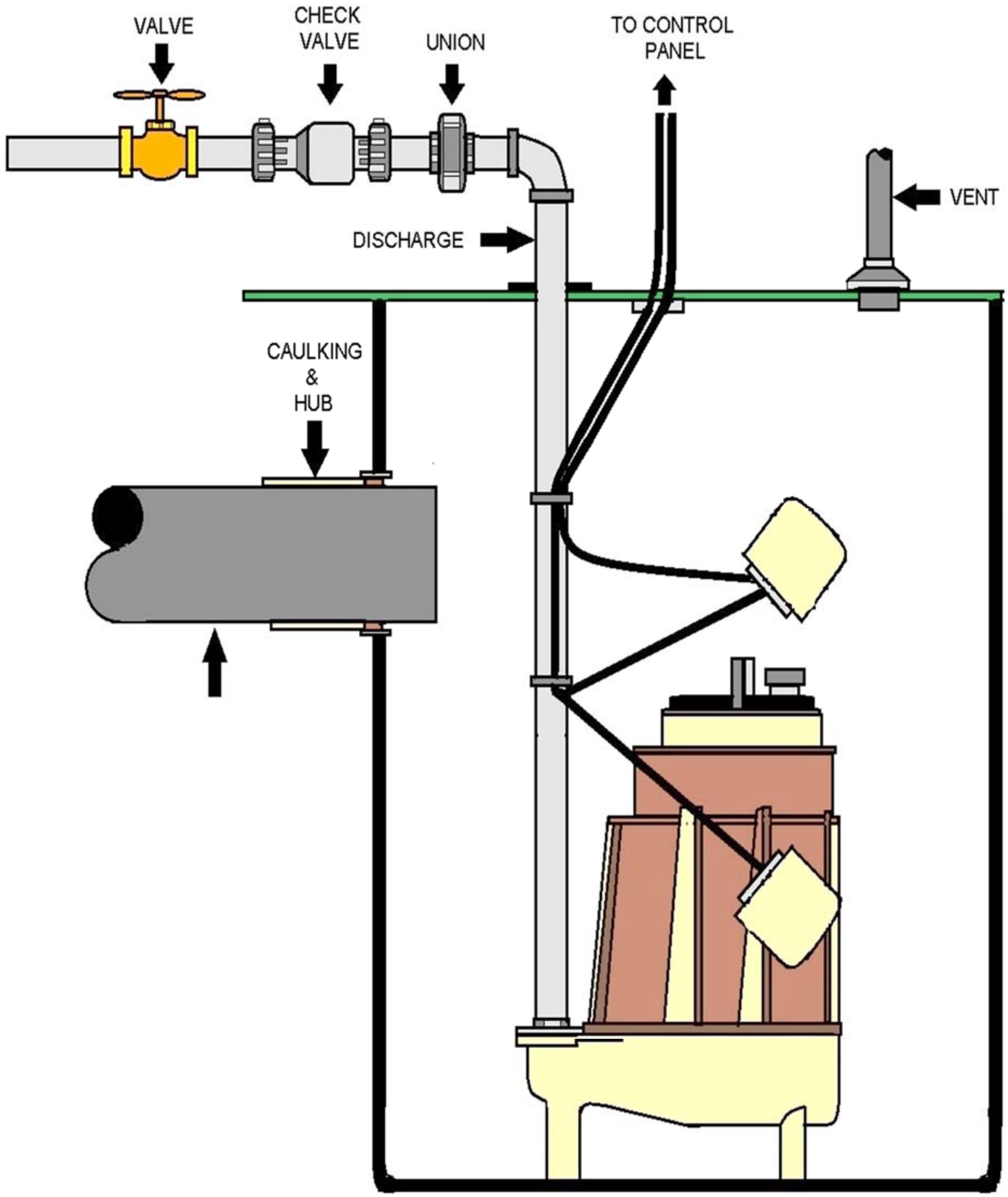
There are three main types of diaphragm pumps available:
1. Diaphragm sludge pump
2. Chemical metering or proportional pump
3. Air-powered double-diaphragm pump

Pump Categories

Let's cover the essentials first. The key to the whole operation is, of course, the *pump.* And regardless of what type it is (reciprocating piston, centrifugal, turbine or jet-ejector, for either shallow or deep well applications), its purpose is to move water and generate the delivery force we call pressure. Sometimes — with centrifugal pumps in particular — pressure is not referred to in pounds per square inch but rather as the equivalent in elevation, called head. No matter; head in feet divided by 2.31 equals pressure, so it's simple enough to establish a common figure.

Pumps may be classified on the basis of the application they serve. All pumps may be divided into two major categories: (1) dynamic, in which energy is continuously added to increase the fluid velocities within the machine, and (2) displacement, in which the energy is periodically added by application of force.



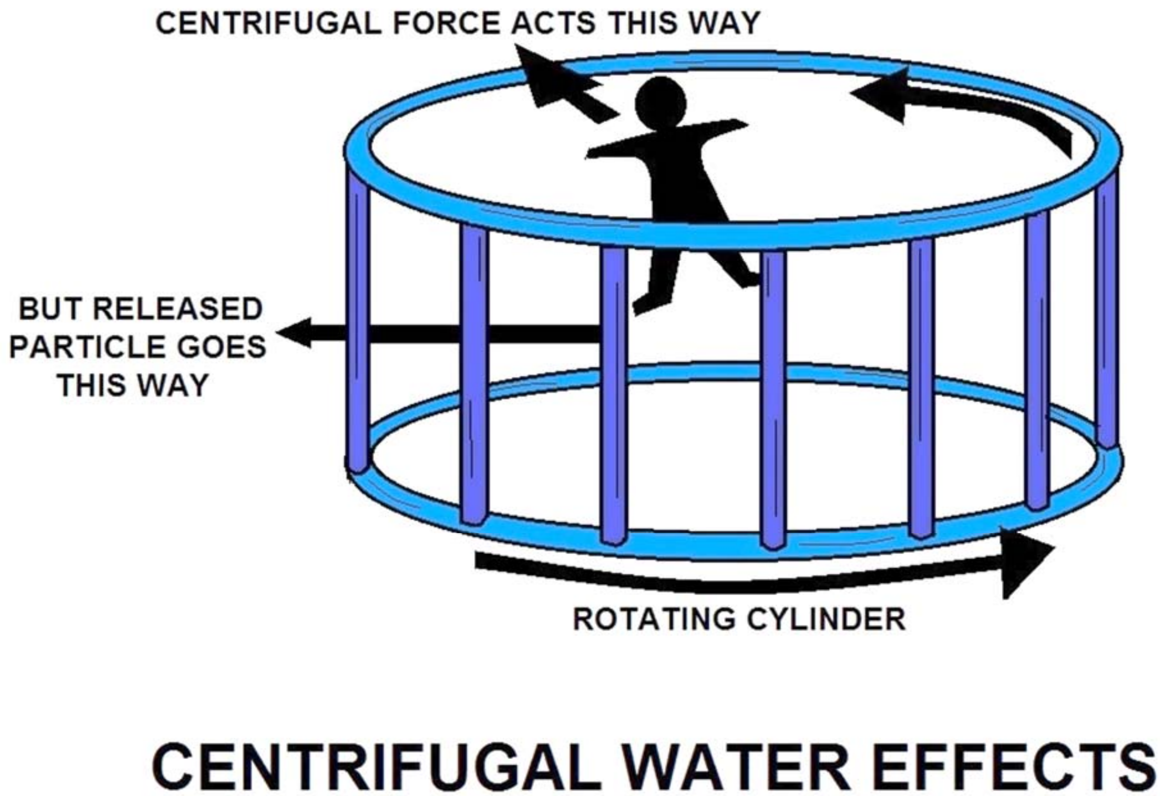


SEWAGE EJECTOR SYSTEM

Basic Water Pump Operation

The water pump commonly found in our systems is centrifugal pumps. These pumps work by spinning water around in a circle inside a cylindrical pump housing. The pump makes the water spin by pushing it with an impeller. The blades of this impeller project outward from an axle like the arms of a turnstile and, as the impeller spins, the water spins with it. As the water spins, the pressure near the outer edge of the pump housing becomes much higher than near the center of the impeller.

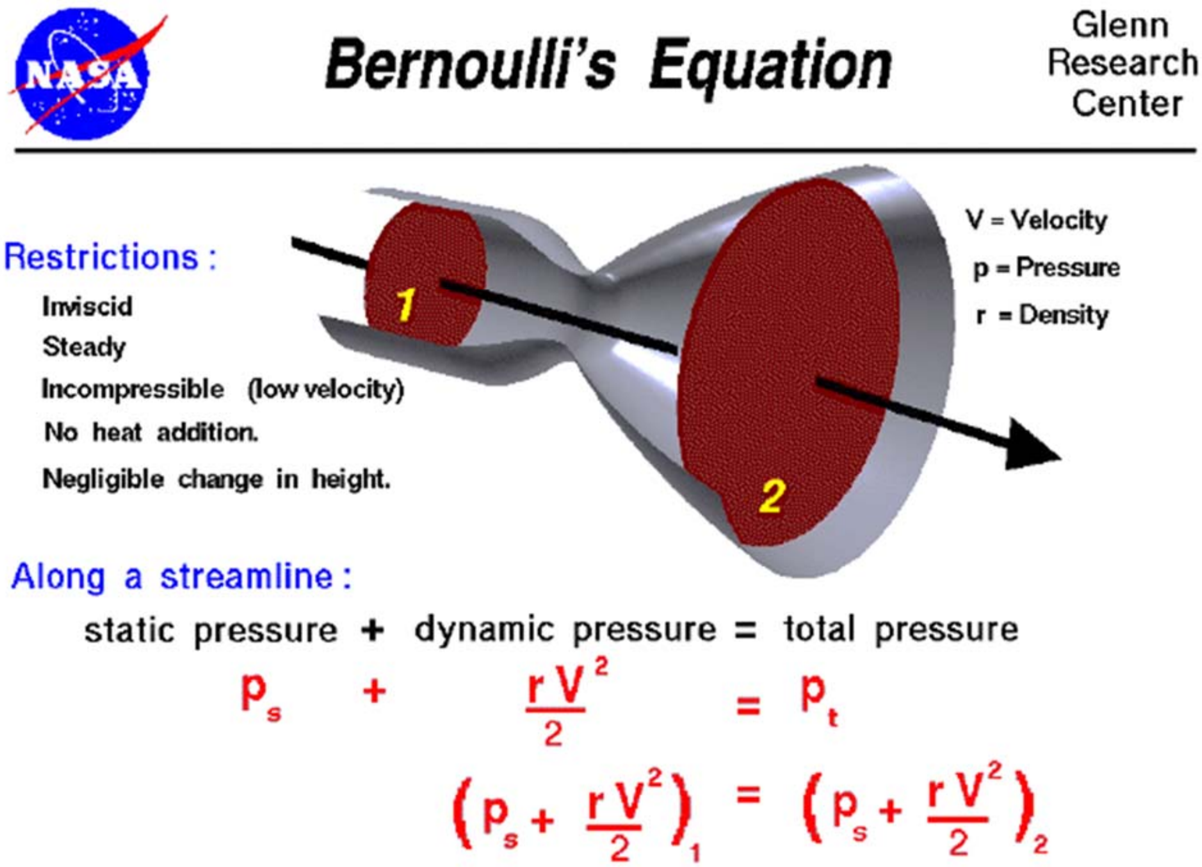
There are many ways to understand this rise in pressure, and here are two:



First, you can view the water between the impeller blades as an object traveling in a circle. Objects do not naturally travel in a circle--they need an inward force to cause them to accelerate inward as they spin. Without such an inward force, an object will travel in a straight line and will not complete the circle. In a centrifugal pump, that inward force is provided by high-pressure water near the outer edge of the pump housing.

The water at the edge of the pump pushes inward on the water between the impeller blades and makes it possible for that water to travel in a circle. The water pressure at the edge of the turning impeller rises until it is able to keep water circling with the impeller blades.

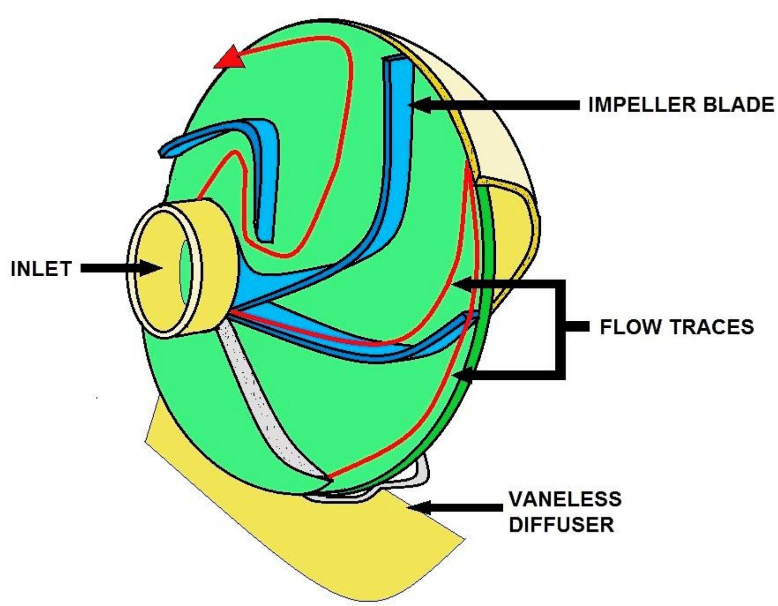
You can also view the water as an incompressible fluid, one that obeys Bernoulli's equation in the appropriate contexts. As water drifts outward between the impeller blades of the pump, it must move faster and faster because its circular path is getting larger and larger. The impeller blades cause the water to move faster and faster. By the time the water has reached the outer edge of the impeller, it is moving quite fast. However, when the water leaves the impeller and arrives at the outer edge of the cylindrical pump housing, it slows down.



Here is where Bernoulli's equation figures in. As the water slows down and its kinetic energy decreases, that water's pressure's potential energy increases (*to conserve energy*). Thus, the slowing is accompanied by a pressure rise.

That is why the water pressure at the outer edge of the pump housing is higher than the water pressure near the center of the impeller.

When water is actively flowing through the pump, arriving through a hole near the center of the impeller and leaving through a hole near the outer edge of the pump housing, the pressure rise between center and edge of the pump is not as large.



COMMON PUMP IMPELLER

Commonly Found Types of Water Pumps

The most common type of water pumps used for municipal and domestic water supplies is *variable displacement* pumps. A variable displacement pump will produce at different rates relative to the amount of pressure or lift the pump is working against. *Centrifugal* pumps are variable displacement pumps that are by far used the most. The water production well industry almost exclusively uses *Turbine* pumps, which are a type of centrifugal pump.

The turbine pump utilizes *impellers* enclosed in single or multiple *bowls or stages* to lift water by *centrifugal force*. The impellers may be of either a *semi-open or closed type*. Impellers are rotated by the *pump motor*, which provides the horsepower needed to overcome the pumping head. A more thorough discussion of how these and other pumps work is presented later in this section. The size and number of stages, horsepower of the motor and pumping head are the key components related to the pump's lifting capacity.

Vertical turbine pumps are commonly used in groundwater wells. These pumps are driven by a shaft rotated by a motor on the surface. The shaft turns the impellers within the pump housing while the water moves up the column.

This type of pumping system is also called a *line-shaft turbine*. The rotating shaft in a line shaft turbine is actually housed within the column pipe that delivers the water to the surface. The size of the column, impeller, and bowls are selected based on the desired pumping rate and lift requirements.

Column pipe sections can be threaded or coupled together while the drive shaft is coupled and suspended within the column by *spider bearings*. The spider bearings provide both a seal at the column pipe joints and keep the shaft aligned within the column. The water passing through the column pipe serves as the lubricant for the bearings. Some vertical turbines are lubricated by oil rather than water. These pumps are essentially the same as water lubricated units; only the drive shaft is enclosed within an *oil tube*.

Food grade oil is supplied to the tube through a gravity feed system during operation. The oil tube is suspended within the column by *spider flanges,* while the line shaft is supported within the oil tube by *brass or redwood bearings*. A continuous supply of oil lubricates the drive shaft as it proceeds downward through the oil tube. A small hole located at the top of the pump bow unit allows excess oil to enter the well. This results in the formation of an oil film on the water surface within oil-lubricated wells. Careful operation of oil lubricated turbines is needed to ensure that the pumping levels do not drop enough to allow oil to enter the pump.

Both water and oil lubricated turbine pump units can be driven by electric or fuel powered motors. Most installations use an electric motor that is connected to the drive shaft by a keyway and nut. However, where electricity is not readily available, fuel powered engines may be connected to the drive shaft by a right angle drive gear. Also, both oil and water lubricated systems will have a strainer attached to the intake to prevent sediment from entering the pump.

When the line shaft turbine is turned off, water will flow back down the column, turning the impellers in a reverse direction. A pump and shaft can easily be broken if the motor were to turn on during this process. This is why a *time delay* or *ratchet* assembly is often installed on these motors to either prevent the motor from turning on before reverse rotation stops or simply not allow it to reverse at all.

There are three main types of diaphragm pumps:
In the first type, the diaphragm is sealed with one side in the fluid to be pumped, and the other in air or hydraulic fluid. The diaphragm is flexed, causing the volume of the pump chamber to increase and decrease. A pair of non-return check valves prevents reverse flow of the fluid.

As described above, the second type of diaphragm pump works with volumetric positive displacement, but differs in that the prime mover of the diaphragm is neither oil nor air; but is electro-mechanical, working through a crank or geared motor drive. This method flexes the diaphragm through simple mechanical action, and one side of the diaphragm is open to air. The third type of diaphragm pump has one or more unsealed diaphragms with the fluid to be pumped on both sides. The diaphragm(s) again are flexed, causing the volume to change.

When the volume of a chamber of either type of pump is increased (the diaphragm moving up), the pressure decreases, and fluid is drawn into the chamber. When the chamber pressure later increases from decreased volume (the diaphragm moving down), the fluid previously drawn in is forced out. Finally, the diaphragm moving up once again draws fluid into the chamber, completing the cycle. This action is similar to that of the cylinder in an internal combustion engine.

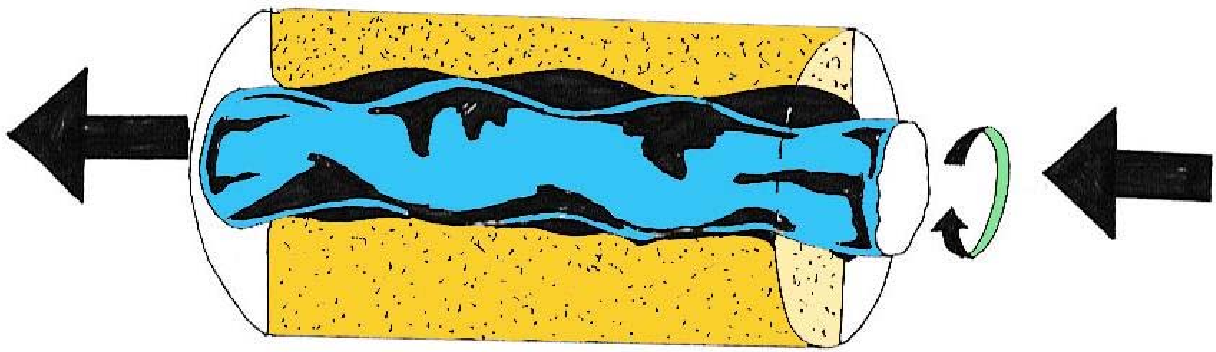
Cavitation
Cavitation is defined as the phenomenon of formation of vapor bubbles of a flowing liquid in a region where the pressure of the liquid falls below its vapor pressure. Cavitation is usually divided into two classes of behavior: inertial (or transient) cavitation and non-inertial cavitation. Inertial cavitation is the process where a void or bubble in a liquid rapidly collapses, producing a shock wave. Such cavitation often occurs in pumps, propellers, impellers, and in the vascular tissues of plants. Non-inertial cavitation is the process in which a bubble in a fluid is forced to oscillate in size or shape due to some form of energy input, such as an acoustic field. Such cavitation is often employed in ultrasonic cleaning baths and can also be observed in pumps, propellers etc.

Cavitation is, in many cases, an undesirable occurrence. In devices such as propellers and pumps, cavitation causes a great deal of noise, damage to components, vibrations, and a loss of efficiency. When the cavitation bubbles collapse, they force liquid energy into very small volumes, thereby creating spots of high temperature and emitting shock waves, the latter of which are a source of noise. The noise created by cavitation is a particular problem for military submarines, as it increases the chances of being detected by passive sonar. Although the collapse of a cavity is a relatively low-energy event, highly localized collapses can erode metals, such as steel, over time. The pitting caused by the collapse of cavities produces great wear on components and can dramatically shorten a propeller's or pump's lifetime.

After a surface is initially affected by cavitation, it tends to erode at an accelerating pace. The cavitation pits increase the turbulence of the fluid flow and create crevasses that act as nucleation sites for additional cavitation bubbles. The pits also increase the component's surface area and leave behind residual stresses. This makes the surface more prone to stress corrosion.

Impeller
An impeller is a rotating component of a centrifugal pump, usually made of iron, steel, aluminum or plastic, which transfers energy from the motor that drives the pump to the fluid being pumped by accelerating the fluid outwards from the center of rotation. The velocity achieved by the impeller transfers into pressure when the outward movement of the fluid is confined by the pump casing. Impellers are usually short cylinders with an open inlet (called an eye) to accept incoming fluid, vanes to push the fluid radically, and a splined center to accept a driveshaft.

Progressing Cavity Pump



PROGRESSIVE CAVITY PUMP

In this type of pump, components referred to as a rotor and an elastic stator provide the mechanical action used to force liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. As the rotor turns within the stator, cavities are formed which progress from the suction to the discharge end of the pump, conveying the pumped material. The continuous seal between the rotor and the stator helices keeps the fluid moving steadily at a fixed flow rate proportional to the pump's rotational speed. Progressing cavity pumps are used to pump material very high in solids content. The progressive cavity pump must never be run dry, because the friction between the rotor and stator will quickly damage the pump.

More on the Progressive Cavity Pump

A progressive cavity pump is also known as a progressing cavity pump, eccentric screw pump or even just cavity pump and, as is common in engineering generally, these pumps can often be referred to by using a generalized trademark. Hence names can vary from industry to industry and even regionally; examples include: Mono pump, Moyno pump, Mohno pump and Nemo pump.

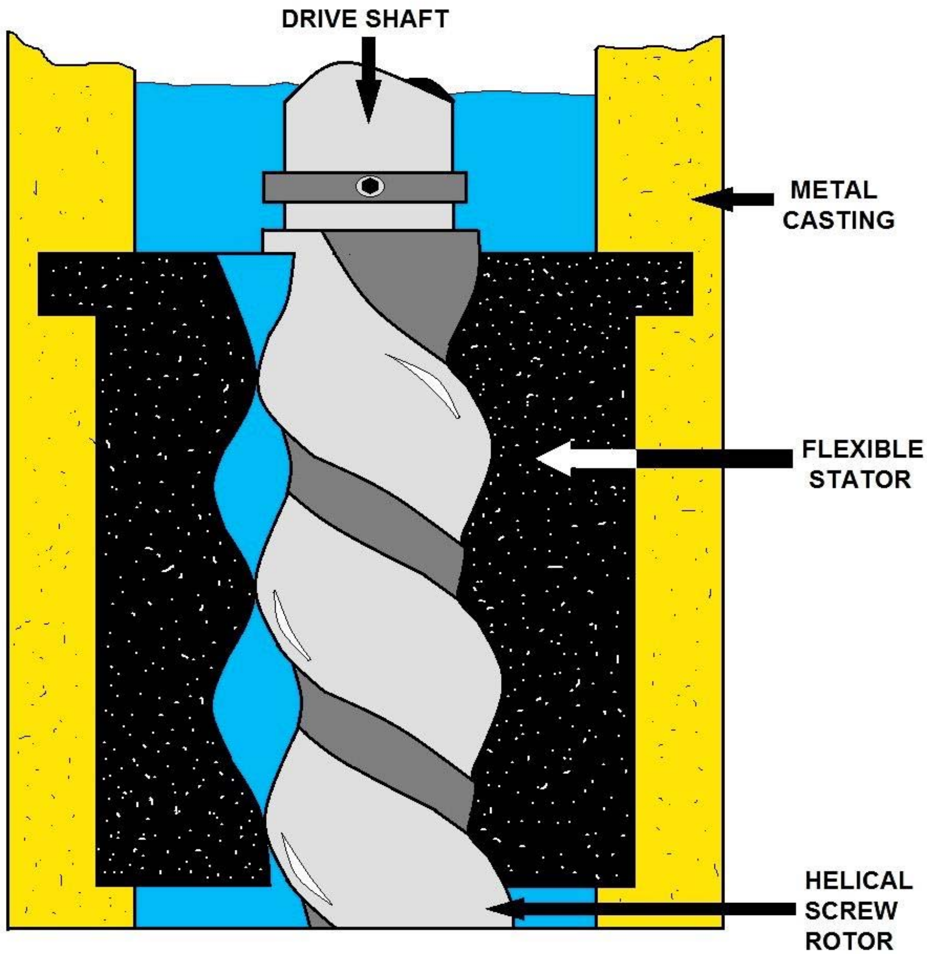
This type of pump transfers fluid by means of the progress, through the pump, of a sequence of small, fixed shape, discrete cavities, as its rotor is turned. This leads to the volumetric flow rate being proportional to the rotation rate (bi-directionally) and to low levels of shearing being applied to the pumped fluid. Hence, these pumps have application in fluid metering and pumping of viscous or shear sensitive materials. It should be noted that the cavities taper down toward their ends and overlap with their neighbors, so that, in general, no flow pulsing is caused by the arrival of cavities at the outlet, other than that caused by compression of the fluid or pump components.

The principle of this pumping technique is frequently misunderstood; often it is believed to occur due to a dynamic effect caused by drag, or friction against the moving teeth of the screw rotor. However, in reality it is due to sealed cavities, like a piston pump, and so has similar operational characteristics, such as being able to pump at extremely low rates, even to high pressure, revealing the effect to be purely positive displacement.

The mechanical layout that causes the cavities to, uniquely, be of fixed dimensions as they move through the pump, is hard to visualize (its essentially 3D nature renders diagrams quite ineffective for explanation), but it is accomplished by the preservation in shape of the gap formed between a helical shaft and a two start, twice the wavelength and double the diameter, helical hole, as the shaft is "rolled" around the inside surface of the hole. The motion of the rotor being the same as the smaller gears of a planetary gears system. This form of motion gives rise to the curves called Hypocycloids.

In order to produce a seal between cavities, the rotor requires a circular cross-section and the stator an oval one. The rotor so takes a form similar to a corkscrew, and this, combined with the off-center rotary motion, leads to the name; eccentric screw pump.

Different rotor shapes and rotor/stator pitch ratios exist, but are specialized in that they don't generally allow complete sealing, so reducing low speed pressure and flow rate linearity, but improving actual flow rates, for a given pump size, and/or the pumps solids handling ability.



PROGRESSIVE CAVITY PUMP

At a high enough pressure the sliding seals between cavities will leak some fluid rather than pumping it, so when pumping against high pressures a longer pump with more cavities is more effective, since each seal has only to deal with the pressure difference between adjacent cavities. Pumps with between two and a dozen or so cavities exist.

In operation, progressive cavity pumps are fundamentally fixed flow rate pumps, like piston pumps and peristaltic pumps, and this type of pump needs a fundamentally different understanding to the types of pumps to which people are more commonly first introduced, namely ones that can be thought of as generating a pressure. This can lead to the mistaken assumption that all pumps can have their flow rates adjusted by using a valve attached to their outlet, but with this type of pump this assumption is a problem, since such a valve will have practically no effect on the flow rate and completely closing it will involve very high, probably damaging, pressures being generated. In order to prevent this, pumps are often fitted with cut-off pressure switches, burst disks (deliberately weak and easily replaced points), or a bypass pipe that allows a variable amount a fluid to return to the inlet. With a bypass fitted, a fixed flow rate pump is effectively converted to a fixed pressure one.

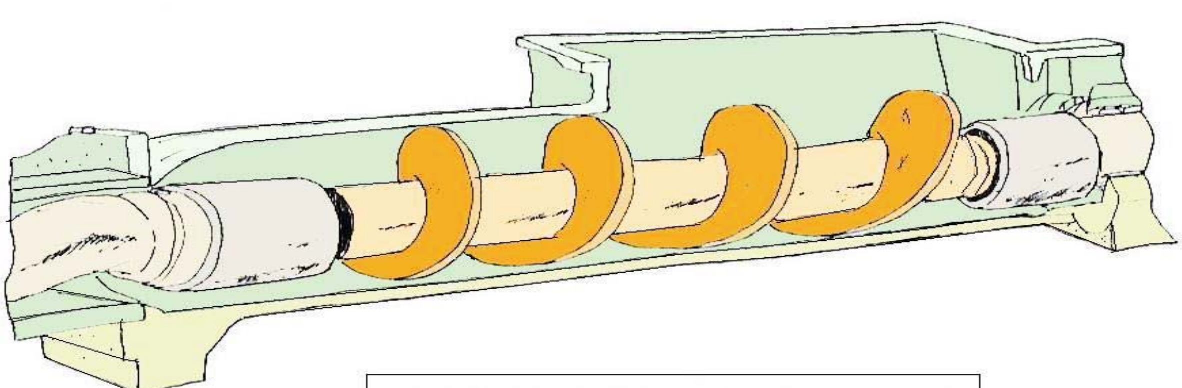
At the points where the rotor touches the stator, the surfaces are generally traveling transversely, so small areas of sliding contact occur, these areas need to be lubricated by the fluid being pumped (Hydrodynamic lubrication), this can mean that more torque is required for starting, and if allowed to operate without fluid, called 'run dry', rapid deterioration of the stator can result.

While progressive cavity pumps offer long life and reliable service transporting thick or lumpy fluids, abrasive fluids will significantly shorten the life of the stator. However, slurries (particulates in a medium) can be pumped reliably, as long as the medium is viscous enough to maintain a lubrication layer around the particles and so provide protection to the stator.

Specific designs involve the rotor of the pump being made of a steel, coated in a smooth hard surface, normally chromium, with the body (the stator) made of a molded elastomer inside a metal tube body. The Elastomer core of the stator forms the required complex cavities. The rotor is held against the inside surface of the stator by angled link arms, bearings (which have to be within the fluid) allowing it to roll around the inner surface (un-driven).

Elastomer is used for the stator to simplify the creation of the complex internal shape, created by means of casting, and also improves the quality and longevity of the seals by progressively swelling due to absorption of water and/or other common constituents of pumped fluids. Elastomer/pumped fluid compatibility will thus need to be taken into account.

Two common designs of stator are the "Equal-walled" and the "Unequal walled". The latter, having greater elastomer wall thickness at the peaks, allows larger-sized solids to pass through because of its increased ability to distort under pressure.



PROGRESSIVE CAVITY PUMP

Key Pump Words

NPSH: Net positive suction head - related to how much suction lift a pump can achieve by creating a partial vacuum. Atmospheric pressure then pushes liquid into the pump. A method of calculating if the pump will work or not.

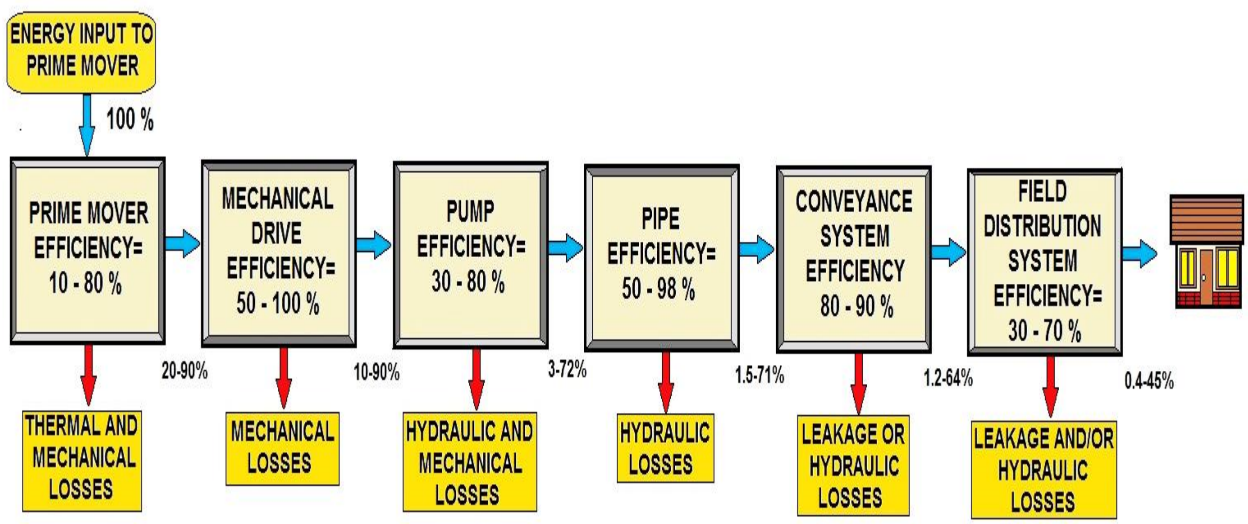
S.G.: Specific gravity. Weight of liquid in comparison to water at approx. 20 deg c (SG = 1).

Specific Speed: A number which is the function of pump flow, head, efficiency etc. Not used in day to day pump selection, but very useful, as pumps with similar specific speed will have similar shaped curves, similar efficiency / NPSH / solids handling characteristics.

Vapor Pressure: If the vapor pressure of a liquid is greater than the surrounding air pressure, the liquid will boil.

Viscosity: A measure of a liquid's resistance to flow. i.e.: how thick it is. The viscosity determines the type of pump used, the speed it can run at, and with gear pumps, the internal clearances required.

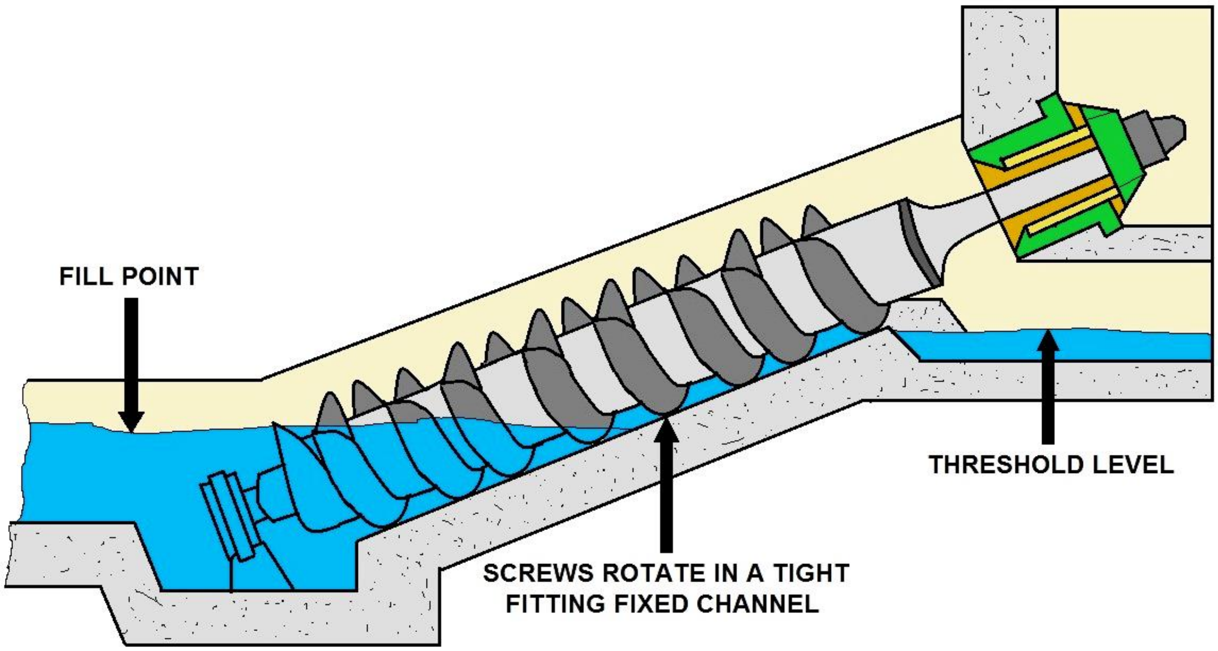
Friction Loss: The amount of pressure / head required to 'force' liquid through pipe and fittings.



PUMPING EFFICIENCY

Screw or Auger Pump

The Archimedes' screw, Archimedean screw, or screwpump is a machine historically used for transferring water from a low-lying body of water into irrigation ditches. It was one of several inventions and discoveries traditionally attributed to Archimedes in the 3rd century BC.



AUGER PUMP

The machine consists of a screw inside a hollow pipe. Some attribute its invention to Archimedes in the 3rd century BC, while others attribute it to Nebuchadnezzar II in the 7th century BC. A screw can be thought of as an inclined plane (another simple machine) wrapped around a cylinder.

The screw is turned (usually by a windmill or by manual labor). As the bottom end of the tube turns, it scoops up a volume of water. This amount of water will slide up in the spiral tube as the shaft is turned, until it finally pours out from the top of the tube and feeds the irrigation system.

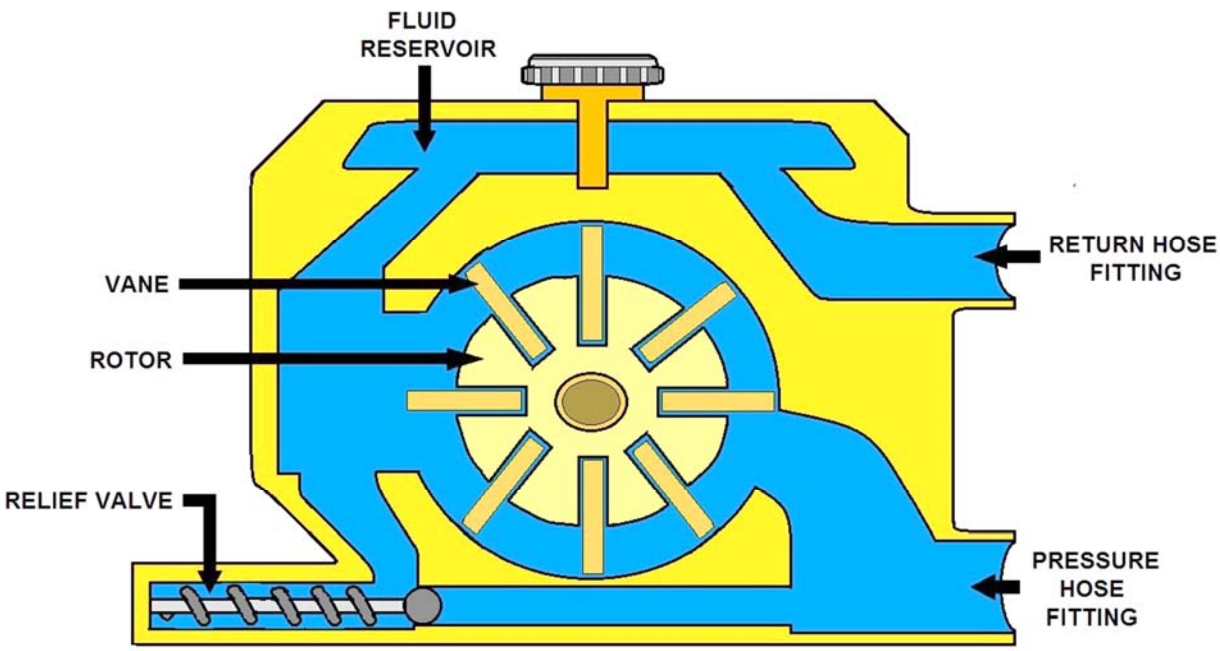
The contact surface between the screw and the pipe does not need to be perfectly water-tight because of the relatively large amount of water being scooped at each turn with respect to the angular speed of the screw. Also, water leaking from the top section of the screw leaks into the previous one and so on, so a sort of equilibrium is achieved while using the machine, thus preventing a decrease in efficiency.

The "screw" does not necessarily need to turn inside the casing, but can be allowed to turn with it in one piece. A screw could be sealed with pitch or some other adhesive to its casing, or, cast as a single piece in bronze, as some researchers have postulated as being the devices used to irrigate Nebuchadnezzar II's Hanging Gardens of Babylon. Depictions of Greek and Roman water screws show the screws being powered by a human treading on the outer casing to turn the entire apparatus as one piece, which would require that the casing be rigidly attached to the screw.

In this type of pump, a large screw provides the mechanical action to move the liquid from the suction side to the discharge side of the pump. Here are some typical characteristics of screw pumps:

- Most screw pumps rotate in the 30 to 60 rpm range, although some screw pumps are faster.
- The slope of the screw is normally either 30° or 38°.

The maximum lift for the larger diameter pumps is about 30 feet. The smaller diameter pumps have lower lift capabilities.



FLEX VANE PUMP

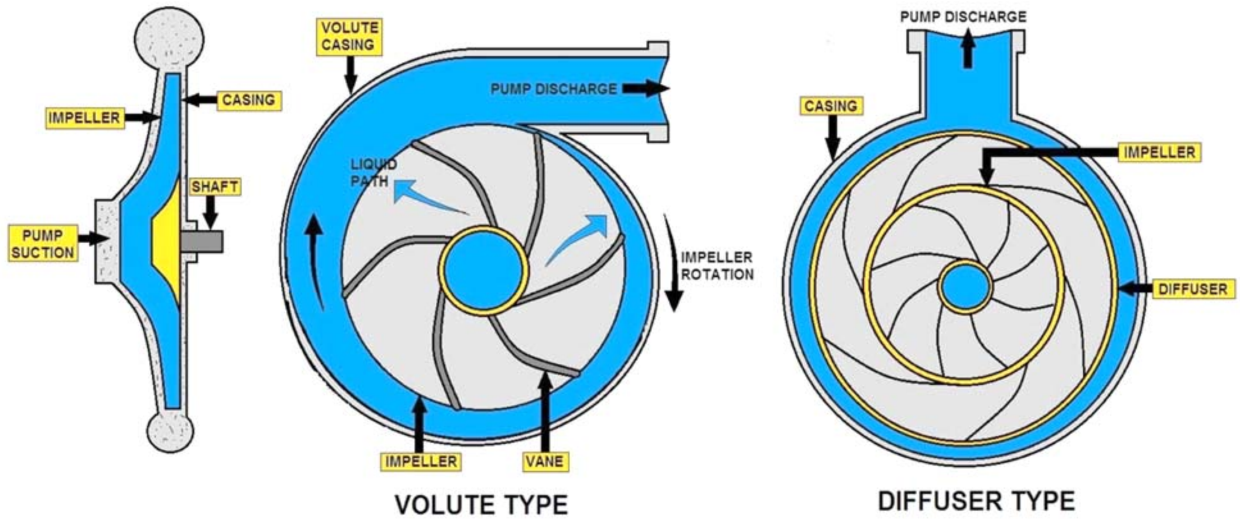
Centrifugal Pump

By definition, a centrifugal pump is a machine. More specifically, it is a machine that imparts energy to a fluid. This energy infusion can cause a liquid to flow, rise to a higher level, or both.

The centrifugal pump is an extremely simple machine. It is a member of a family known as rotary machines and consists of two basic parts: 1) the rotary element or impeller and 2) the stationary element or casing (volute). The figure at the bottom of the page is a cross section of a centrifugal pump and shows the two basic parts.

In operation, a centrifugal pump "slings" liquid out of the impeller via centrifugal force. One fact that must always be remembered: A pump does not create pressure, it only provides flow. Pressure is just an indication of the amount of resistance to flow.

Centrifugal pumps may be classified in several ways. For example, they may be either SINGLE STAGE or MULTI-STAGE. A single-stage pump has only one impeller. A multi-stage pump has two or more impellers housed together in one casing.



TYPES OF CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

As a rule, each impeller acts separately, discharging to the suction of the next stage impeller. This arrangement is called series staging. Centrifugal pumps are also classified as HORIZONTAL or VERTICAL, depending upon the position of the pump shaft.

The impellers used on centrifugal pumps may be classified as SINGLE SUCTION or DOUBLE SUCTION. The single-suction impeller allows liquid to enter the eye from one side only. The double-suction impeller allows liquid to enter the eye from two directions.

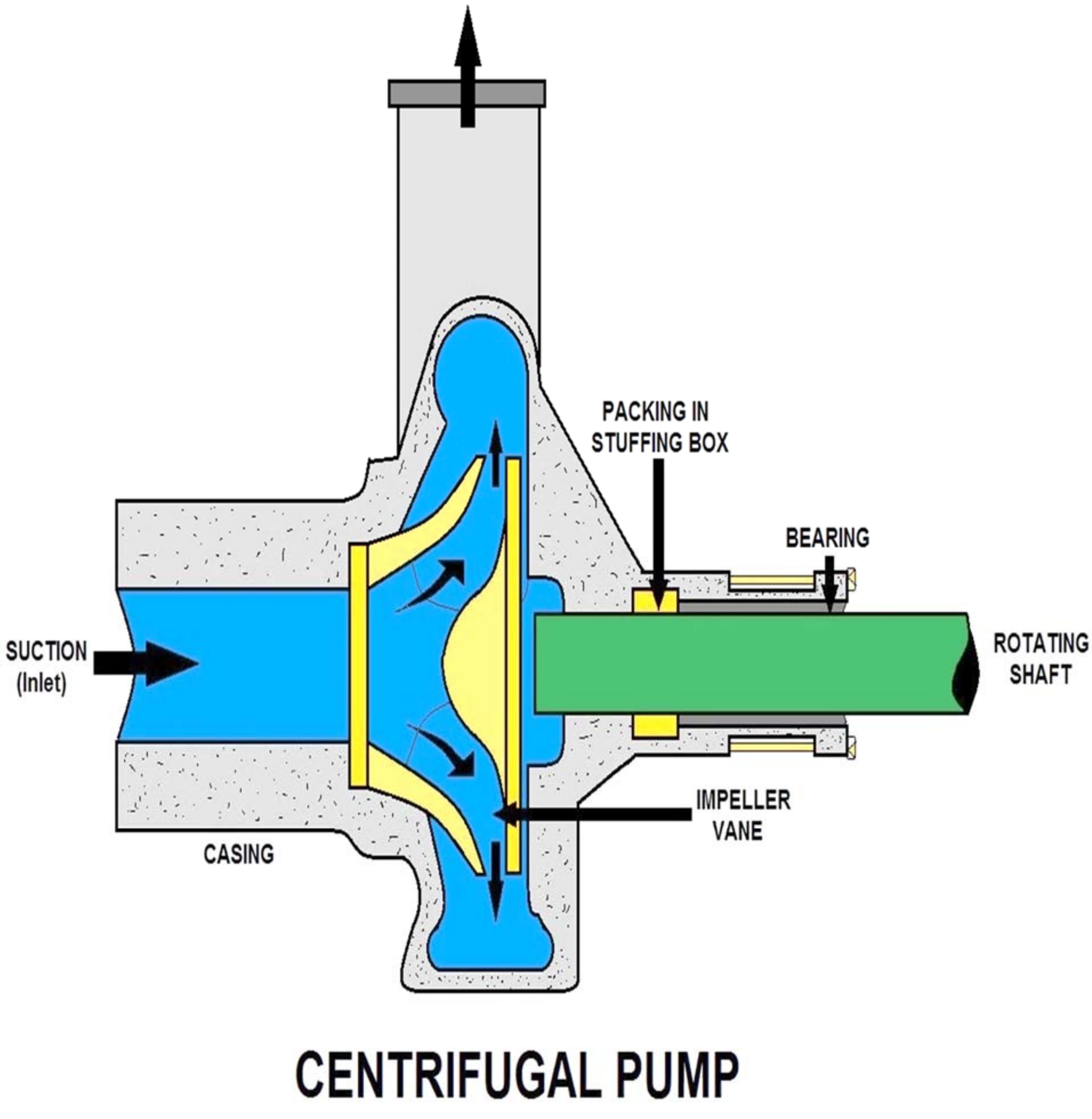
Impellers are also classified as CLOSED or OPEN. Closed impellers have side walls that extend from the eye to the outer edge of the vane tips. Open impellers do not have these side walls. Some small pumps with single-suction impellers have only a casing wearing ring and no impeller ring. In this type of pump, the casing wearing ring is fitted into the end plate.

Recirculation lines are installed on some centrifugal pumps to prevent the pumps from overheating and becoming vapor bound, in case the discharge is entirely shut off or the flow of fluid is stopped for extended periods.

Seal piping is installed to cool the shaft and the packing, to lubricate the packing, and to seal the rotating joint between the shaft and the packing against air leakage. A lantern ring spacer is inserted between the rings of the packing in the stuffing box. Seal piping leads the liquid from the discharge side of the pump to the annular space formed by the lantern ring. The web of the ring is perforated so that the water can flow in either direction along the shaft (between the shaft and the packing).

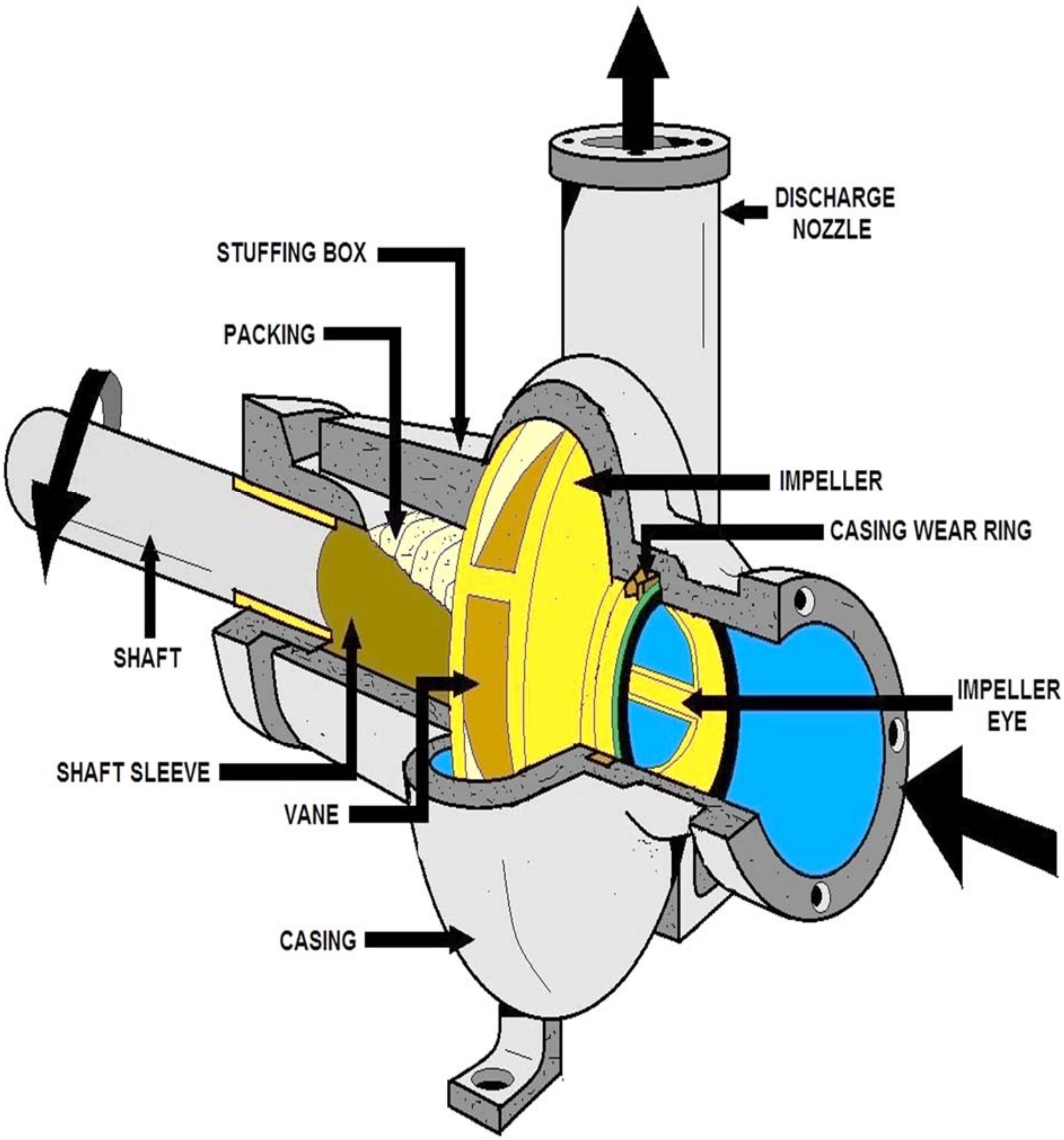
Water flinger rings are fitted on the shaft between the packing gland and the pump bearing housing. These flingers prevent water in the stuffing box from flowing along the shaft and entering the bearing housing.

We will look at the components of the centrifugal pump.

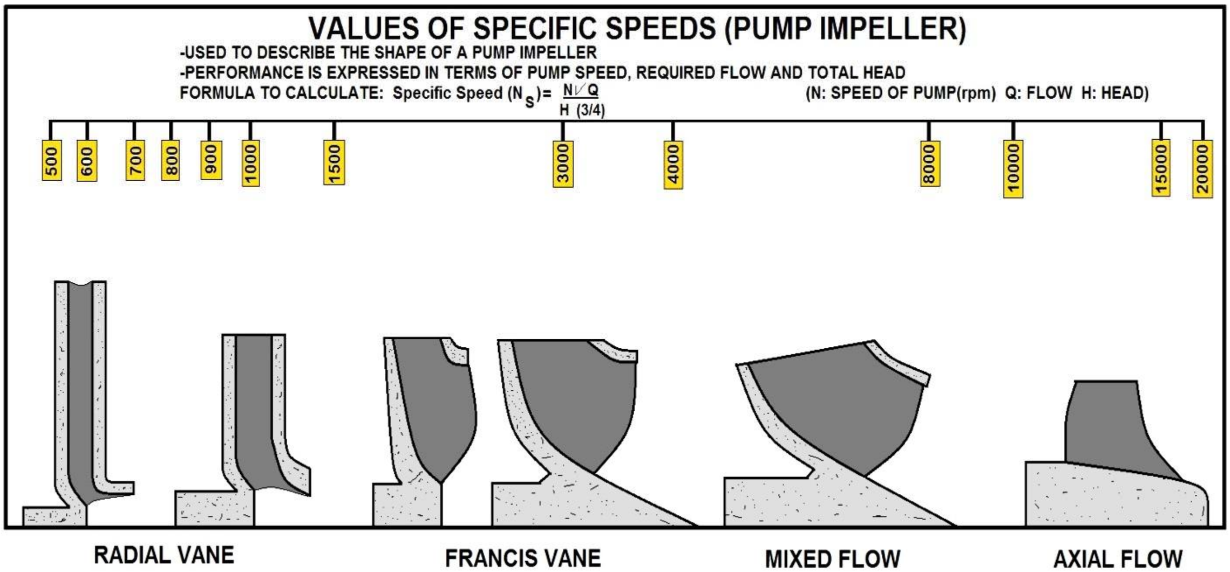


CENTRIFUGAL PUMP

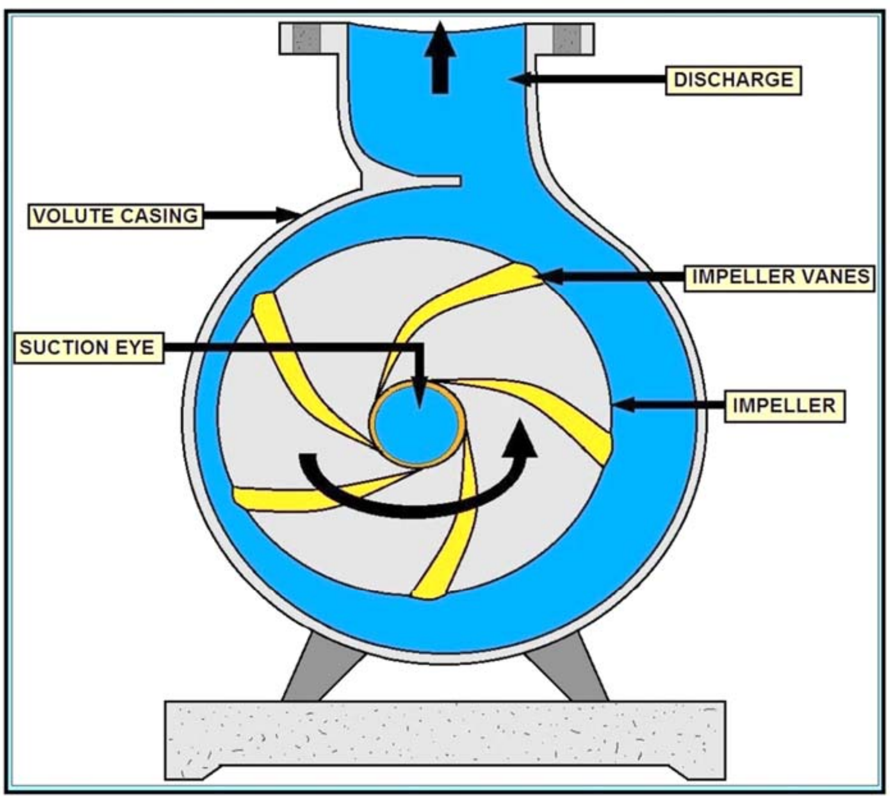
As the impeller rotates, it sucks the liquid into the center of the pump and throws it out under pressure through the outlet. The casing that houses the impeller is referred to as the volute, the impeller fits on the shaft inside. The volute has an inlet and outlet that carries the water as shown below.



CENTRIFUGAL PUMP PARTS



SPECIFIC SPEED



- LIQUID FORCED INTO IMPELLER
- VANES PASS KINETIC ENERGY TO LIQUID BEING PUMPED: LIQUID IS ROTATED AND LEAVES THE IMPELLER
- VOLUTE CASING CONVERTS THE KINETIC ENERGY INTO PRESSURE ENERGY

HOW A CENTRIFUGAL PUMP WORKS

NPSH - Net Positive Suction Head

If you accept that a pump creates a partial vacuum and atmospheric pressure forces water into the suction of the pump, then you will find NPSH a simple concept.

NPSH (a) is the Net Positive Suction Head Available, which is calculated as follows:

NPSH (a) = p + s - v - f

Where:
'p'= atmospheric pressure,
's'= static suction (If liquid is below pump, it is shown as a negative value)
'v'= liquid vapor pressure
'f'= friction loss

NPSH (a) must exceed NPSH(r) to allow pump operation without cavitation. (It is advisable to allow approximately 1 meter difference for most installations.) The other important fact to remember is that water will boil at much less than 100 deg C^{O} if the pressure acting on it is less than its vapor pressure, i.e. water at 95 deg C is just hot water at sea level, but at 1500m above sea level it is boiling water and vapor.

The vapor pressure of water at 95 deg C is 84.53 kPa, there was enough atmospheric pressure at sea level to contain the vapor, but once the atmospheric pressure dropped at the higher elevation, the vapor was able to escape. This is why vapor pressure is always considered in NPSH calculations when temperatures exceed 30 to 40 deg C.

NPSH(r) is the Net Positive Suction Head Required by the pump, which is read from the pump performance curve. (Think of NPSH(r) as friction loss caused by the entry to the pump suction.)

Affinity Laws

The Centrifugal Pump is a very capable and flexible machine. Because of this it is unnecessary to design a separate pump for each job. The performance of a centrifugal pump can be varied by changing the impeller diameter or its rotational speed. Either change produces approximately the same results. Reducing impeller diameter is probably the most common change and is usually the most economical. The speed can be altered by changing pulley diameters or by changing the speed of the driver. In some cases both speed and impeller diameter are changed to obtain the desired results.

When the driven speed or impeller diameter of a centrifugal pump changes, operation of the pump changes in accordance with three fundamental laws. These laws are known as the "Laws of Affinity". They state that:
1) Capacity varies directly as the change in speed
2) Head varies as the square of the change in speed
3) Brake horsepower varies as the cube of the change in speed
If, for example, the pump speed were doubled:
1) Capacity will double
2) Head will increase by a factor of 4 (2 to the second power)
3) Brake horsepower will increase by a factor of 8 (2 to the third power)
These principles apply regardless of the direction (up or down) of the speed or change in diameter.

Consider the following example. A pump operating at 1750 RPM, delivers 210 GPM at 75' TDH, and requires 5.2 brake horsepower. What will happen if the speed is increased to 2000 RPM? First we find the speed ratio.

Speed Ratio = 2000/1750 = 1.14
From the laws of Affinity:
1) Capacity varies directly or:
1.14 X 210 GPM = 240 GPM
2) Head varies as the square or:

1.14 X 1.14 X 75 = 97.5' TDH
3) BHP varies as the cube or:

1.14 X 1.14 X 1.14 X 5.2 = 7.72 BHP
Theoretically the efficiency is the same for both conditions. By calculating several points a new curve can be drawn.

Whether it be a speed change or change in impeller diameter, the Laws of Affinity give results that are approximate. The discrepancy between the calculated values and the actual values obtained in test are due to hydraulic efficiency changes that result from the modification. The Laws of Affinity give reasonably close results when the changes are not more than 50% of the original speed or 15% of the original diameter.

Suction conditions are some of the most important factors affecting centrifugal pump operation. If they are ignored during the design or installation stages of an application, they will probably come back to haunt you.

Suction Lift

A pump cannot pull or "suck" a liquid up its suction pipe because liquids do not exhibit tensile strength. Therefore, they cannot transmit tension or be pulled. When a pump creates a suction, it is simply reducing local pressure by creating a partial vacuum. Atmospheric or some other external pressure acting on the surface of the liquid pushes the liquid up the suction pipe into the pump.

Atmospheric pressure at sea level is called absolute pressure (PSIA) because it is a measurement using absolute zero (a perfect vacuum) as a base. If pressure is measured using atmospheric pressure as a base it is called gauge pressure (PSIG or simply PSI).

Atmospheric pressure, as measured at sea level, is 14.7 PSIA. In feet of head it is:
Head = PSI X 2.31 / Specific Gravity

For Water it is:
Head = 14.7 X 2.31 / 1.0 = 34 Ft

Thus, 34 feet is the theoretical maximum suction lift for a pump pumping cold water at sea level. No pump can attain a suction lift of 34 ft; however, well designed ones can reach 25 ft quite easily.

You will note, from the equation above, that specific gravity can have a major effect on suction lift. For example, the theoretical maximum lift for brine (Specific Gravity = 1.2) at sea level is 28 ft.. The realistic maximum is around 20ft. Remember to always factor in specific gravity if the liquid being pumped is anything but clear, cold (68 degrees F) water.

In addition to pump design and suction piping, there are two physical properties of the liquid being pumped that affect suction lift.

1) Maximum suction lift is dependent upon the pressure applied to the surface of the liquid at the suction source. Maximum suction lift decreases as pressure decreases.

2) 2) Maximum suction lift is dependent upon the vapor pressure of the liquid being pumped. The vapor pressure of a liquid is the pressure necessary to keep the liquid from vaporizing (boiling) at a given temperature. Vapor pressure increases as liquid temperature increases. Maximum suction lift decreases as vapor pressure rises.

It follows then, that the maximum suction lift of a centrifugal pump varies inversely with altitude. Conversely, maximum suction lift will increase as the external pressure on its source increases (for example: a closed pressure vessel).

Cavitation - Two Main Causes:

A. NPSH (r) EXCEEDS NPSH (a)
Due to low pressure the water vaporizes (boils), and higher pressure implodes into the vapor bubbles as they pass through the pump, causing reduced performance and potentially major damage.
B. Suction or discharge recirculation. The pump is designed for a certain flow range, if there is not enough or too much flow going through the pump, the resulting turbulence and vortexes can reduce performance and damage the pump.

Affinity Laws - Centrifugal Pumps

If the speed or impeller diameter of a pump changes, we can calculate the resulting performance change using:

Affinity laws
a. The flow changes proportionally to speed
i.e.: double the speed / double the flow
b. The pressure changes by the square of the difference
i.e.: double the speed / multiply the pressure by 4
c. The power changes by the cube of the difference
i.e.: double the speed / multiply the power by 8

Notes:
1. These laws apply to operating points at the same efficiency.
2. Variations in impeller diameter greater than 10% are hard to predict due to the change in relationship between the impeller and the casing. For rough calculations you can adjust a duty point or performance curve to suit a different speed. NPSH (r) is affected by speed / impeller diameter change = **DANGER!**

Pump Casing

There are many variations of centrifugal pumps. The most common type is an end suction pump. Another type of pump used is the split case. There are many variations of split case, such as; two-stage, single suction, and double suction. Most of these pumps are horizontal.

There are variations of vertical centrifugal pumps. The line shaft turbine is really a multistage centrifugal pump.

Impeller

In most centrifugal pumps, the impeller looks like a number of cupped vanes on blades mounted on a disc or shaft. Notice in the picture below how the vanes of the impeller force the water into the outlet of the pipe.

The shape of the vanes of the impeller is important. As the water is being thrown out of the pump, this means you can run centrifugal pumps with the discharged valve closed for a **SHORT** period of time. Remember the motor sends energy along the shaft, and if the water is in the volute too long it will heat up and create steam. Not good!

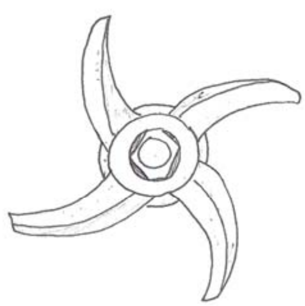
Impellers are designed in various ways. We will look at:

- Closed impellers
- Semi-open impellers
- Opened impellers, and
- Recessed impellers

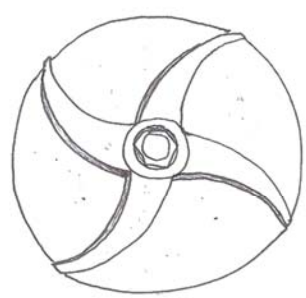
The impellers all cause a flow from the eye of the impeller to the outside of the impeller. These impellers cause what is called radial flow, and they can be referred to as radial flow impellers.

The critical distance of the impeller and how it is installed in the casing will determine if it is high volume / low pressure or the type of liquid that could be pumped.

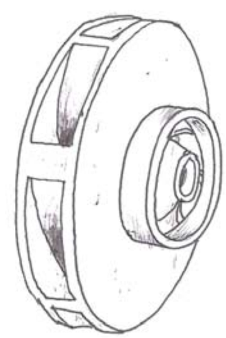
Axial flow impellers look like a propeller and create a flow that is parallel to the shaft.



OPEN



SEMI-OPEN

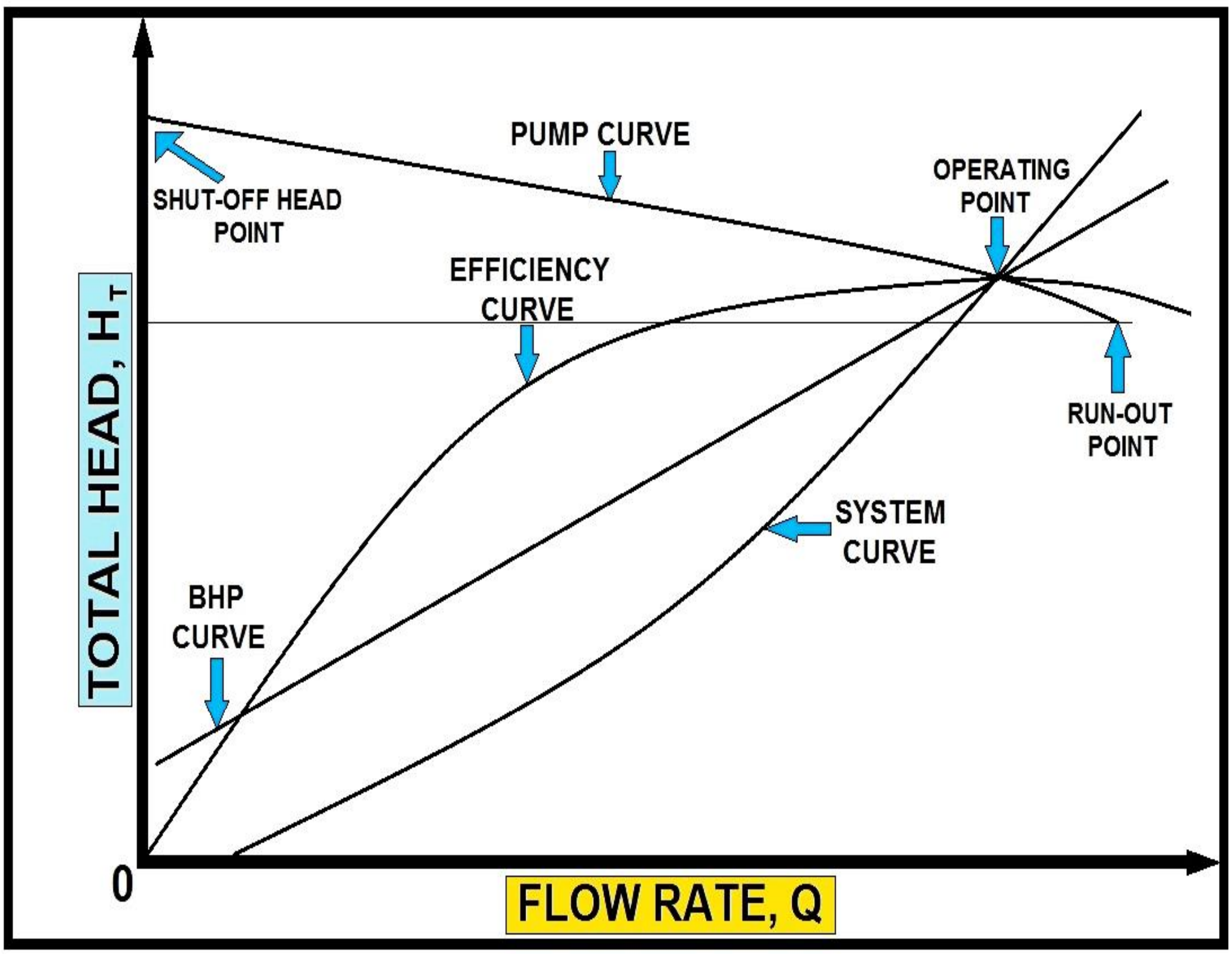


CLOSED

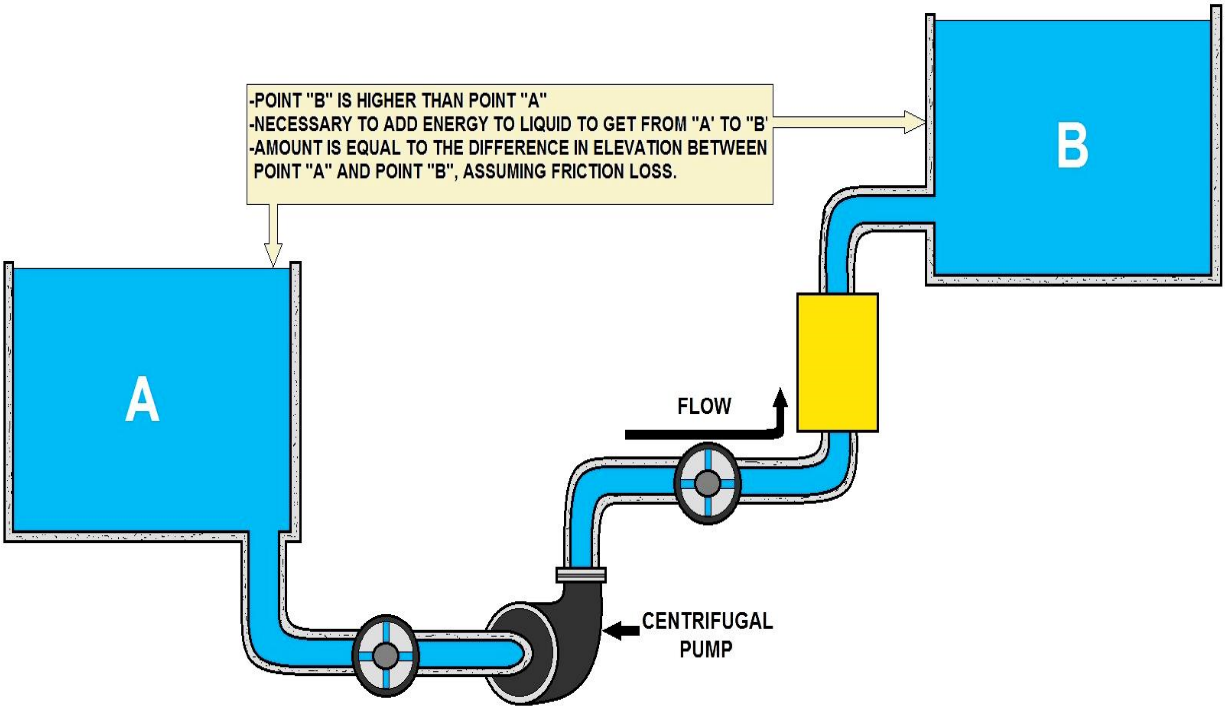
Pump Performance and Curves

Let's looks at the big picture. Before you make that purchase of the pump and motor you need to know the basics such as:

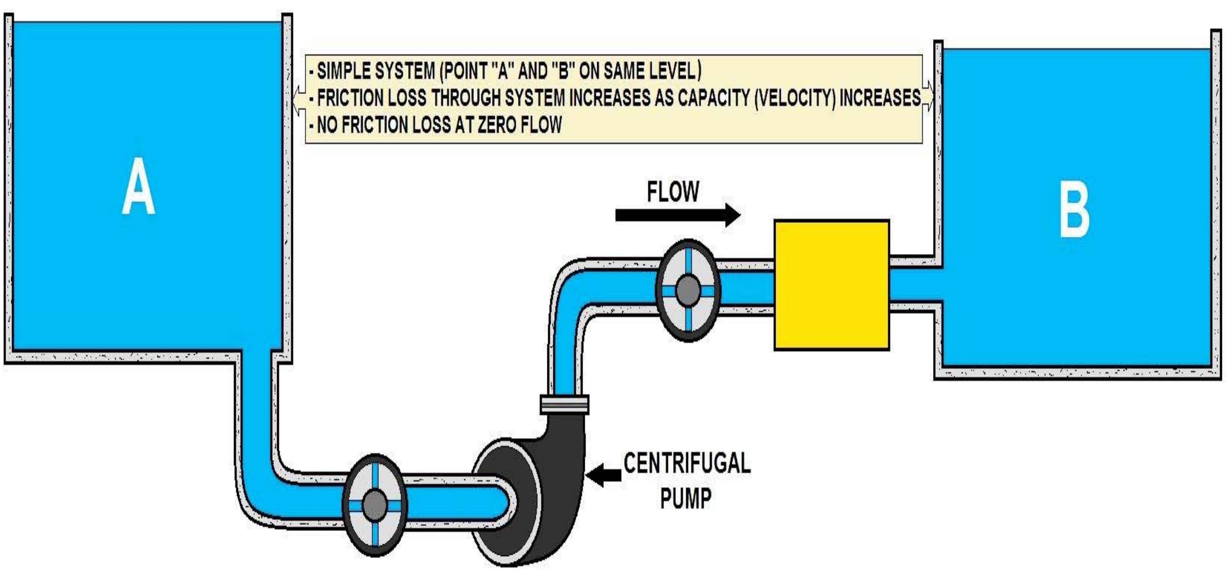
- Total dynamic head, the travel distance
- Capacity, how much water you need to provide
- Efficiency, help determine the impeller size
- HP, how many squirrels you need
- RPM, how fast the squirrels run



PUMP PERFORMANCE CURVE (CENTRIFUGAL PUMP)



CENTRIFUGAL PUMP CURVE CHARACTERISITICS



CENTRIFUGAL PUMP CURVE CHARACTERISITICS

Motor and Pump Calculations

The centrifugal pump pumps the difference between the suction and the discharge heads. There are three kinds of discharge head:

- **Static head.** The height we are pumping to, or the height to the discharge piping outlet that is filling the tank from the top. Note: that if you are filling the tank from the bottom, the static head will be constantly changing.
- **Pressure head.** If we are pumping to a pressurized vessel (like a boiler) we must convert the pressure units (psi. or Kg.) to head units (feet or meters).
- **System or dynamic head.** Caused by friction in the pipes, fittings, and system components. We get this number by making the calculations from published charts.

Suction head is measured the same way.

- If the liquid level is above the pump center line, that level is a positive suction head. If the pump is lifting a liquid level from below its center line, it is a negative suction head.
- If the pump is pumping liquid from a pressurized vessel, you must convert this pressure to a positive suction head. A vacuum in the tank would be converted to a negative suction head.
- Friction in the pipes, fittings, and associated hardware is a negative suction head.
- Negative suction heads are added to the pump discharge head, positive suctions heads are subtracted from the pump discharge head.

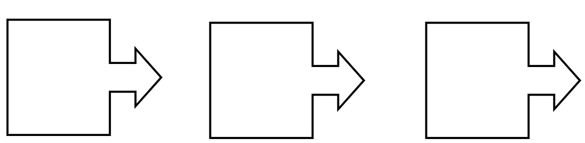
Total Dynamic Head (TDH) is the total height that a fluid is to be pumped, taking into account friction losses in the pipe.

TDH = Static Lift + Static Height + Friction Loss

where:
Static Lift is the height the water will rise before arriving at the pump (also known as the 'suction head').

Static Height is the maximum height reached by the pipe after the pump (also known as the 'discharge head').

Friction Loss is the head equivalent to the energy losses due to viscose drag of fluid flowing in the pipe (both on the suction and discharge sides of the pump). It is calculated via a formula or a chart, taking into account the pipe diameter and roughness and the fluid flow rate, density, and viscosity.



Motor hp **Brake hp** **Water hp**

Horsepower

Work involves the operation of force over a specific distance. The rate of doing work is called power.

The rate in which a horse could work was determined to be about 550 ft-lbs/sec or 33,000 ft-lbs/min.

1 hp = 33,000 ft-lbs/min

Motor Horsepower (mhp)

1 hp = 746 watts or .746 Kilowatts

MHP refers to the horsepower supplied in the form of electrical current. The efficiency of most motors range from 80-95%. (Manufactures will list efficiency %)

Brake Horsepower (bhp)

$$\text{Brake hp} = \frac{\text{Water hp}}{\text{Pump Efficiency}}$$

BHP refers to the horsepower supplied to the pump from the motor. As the power moves through the pump, additional horsepower is lost, resulting from slippage and friction of the shaft and other factors.

Water Horsepower

$$\text{Water hp} = \frac{\text{(flow gpm)(total hd)}}{3960}$$

Water horsepower refers to the actual horse power available to pump the water.

Horsepower and Specific Gravity

The specific gravity of a liquid is an indication of its density or weight compared to water. The difference is specific gravity, include it when calculating ft-lbs/min pumping requirements.

$$\frac{\text{(ft) (lbs/min) (sp.gr.)}}{\text{33,000 ft-lbs/min/hp}} = \text{whp}$$

MHP and Kilowatt requirements

1 hp = 0.746 kW or $\frac{\text{(hp) (746 watts/hp)}}{\text{1000 watts/kW}}$

Well Calculations

1. Well drawdown

Drawdown ft = Pumping water level, ft - Static water level, ft

2. Well yield

$$\text{Well yield, gpm} = \frac{\text{Flow, gallons}}{\text{Duration of test, min}}$$

3. Specific yield

$$\text{Specific yield, gpm/ft} = \frac{\text{Well yield, gpm}}{\text{Drawdown, ft}}$$

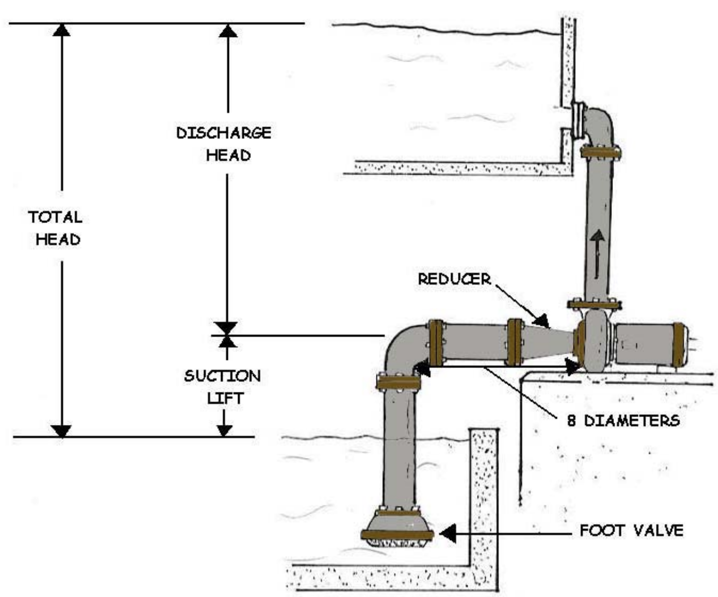
4. Deep well turbine pump calculations.

Discharge head, ft = (pressure measured) (2.31 ft/psi)

Field head, ft = pumping water + discharge head, ft

Bowl head, ft = field head + column friction

1 psi = 2.31 feet of head
1 foot of head = .433 psi



Example 1

A centrifugal pump is located at an elevation of 722 ft. This pump is used to move water from reservoir **A** to reservoir **B**. The water level in reservoir **A** is 742 ft and the water level in reservoir **B** is 927 ft. Based on these conditions answer the following questions:

1. **If the pump is not running and pressure gauges are installed on the suction and discharge lines, what pressures would the gauges read?**

   Suction side:

   Discharge side:

2. **How can you tell if this is a suction head condition?**

3. **Calculate the following head measurements:**

SSH:

SDH:

TSH:

4. **Convert the pressure gauge readings to feet:**

6 psi:

48 psi:

110 psi:

5. **Calculate the following head in feet to psi:**

20 ft:

205 ft:

185 ft:

Motor, Coupling and Bearing Section

We will now refer to the motor, coupling, and bearings. The power source of the pump is usually an electric motor. The motor is connected by a coupling to the pump shaft. The purpose of the bearings is to hold the shaft firmly in place, yet allow it to rotate. The bearing house supports the bearings and provides a reservoir for the lubricant. An impeller is connected to the shaft. The pump assembly can be a vertical or horizontal set-up; the components for both are basically the same.

Motors
The purpose of this discussion on pump motors is to identify and describe the main types of motors, starters, enclosures, and motor controls, as well as to provide you with some basic maintenance and troubleshooting information. Although pumps could be driven by diesel or gasoline engines, pumps driven by electric motors are commonly used in our industry.

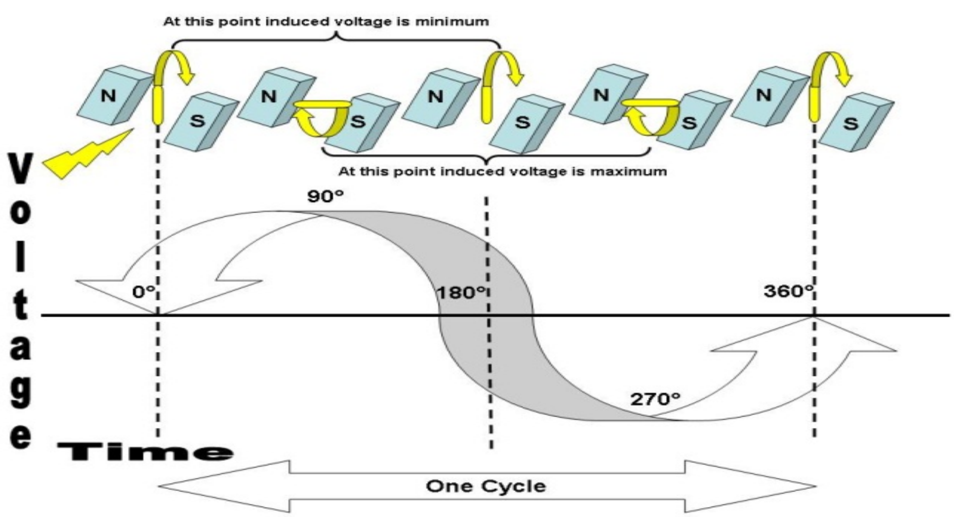
There are two general categories of electric motors:

- D-C motors, or direct current
- A-C motors, or alternating current

You can expect most motors at facilities to be A-C type.

D-C Motors
The important characteristic of the D-C motor is that its speed will vary with the amount of current used. There are many different kinds of D-C motors, depending on how they are wound and their speed/torque characteristics.

A-C Motors
There are a number of different types of alternating current motors such as Synchronous, Induction, wound rotor, and squirrel cage. The synchronous type of A-C motor requires complex control equipment, since they use a combination of A-C and D-C. This also means that the synchronous type of A-C motor is used in large horsepower sizes, usually above 250 HP. The induction type motor uses only alternating current. The squirrel cage motor provides a relatively constant speed and the wound rotor type could be used as a variable speed motor.



Define the Following Terms:

Voltage:

EMF:

Power:

Current:

Resistance:

Conductor:

Phase:

Single Phase:

Three Phase:

Hertz:

Motor Starters

All electric motors, except very small ones such as chemical feed pumps, are equipped with starters, either full voltage or reduced voltage. This is because motors draw a much higher current when they are starting and gaining speed. The purpose of the reduced voltage starter is to prevent the load from coming on until the amperage is low enough. How do you think keeping the discharge valve closed on a centrifugal pump could reduce the start-up load?

Motor Enclosures

Depending on the application, motors may need special protection. Some motors are referred to as open motors. They allow air to pass through to remove heat generated when current passes through the windings. Other motors use specific enclosures for special environments or safety protection.

Can you think of any locations within your facility that requires special enclosures?

Two Types of Totally Enclosed Motors Commonly Used are:

- **TENV**, or totally enclosed non-ventilated motor
- **TEFC**, or totally enclosed fan cooled motor

Totally enclosed motors include dust-proof, water-proof and explosion-proof motors. An explosion proof enclosure must be provided on any motor where dangerous gases might accumulate.

Motor Controls
All pump motors are provided with some method of control, typically a combination of manual and automatic. Manual pump controls can be located at the central control panel at the pump or at the suction or discharge points of the liquid being pumped.

There are a number of ways in which automatic control of a pump motor can be regulated:

- Pressure and vacuum sensors
- Preset time intervals
- Flow sensors
- Level sensors

Two typical level sensors are the float sensor and the bubble regulator. The float sensor is pear-shaped and hangs in the wet well.

As the height increases, the float tilts, and the mercury in the glass tube flows toward the end of the tube that has two wires attached to it. When the mercury covers the wires, it closes the circuit.

A low pressure air supply is allowed to escape from a bubbler pipe in the wet well. The back-pressure on the air supply will vary with the liquid level over the pipe. Sensitive air pressure switches will detect this change and use this information to control pump operation.

Motor Maintenance
Motors should be kept clean, free of moisture, and lubricated properly. Dirt, dust, and grime will plug the ventilating spaces and can actually form an insulating layer over the metal surface of the motor.

What condition would occur if the ventilation becomes blocked?

Moisture

Moisture harms the insulation on the windings to the point where they may no longer provide the required insulation for the voltage applied to the motor. In addition, moisture on windings tend to absorb acid and alkali fumes, causing damage to both insulation and metals. To reduce problems caused by moisture, the most suitable motor enclosure for the existing environment will normally be used. It is recommended to run stand by motors to dry up any condensation which accumulates in the motor.

Motor Lubrication

Friction will cause wear in all moving parts, and lubrication is needed to reduce this friction. It is very important that all your manufacturer's recommended lubrication procedures are strictly followed. You have to be careful not to add too much grease or oil, as this could cause more friction and generate heat.

To grease the motor bearings, this is the usual approach:

1. Remove the protective plugs and caps from the grease inlet and relief holes.
2. Pump grease in until fresh starts coming from the relief hole.

If fresh grease does not come out of the relief hole, this could mean that the grease has been pumped into the motor windings. The motor must then be taken apart and cleaned by a qualified service representative.

To change the oil in an oil lubricated motor, this is the usual approach:

1. Remove all plugs and let the oil drain.
2. Check for metal shearing.
3. Replace the oil drain.
4. Add new oil until it is up to the oil level plug.
5. Replace the oil level and filter plug.

Never mix oils, since the additives of different oils when combined can cause breakdown of the oil.

Finger is shown pointing to a Lantern Ring. This old school method of sealing a pump is still out there. Notice the packing on both sides of the ring. The packing joints need to be staggered and the purpose of this device is to allow air to the Stuffing Box.

Slip Ring

The slip ring or wound rotor motor is an induction machine where the rotor comprises a set of coils that are terminated in slip rings to which external impedances can be connected. The stator is the same as is used with a standard squirrel cage motor. By changing the impedance connected to the rotor circuit, the speed/current and speed/torque curves can be altered.

The slip ring motor is used primarily to start a high inertia load or a load that requires a very high starting torque across the full speed range. By correctly selecting the resistors used in the secondary resistance or slip ring starter, the motor is able to produce maximum torque at a relatively low current from zero speed to full speed. A secondary use of the slip ring motor is to provide a means of speed control.

Because the torque curve of the motor is effectively modified by the resistance connected to the rotor circuit, the speed of the motor can be altered. Increasing the value of resistance on the rotor circuit will move the speed of maximum torque down. If the resistance connected to the rotor is increased beyond the point where the maximum torque occurs at zero speed, the torque will be further reduced.

When used with a load that has a torque curve that increases with speed, the motor will operate at the speed where the torque developed by the motor is equal to the load torque. Reducing the load will cause the motor to speed up, and increasing the load will cause the motor to slow down until the load and motor torque are equal. Operated in this manner, the slip losses are dissipated in the secondary resistors and can be very significant. The speed regulation is also very poor.

Stepper Motors

Closely related in design to three-phase AC synchronous motors are stepper motors, where an internal rotor containing permanent magnets or a large iron core with salient poles is controlled by a set of external magnets that are switched electronically. A stepper motor may also be thought of as a cross between a DC electric motor and a solenoid. As each coil is energized in turn, the rotor aligns itself with the magnetic field produced by the energized field winding. Unlike a synchronous motor, in its application, the motor may not rotate continuously; instead, it "steps" from one position to the next as field windings are energized and de-energized in sequence. Depending on the sequence, the rotor may turn forwards or backwards.

Simple stepper motor drivers entirely energize or entirely de-energize the field windings, leading the rotor to "cog" to a limited number of positions; more sophisticated drivers can proportionally control the power to the field windings, allowing the rotors to position between the cog points and thereby rotate extremely smoothly.

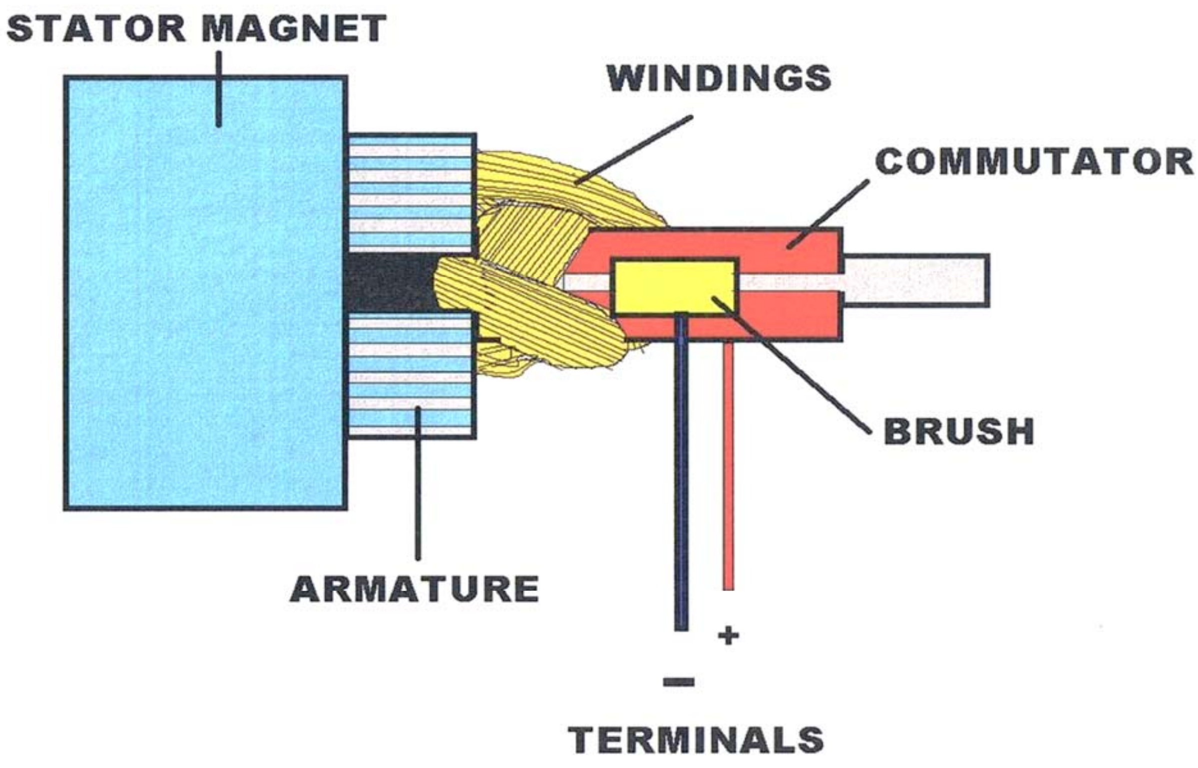
Computer controlled stepper motors are one of the most versatile forms of positioning systems, particularly when part of a digital servo-controlled system.

Stepper motors can be rotated to a specific angle with ease, and hence stepper motors are used in pre-gigabyte era computer disk drives, where the precision they offered was adequate for the correct positioning of the read/write head of a hard disk drive. As drive density increased, the precision limitations of stepper motors made them obsolete for hard drives, thus newer hard disk drives use read/write head control systems based on voice coils.

Linear Motors

A linear motor is essentially an electric motor that has been "unrolled" so that, instead of producing a torque (rotation), it produces a linear force along its length by setting up a traveling electromagnetic field. Linear motors are most commonly induction motors or stepper motors. You can find a linear motor in a maglev (Transrapid) train, where the train "flies" over the ground, and in many roller-coasters where the rapid motion of the motorless railcar is controlled by the rail.

Doubly-fed Electric Motor
Doubly-fed electric motors have two independent multiphase windings that actively participate in the energy conversion process with at least one of the winding sets electronically controlled for variable speed operation. Two is the most active multiphase winding sets possible without duplicating singly-fed or doubly-fed categories in the same package. As a result, doubly-fed electric motors are machines with an effective constant torque speed range that is twice synchronous speed for a given frequency of excitation. This is twice the constant torque speed range as singly-fed electric machines, which have only one active winding set.



BRUSHED DC MOTOR

Coupling Section

The pump coupling serves two main purposes:

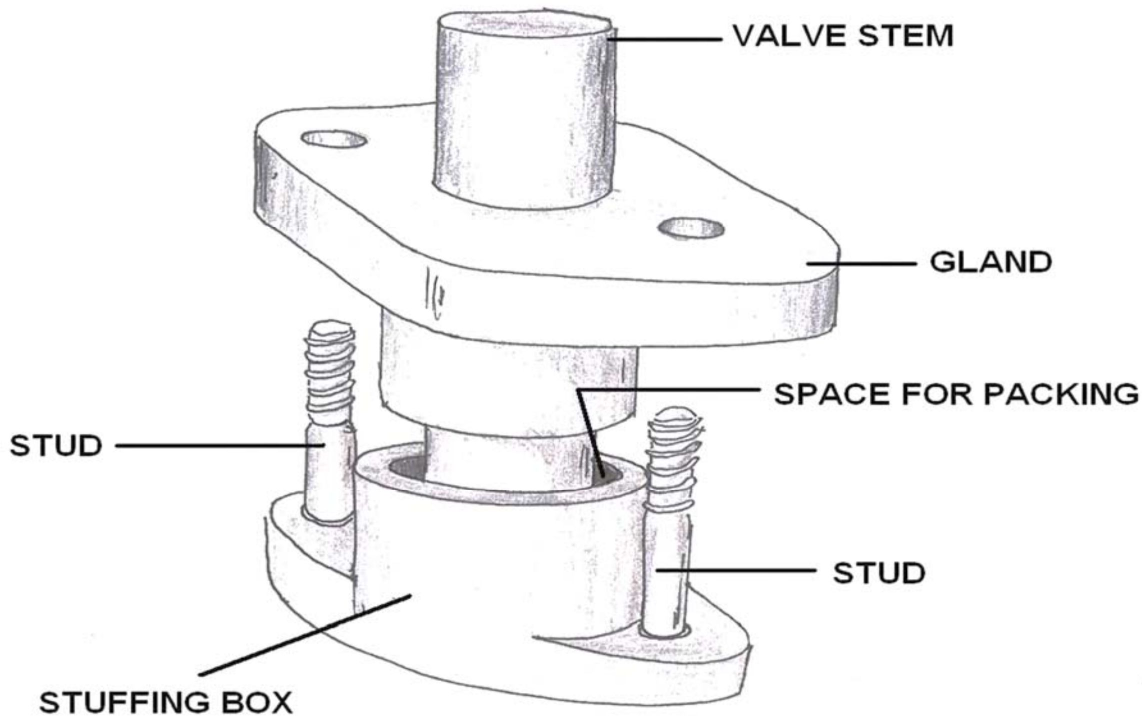
- It couples or joins the two shafts together to transfer the rotation from motor to impeller.
- It compensates for small amounts of misalignment between the pump and the motor.

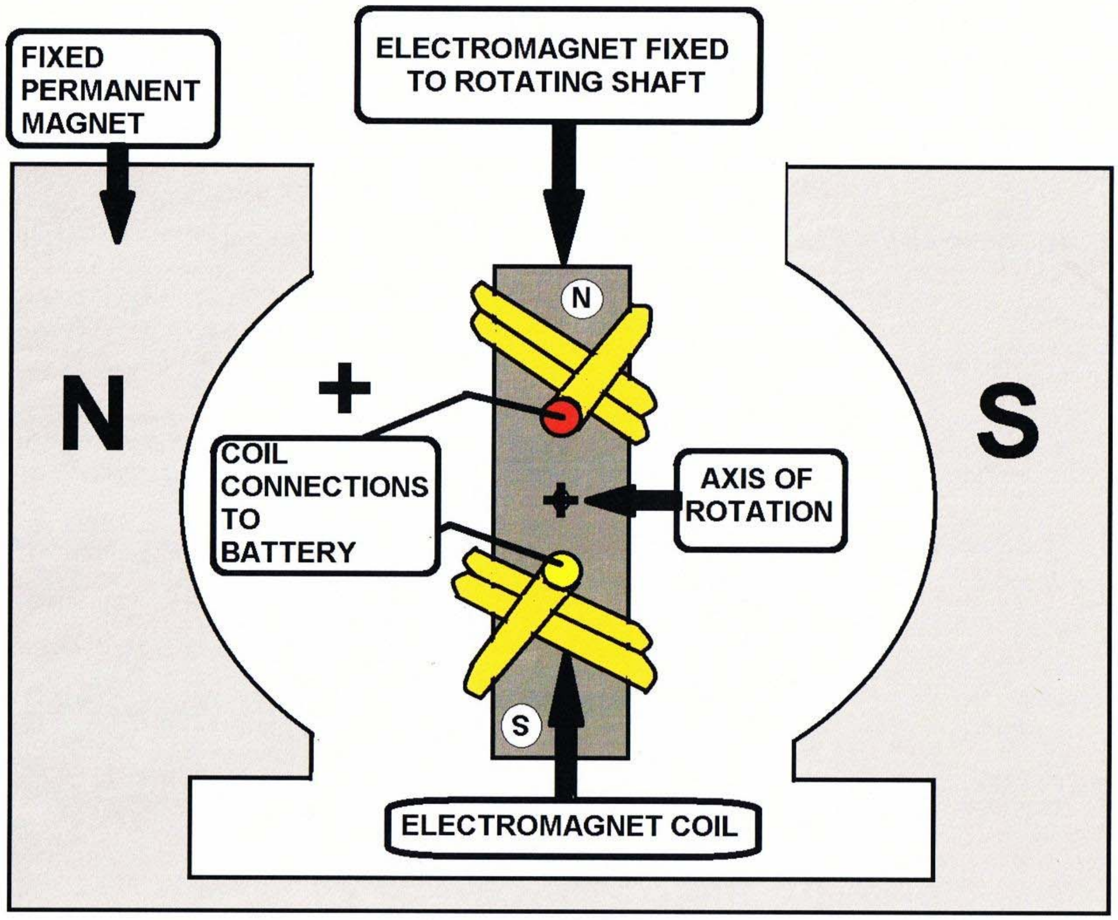
Remember that any coupling is a device in motion. If you have a 4-inch diameter coupling rotating at 1800 rpm, its outer surface is traveling about 20 mph. With that in mind, can you think of safety considerations?

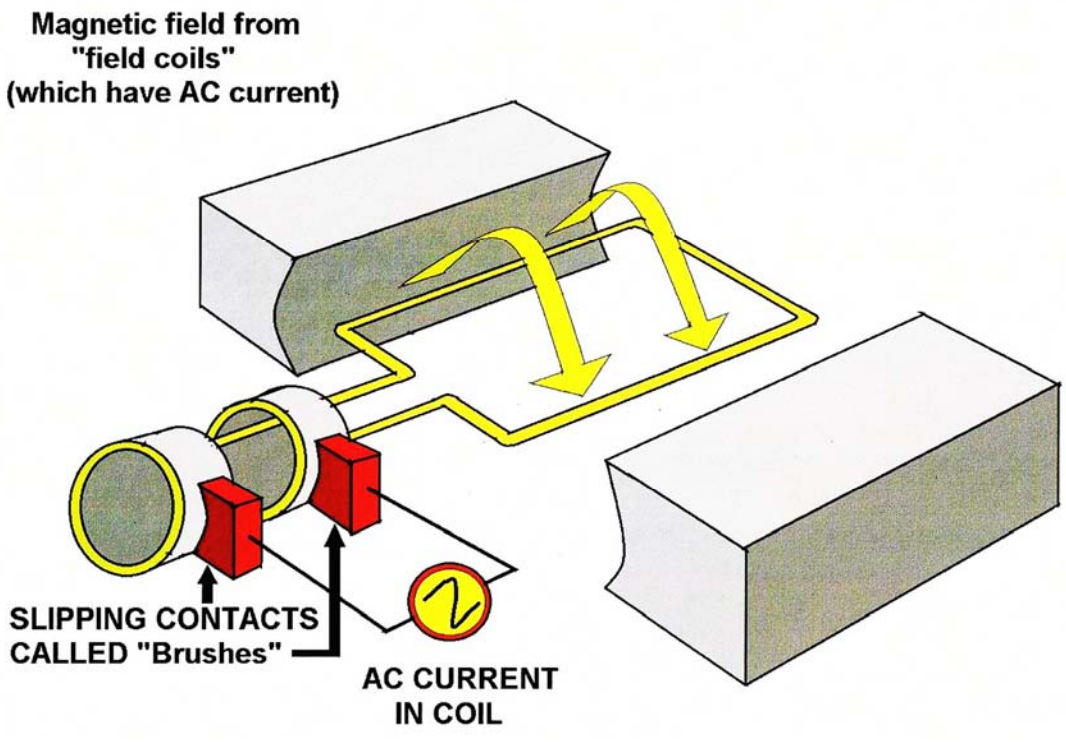
There are three commonly used types of couplings: ***Rigid, Flexible and V-belts.***

Rigid Coupling
Rigid couplings are most commonly used on vertically mounted pumps. The rigid coupling is usually specially keyed or constructed for joining the coupling to the motor shaft and the pump shaft. There are two types of rigid couplings: the flanged coupling, and the split coupling.

Flexible Coupling. The flexible coupling provides the ability to compensate for small shaft misalignments. Shafts should be aligned as close as possible, regardless. The greater the misalignment, the shorter the life of the coupling. Bearing wear and life are also affected by misalignment.



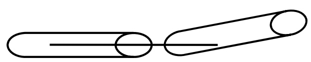

FIXED PERMANENT MAGNET
ELECTROMAGNET FIXED TO ROTATING SHAFT
N
S
N
+
COIL CONNECTIONS TO BATTERY
AXIS OF ROTATION
S
ELECTROMAGNET COIL


Magnetic field from "field coils" (which have AC current)
SLIPPING CONTACTS CALLED "Brushes"
AC CURRENT IN COIL

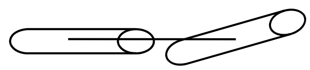
Alignment of Flexible and Rigid Couplings

Both flexible and rigid couplings must be carefully aligned before they are connected. Misalignment will cause excessive heat and vibration, as well as bearing wear. Usually, the noise from the coupling will warn you of shaft misalignment problems.

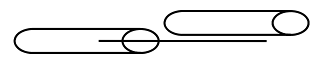
Three types of shaft alignment problems are shown in the pictures below:



ANGULAR MISALIGNMENT



ANGULAR AND PARALLEL



PARALLEL MISALIGNMENT

Different couplings will require different alignment procedures. We will look at the general procedures for aligning shafts.

1. Place the coupling on each shaft.
2. Arrange the units so they appear to be aligned. (Place shims under the legs of one of the units to raise it.)
3. Check the run-out, or difference between the driver and driven unit, by rotating the shafts by hand.
4. Turn both units so that the maximum run-out is on top.

Now you can check the units for both parallel and angular alignment. Many techniques are used, such as: straight edge, needle deflection (dial indicators), calipers, tapered wedges, and Laser alignment.

V-Belt Drive Couplings

V-belt drives connect the pump to the motor. A pulley is mounted on the pump and motor shaft. One or more belts are used to connect the two pulleys. Sometimes a separately mounted third pulley is used. This idler pulley is located off centerline between the two pulleys, just enough to allow tensioning of the belts by moving the idler pulley. An advantage of driving a pump with belts is that various speed ratios can be achieved between the motor and the pump.

Shaft Bearings

There are three types of bearings commonly used: ball bearings, roller bearings, and sleeve bearings. Regardless of the particular type of bearings used within a system--whether it is ball bearings, a sleeve bearing, or a roller bearing--the bearings are designed to carry the loads imposed on the shaft.

Bearings must be lubricated. Without proper lubrication, bearings will overheat and seize.

Proper lubrication means using the correct type and the correct amount of lubrication. Similar to motor bearings, shaft bearings can be lubricated either by oil or by grease.

Packing Seals

Should packing have leakage?

How can we prevent the water from leaking along the shaft?
A special seal is used to prevent liquid leaking out along the shaft. There are two types of seals commonly used:

- **Packing seal**
- **Mechanical seal**

Leakage
During pump operation, a certain amount of leakage around the shafts and casings normally takes place.

This leakage must be controlled for two reasons: (1) to prevent excessive fluid loss from the pump, and (2) to prevent air from entering the area where the pump suction pressure is below atmospheric pressure.

The amount of leakage that can occur without limiting pump efficiency determines the type of shaft sealing selected. Shaft sealing systems are found in every pump. They can vary from simple packing to complicated sealing systems.

Packing is the most common and oldest method of sealing. Leakage is checked by the compression of packing rings that causes the rings to deform and seal around the pump shaft and casing. The packing is lubricated by liquid moving through a lantern ring in the center of the packing. The sealing slows down the rate of leakage. It does not stop it completely, since a certain amount of leakage is necessary during operation. Mechanical seals are rapidly replacing conventional packing on centrifugal pumps.

Some of the reasons for the use of mechanical seals are as follows:
1. Leaking causes bearing failure by contaminating the oil with water. This is a major problem in engine-mounted water pumps.

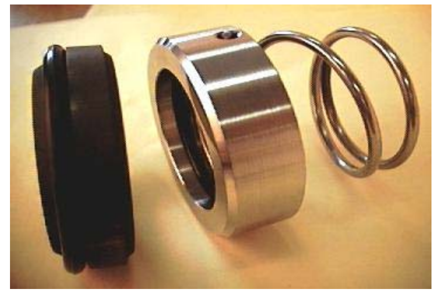
2. Properly installed mechanical seals eliminate leakoff on idle (vertical) pumps. This design prevents the leak (water) from bypassing the water flinger and entering the lower bearings.

Leakoff causes two types of seal leakage:
a. Water contamination of the engine lubrication oil.
b. Loss of treated fresh water that causes scale buildup in the cooling system.

Centrifugal pumps are versatile and have many uses. This type of pump is commonly used to pump all types of water and wastewater flows, including thin sludge.

Lantern Rings
Lantern rings are used to supply clean water along the shaft. This helps to prevent grit and air from reaching the area. Another component is the slinger ring. The slinger ring is an important part of the pump because it is used to protect the bearings. Other materials can be used to prevent this burier.

Mechanical Seals
Mechanical seals are commonly used to reduce leakage around the pump shaft. There are many types of mechanical seals. The photograph below illustrates the basic components of a mechanical seal. Similar to the packing seal, clean water is fed at a pressure greater than that of the liquid being pumped. There is little or no leakage through the mechanical seal. The wearing surface must be kept extremely clean. Even fingerprints on the wearing surface can introduce enough dirt to cause problems.



What care should be taken when storing mechanical seals?

Mechanical Seals

Wear Rings
Not all pumps have wear rings. However, when they are included, they are usually replaceable. Wear rings can be located on the suctions side and head side of the volute. Wear rings could be made of the same metal but of different alloys. The wear ring on the head side is usually a harder alloy.

It's called a ***"WEAR RING"*** and what would be the purpose?

Mechanical Seals

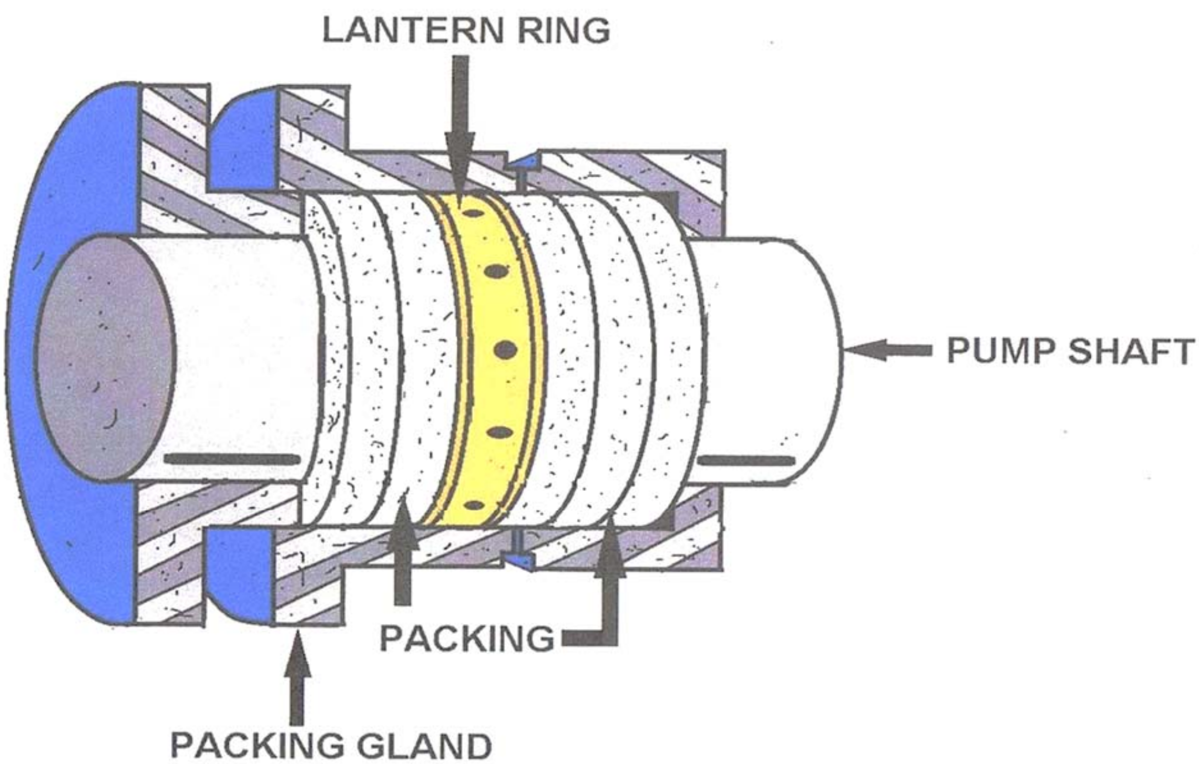
Mechanical seals are rapidly replacing conventional packing as the means of controlling leakage on rotary and positive-displacement pumps. Mechanical seals eliminate the problem of excessive stuffing box leakage, which causes failure of pump and motor bearings and motor windings.

Mechanical seals are ideal for pumps that operate in closed systems (such as fuel service and air-conditioning, chilled-water, and various cooling systems). They not only conserve the fluid being pumped, but also improve system operation.

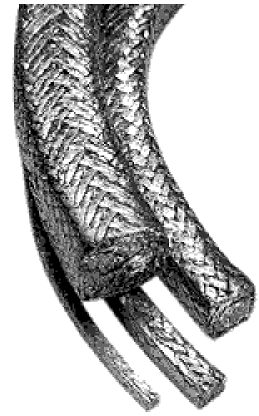
The type of material used for the seal faces will depend upon the service of the pump. Most water service pumps use a carbon material for one of the seal faces and ceramic (tungsten carbide) for the other. When the seals wear out, they are simply replaced.

You should replace a mechanical seal whenever the seal is removed from the shaft for any reason, or whenever leakage causes undesirable effects on equipment or surrounding spaces. Do not touch a new seal on the sealing face because body acid and grease or dirt will cause the seal to pit prematurely and leak.

Mechanical shaft seals are positioned on the shaft by stub or step sleeves. Mechanical shaft seals must not be positioned by setscrews. Shaft sleeves are chamfered (beveled) on the outboard ends for easy mechanical seal mounting. Mechanical shaft seals serve to ensure that position liquid pressure is supplied to the seal faces under all conditions of operation. They also ensure adequate circulation of the liquid at the seal faces to minimize the deposit of foreign matter on the seal parts.



Maintenance of Centrifugal Pumps



When properly installed, maintained and operated, centrifugal pumps are usually trouble-free. Some of the most common corrective maintenance actions that you may be required to perform are discussed in the following sections.

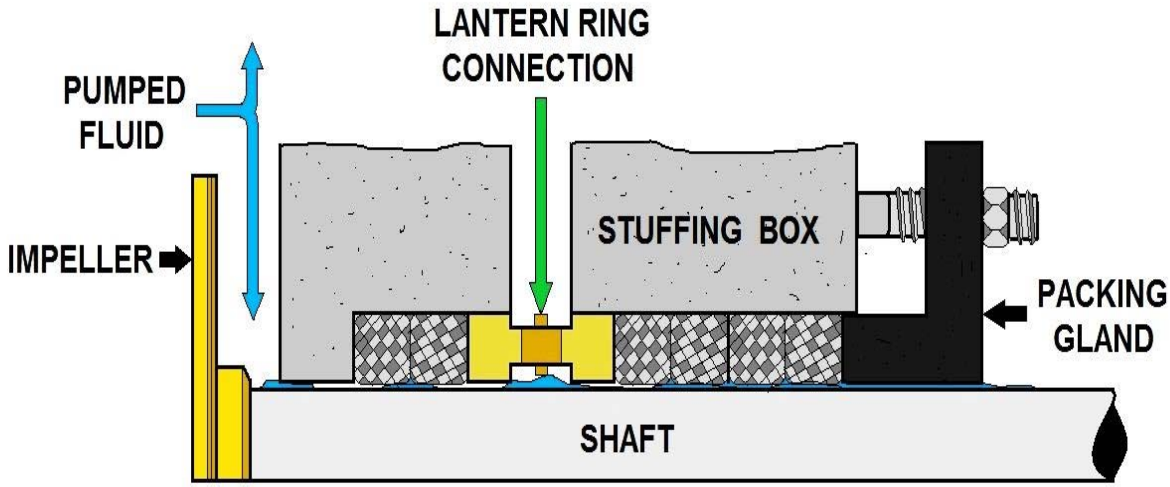
Repacking - Lubrication of the pump packing is extremely important. The quickest way to wear out the packing is to forget to open the water piping to the seals or stuffing boxes. If the packing is allowed to dry out, it will score the shaft. When operating a centrifugal pump, be sure there is always a slight trickle of water coming out of the stuffing box or seal. How often the packing in a centrifugal pump should be renewed depends on several factors, such as the type of pump, condition of the shaft sleeve, and hours in use.

To ensure the longest possible service from pump packing, make certain the shaft or sleeve is smooth when the packing is removed from a gland. Rapid wear of the packing will be caused by roughness of the shaft sleeve (or shaft where no sleeve is installed). If the shaft is rough, it should be sent to the machine shop for a finishing cut to smooth the surface. If it is very rough, or has deep ridges in it, it will have to be renewed. It is absolutely necessary to use the correct packing. When replacing packing, be sure the packing fits uniformly around the stuffing box. If you have to flatten the packing with a hammer to make it fit, **YOU ARE NOT USING THE RIGHT SIZE.** Pack the box loosely, and set up the packing gland lightly. Allow a liberal leak-off for stuffing boxes that operate above atmospheric pressure.

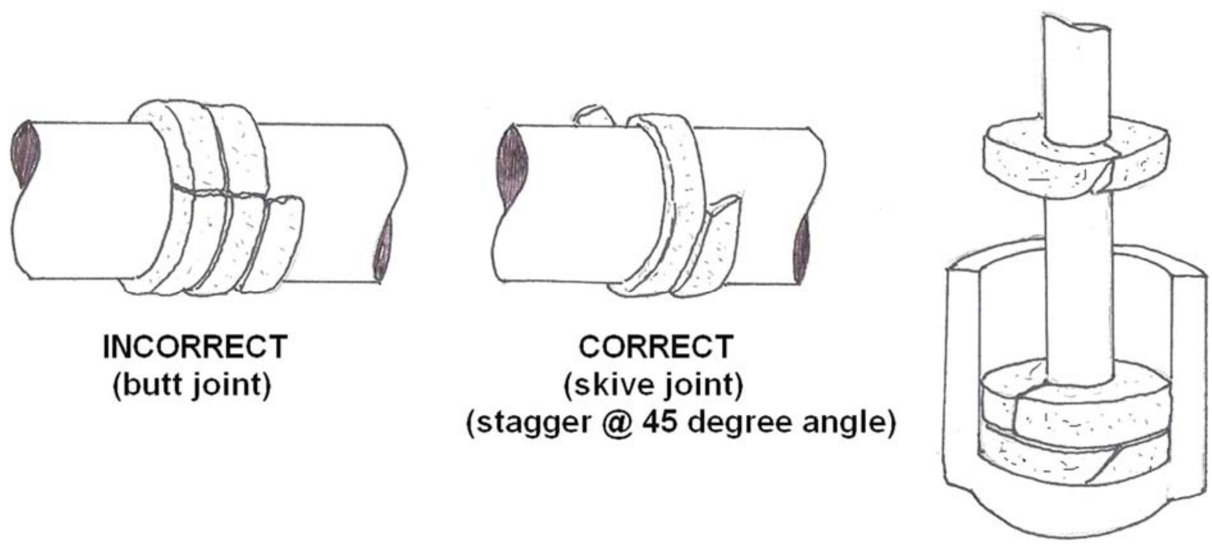
Next, start the pump. Let it operate for about 30 minutes before you adjust the packing gland for the desired amount of leak-off. This gives the packing time to run-in and swell. You may then begin to adjust the packing gland. Tighten the adjusting nuts one flat at a time. Wait about 30 minutes between adjustments. Be sure to tighten the same amount on both adjusting nuts. If you pull up the packing gland unevenly (or cocked), it will cause the packing to overheat and score the shaft sleeves. Once you have the desired leak-off, check it regularly to make certain that sufficient flow is maintained.

Mechanical Seals

Mechanical seals are rapidly replacing conventional packing as the means of controlling leakage on rotary and positive-displacement pumps. Mechanical seals eliminate the problem of excessive stuffing box leakage, which causes failure of pump and motor bearings and motor windings. Mechanical seals are ideal for pumps that operate in closed systems (such as fuel service and air-conditioning, chilled-water, and various cooling systems). They not only conserve the fluid being pumped, but also improve system operation. The type of material used for the seal faces will depend upon the service of the pump. Most water service pumps use a carbon material for one of the seal faces and ceramic (tungsten carbide) for the other. When the seals wear out, they are simply replaced. You should replace a mechanical seal whenever the seal is removed from the shaft for any reason, or whenever leakage causes undesirable effects on equipment or surrounding spaces. Do not touch a new seal on the sealing face because body acid and grease or dirt will cause the seal to pit prematurely and leak.



LANTERN RING BETWEEN PACKING FOR COOL / CLEAN FLUID BARRIER



.

Pumping and Lift Station Chapter Highlights

Pump Stations
Proper operation, maintenance, and repair of pump stations typically requires special electrical, hydraulic, and mechanical knowledge. Pump station failure may damage equipment, the environment, or endanger public health. Variation in equipment types, pump station configuration, and geographical factors determine pump station design and O&M requirements.

The reviewer should verify that the O&M manual contains procedures in writing for the following:

- Are pumps rotated manually or automatically? If manually, how frequently?

- Are wet well operating levels set to limit pump starts and stops?

- Is there a procedure for manipulating pump operations (manually or automatically) during wet weather to increase in-line storage of wet weather flows?

- Is flow monitoring provided? How is the collected data used?

- Does the pump station have capacity-related overflows? Maintenance related overflows? Is overflow monitoring provided?

- Is there a history of power outages? Is there a source of emergency power? If the emergency power source is a generator, is it regularly exercised under load?

Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Activities
Proactive O&M initiatives are critical to effective prevention of SSOs. Nationwide, improved O&M activities such as implementation of hot spot cleaning programs, routine pipeline cleaning, and video inspections to find structural deficiencies have dramatically reduced the frequency and severity of SSOs in many cities. Your system should conduct various types of proactive O&M activities throughout their service area.

Suggested goals of your system's wastewater collection system maintenance programs should be as follows:

- Maintain wastewater collection system flow capacity.
- Reduce the frequency and duration of overflow events.
- Optimize the use of resources.
- Optimize the life cycle of system components.
- Maintain accurate maintenance records.

Your section of the CMOM Plan shall include descriptions of maintenance facilities, mapping and data management, routine O&M activities, system repairs, and training.

Maintenance Program

Every collection system owner or operator should have a well-planned, systematic, and comprehensive maintenance program. The goals of a maintenance program should include:

- Prevention of overflows.
- Maximization of service and system reliability at minimum cost.
- Assurance of infrastructure sustainability (i.e., ensure all components reach their service life).

There should then be procedures which describe the maintenance approach for various systems. In addition, there should be detailed instructions for the maintenance and repair of individual facilities. These instructions should provide a level of detail such that any qualified collection system personnel or repair technician could perform the repair or maintenance activity.

Maintenance may be planned or unplanned. There are essentially two types of planned maintenance; predictive and preventive. Predictive maintenance is a method that tries to look for early warning signs of equipment failure such that emergency maintenance is avoided.

Preventive maintenance consists of scheduled maintenance activities performed on a regular basis. There are two types of unplanned maintenance, corrective and emergency. Corrective maintenance consists of scheduled repairs to problems identified under planned or predictive maintenance.

Emergency maintenance is activities (typically repairs) performed in response to a serious equipment or line failure where action must be taken immediately. The goal of every owner or operator should be to reduce corrective and emergency maintenance through the use of planned and predictive maintenance. The reviewer should evaluate the progress of the owner or operator in achieving that goal.

The goals of the reviewer in assessment of the maintenance program are:

- Identify SSOs caused by inadequate maintenance.
- Determine maintenance trends (i.e., frequent emergency maintenance performed as opposed to predictive maintenance.)
- Identify sustainability issues (i.e., inadequate maintenance to allow system components to reach service life and/or many components nearing or at service life.)

Pump Station Inspection

Pump stations should be subject to inspection and preventive maintenance on a regular schedule. The frequency of inspection may vary from once a week, for a reliable pump station equipped with a telemetry system, to continuous staffing at a large pump station.

The basic inspection should include verification that alarm systems are operating properly, wet well levels are properly set, all indicator lights and voltage readings are within acceptable limits, suction and discharge pressures are within normal limits, that the pumps are running without excessive heat or vibration and have the required amount of lubrication, and that the emergency generator is ready if needed.

Less frequent inspections may include such items as vibration analysis and internal inspection of pump components.

Pump Station Checklist
Observations and tasks performed should be recorded in a log book or on a checklist at the pump station. It is important to note how this data returns to the central maintenance data management system. At the time of the inspection, collection system personnel may perform minor repairs if necessary. If non-emergency repairs are required that are beyond the staff's training, it will probably be necessary to prepare a work order which routes a request though the proper channels to initiate the repair action. During the review the reviewer should check a random number of work orders to see how they move through the system. The reviewer should note whether repairs are being carried out promptly. In pump stations, for critical equipment (pumps, drives, power equipment, and control equipment), there should not be much backlog, unless the staff is waiting for parts.

During the review, the reviewer should also make on-site observations of representative pump stations. The reviewer should plan at least half an hour to look at the simplest two-pump prefabricated station, and one to two hours to look at a larger station. In large systems, drive time between stations may be significant. The reviewer should strive to see a range of pump station sizes and types (i.e., the largest, smallest, most remote, and any that review of work orders has indicated might be problematic).

Overall, the pump station should be clean, in good structural condition, and exhibit minimal odor. The reviewer should note the settings of the pumps (i.e., which are operating, which are on stand-by, and which are not operating and why). The operating pumps should be observed for noise, heat, and excessive vibration. The settings in the wet well should be noted (as indicated on the controls, as direct observation of the wet well by the reviewer is not recommended) and the presence of any flashing alarm lights.

Atmospheric Hazards
The reviewer is reminded of the atmospheric hazards in a pump station (make sure ventilation has been running prior to arrival) and to avoid confined space entry. If the pump station has an overflow its outlet should be observed, if possible, for signs of any recent overflows such as floatable materials or toilet paper. The reviewer should check the log book and/or checklist kept at the pump station to ensure that records are current and all maintenance activities have been performed. Below is a listing of items that indicate inadequate maintenance:

- Overall poor housekeeping and cleanliness.
- Excessive grease accumulation in wet well.
- Excessive corrosion on railings, ladders, and other metal components.
- Sagging, worn, improperly sized, or inadequate belts.
- Excessive equipment out of service for repair or any equipment for which repair has not been ordered (i.e., a work order issued.)
- Pumps running with excessive heat, vibration, or noise.
- Peeling paint and/or dirty equipment (the care given to equipment's outer surfaces often, but not always, mirrors internal condition.)
- Check valves not closing when pumps shut off.
- Inoperative instrumentation, alarms, and recording equipment.
- "Jury-rigged" repairs (i.e., "temporary" repairs using inappropriate materials.)
- Leakage from pumps, piping, or valves (some types of pump seals are designed to "leak" seal water.)
- Inadequate lighting or ineffective/inoperative ventilation equipment.

Routine Preventative O&M Activities – Wastewater Lift Stations and Force Mains
Perform Regular Preventative Maintenance
The wastewater collections service technicians should perform regular preventative maintenance on the various components at the lift stations. An outside contractor may also be used to clean each lift station twice a year.

Most wastewater lift station and force main operations are typically remotely monitored and controlled through a telemetry system that sends signals to the system's operation center. In the event of a malfunction, all of the lift stations should have redundant pump and pump monitoring systems, and all should have emergency backup power generation.

System Repairs
Deficiencies in the sewer system requiring repair are noted during cleaning and video inspections or are discovered through investigation of customer complaints. A Supervisor should arrange for all repairs; small repairs are often completed by the system's crews and larger repairs may be completed by a qualified outside contractor.

Deficiencies in lift stations and force mains requiring repair should be noted by the wastewater collections technicians during their routine visits, by alarms or through customer complaints. The Supervisor should make arrangements for all lift station and force main repairs.

Maintenance Budgeting
The cost of a maintenance program is a significant part of the annual operating budget. The collection system owner or operator should track all maintenance costs incurred throughout the year, both by internal staff and contractors, to ensure that the budget is based on representative costs from past years.

Budgets should be developed from past cost records which usually are categorized according to preventive maintenance, corrective maintenance, and projected and actual major repair requirements. Annual costs should be compared to the budget periodically to control maintenance expenditures.

The reviewer should evaluate the maintenance budget, keeping in mind the system's characteristics, such as age. Costs for emergency repairs should be a relatively small percentage of the budget--five to ten percent would not be considered excessive. The establishment of an "emergency reserve" may also be included as part of the maintenance budget. This is especially useful where full replacement is not funded. The budget should also be considered in light of maintenance work order backlog.

Planned and Unplanned Maintenance
A planned maintenance program is a systematic approach to performing maintenance activities so that equipment failure is avoided. Planned maintenance is composed of predictive and preventive maintenance. In the end, a good planned maintenance program should reduce material, capital repair, and replacement costs, improve personnel utilization and morale, reduce SSOs, and sustain public confidence.

Examples of predictive maintenance includes monitoring equipment for early warning signs of impending failure, such as excess vibration, heat, dirty oil, and leakage. Assessment and inspection activities can be classified as predictive maintenance.

Vibration and lubrication analyses, thermography, and ultrasonics are among the more common predictive maintenance tools.

Predictive maintenance also takes into account historical information about the system as all systems will deteriorate over time. A predictive maintenance program strives to identify potential problem areas and uncover trends that could affect equipment performance.

Predictive maintenance offers an early warning. It allows collection system personnel to detect early signs of increasing rates of wear and therefore failure, and thus shift a “corrective” task into a “planned” task. To be truly effectively predictive, however, maintenance should not spur personnel into doing the work too soon and wasting useful life and value of the equipment in question.

The reviewer should inquire as to whether tools such as vibration and lubrication analysis, thermography, or ultrasonics are used, and obtain information on the extent of the programs.

The basis of a good predictive maintenance program is recordkeeping. Only with accurate recordkeeping can baseline conditions be established, problem areas identified, and a proactive approach taken to repairs and replacement.

Effective preventive maintenance minimizes system costs and environmental impacts by reducing breakdowns and thus the need for corrective or emergency maintenance; improves reliability by minimizing the time equipment is out of service; increases the useful life of equipment, thus avoiding costly premature replacement; and avoids potential noncompliance situations.

An Effective Preventive Maintenance Program Includes:

- Trained personnel.
- Scheduling based on system specific knowledge.
- Detailed instructions related to the maintenance of various pieces of equipment.
- A system for recordkeeping.
- System knowledge in the form of maps, historical knowledge and records. An effective preventive maintenance program builds on the inspection activities and predictive maintenance described above, and includes a well thought-out schedule for these activities.

The basis of the schedule for mechanical equipment maintenance (i.e., pump station components) should be the manufacturers’ recommended activities and frequencies. This schedule may then be augmented by the knowledge and experience of collection system personnel to reflect the site-specific requirements.

The schedule for sewer line cleaning, inspection, root removal, and repair activities should be based on periodic inspection data. In most systems, uniform frequencies for sewer line cleaning, inspection, and root removal are not necessary and inefficient. In many systems, a relatively small percentage of the pipe generates most of the problems.

Efficient use of inspection data allows the owner or operator to implement a schedule in the most constructive manner. In rare cases it may be appropriate to reduce maintenance frequency for a particular piece of equipment.

Lubrication

Lubrication is probably one of the most important maintenance activities for mechanical systems, such as pumps and motors. Frequencies of lubrication, choice of lubricant and lubrication procedure are all important factors in this activity. These items should closely follow manufacturer instructions, but may be modified to fit site-specific conditions and particular equipment applications. An example of a scheduling code and maintenance schedule for a pump is shown below:

Guide for Evaluating CMOM Programs at Sanitary Sewer Collection Systems

Rotary Pump Maintenance Schedule

Frequency	Maintenance Required
D	Check packing gland assembly
D	Check discharge pressure
S	Inspect and lubricate bearings
A	Flush bearings and replace lubricant

D = Daily A = Annually S = Semiannually

Typically, there is a maintenance card or record for each piece of equipment within the collection system. These records should contain maintenance recommendations, schedule, and instructions on conducting the specific maintenance activity. The records should include documentation regarding any maintenance activities conducted to date and other observations related to that piece of equipment or system. Maintenance records are generally kept where maintenance personnel have easy access to them. The reviewer should examine the full series of periodic work orders (i.e. weekly, monthly, semiannually, and annually) for a selection of system components (e.g., a few pump stations, several line segments).

The reviewer should then compare the recommended maintenance frequency to that which is actually performed. He or she should also look at the backlog of work; not focusing solely on the number of backlogged work orders, but on what that number represents in time. A very large system can have a hundred orders backlogged and only be one week behind. In a computerized system, a listing of all open work orders is usually very simple for collection system personnel to generate. The owner or operator should be able to explain their system for prioritizing work orders.

The reviewer needs to clearly understand the following:

- How the maintenance data management system works
- How work orders are generated and distributed
- How field crews use the work orders
- How data from the field is collected and returned
- How and on whose authority work orders are closed out

The reviewer should check to see if data entry is timely and up to date.

Unplanned Maintenance

Unplanned maintenance is that which takes place in response to equipment breakdowns or emergencies. Unplanned maintenance may be corrective or emergency maintenance. Corrective maintenance could occur as a result of preventive or predictive maintenance activities which identified a problem situation.

A work order should be issued so that the request for corrective maintenance is directed to the proper personnel. An example of non-emergency corrective maintenance could be a broken belt on a belt driven pump. The worn belt was not detected and replaced through preventive maintenance and therefore the pump is out of service until corrective maintenance can be performed. Although the pump station may function with one pump out of service, should another pump fail, the situation may become critical during peak flow periods.

If the information can be easily generated the reviewer should select a sampling of work orders and compare them to the corrective maintenance database to determine if repairs are being made in a timely manner. Reviewers should note the current backlog of corrective maintenance work orders.

A corrective maintenance backlog of two weeks or less would indicate an owner or operator in control of corrective maintenance. The owner or operator should be able to explain corrective maintenance work orders that have not been completed within six months.

Corrective Maintenance

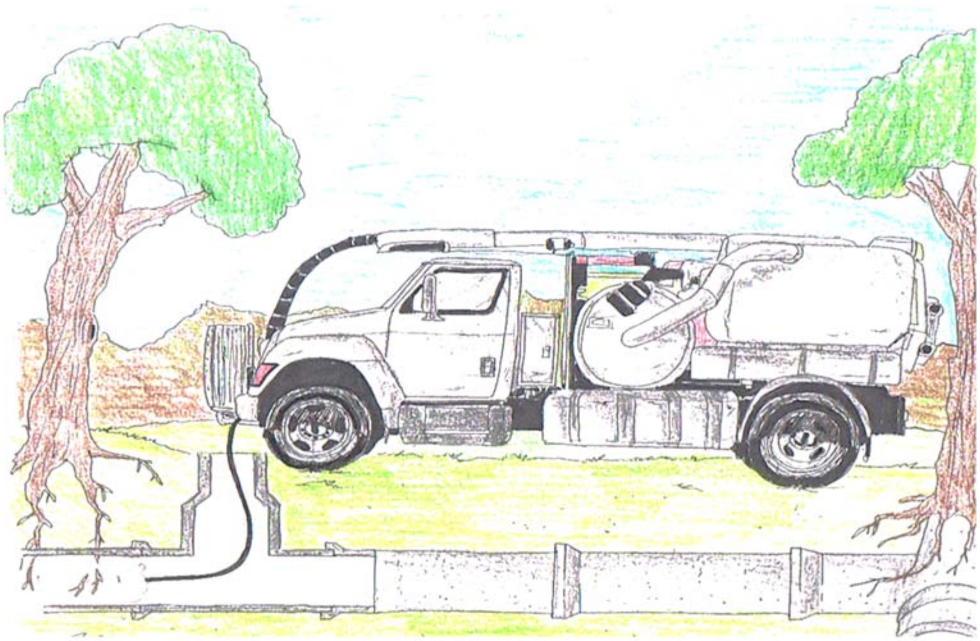
Corrective maintenance takes resources away from predictive and preventive maintenance. When corrective maintenance becomes a predominant activity, personnel may not be able to perform planned maintenance, thus leading to more corrective maintenance and emergency situations. Emergency maintenance occurs when a piece of equipment or system fails, creating a threat to public health, the environment, or associated equipment. This type of maintenance involves repairs on short notice, of malfunctioning equipment or sewers. A broken force main, totally non-functional pump station and street cave-ins are all examples of emergency situations.

Types of Portable Emergency Equipment

- Bypass pumps
- Portable generator
- Air compressor, trailer-mounted
- Manhole lifters and gas testing equipment
- Sewer rodder and/or flushing machine
- Portable lights and hand tools
- Chemical spray units (for insects and rodent control)
- Truck (1-ton) and trailers
- Vacuum truck
- Repair equipment for excavation (backhoe, shoring equipment, concrete mixers, gasoline operated saws, traffic control equipment, etc.)
- Confined space entry gear

Emergency Crews

Emergency crews should be geared to a 24-hour-a-day, year-round operation. Most large systems have staffed 24-hour crews; many small systems have an “on-call” system. The owner or operator should be able to produce written procedures which spell out the type of action to take in a particular type of emergency and the equipment and personnel requirements necessary to carry out the action. The crews should have copies of these procedures and be familiar with them. Equipment must be located in an easily accessible area and be ready to move in a short period of time. Vehicles and equipment must be ready to perform, under extreme climatic conditions if necessary.



The best method of controlling hydrogen sulfide is to eliminate its habitat or growth area by keeping sewers cleaner, this will harbor fewer slime bacteria.

The emergency crew may need materials such as piping, pipe fittings, bedding materials, and concrete. The owner or operator should have supplies on hand to allow for two point (i.e. segment, fitting, or appurtenance) repairs of any part of its system. The reviewer should note the presence of supplies during the review of the yard where equipment and spare parts are maintained and personnel are dispatched.

Hydrogen Sulfide Chapter 5

The corrosive effects of Sulfuric acid are created by Hydrogen Sulfide gas.

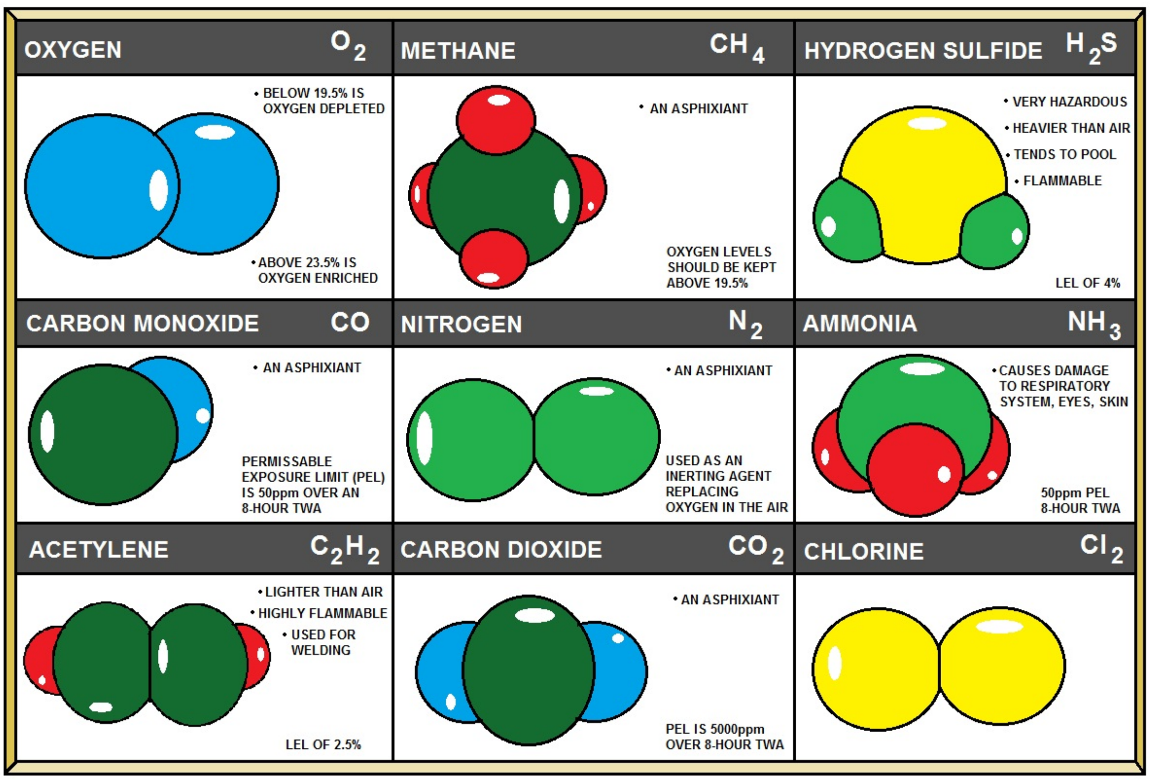
READ THE SAFETY DATA SHEET

WEAR PROPER PPE

HANDLING CHEMICALS

COMMON HAZARDOUS GASES THAT MAY BE PRESENT IN CONFINED SPACE					
SUBSTANCE *	8-HOUR TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE (TWA)	15-MINUTE SHORT-TERM EXPOSURE LIMIT (STEL)	CEILING LIMIT (Never To Be Exceeded)	IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH)	RECOMMENDED ALARM SETTINGS (Low / High)
AMMONIA	25 ppm	35 ppm	—	300 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CARBON MONOXIDE	25 ppm	100 ppm	—	1200 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CHLORINE	0.5 ppm	1 ppm	—	10 ppm	0.25 ppm / 0.5 ppm
HYDROGEN SULFIDE	—	—	10 ppm	100 ppm	5 ppm / 10 ppm
METHANE	1000 ppm	—	—	—	500 ppm / 1000 ppm
NITROGEN DIOXIDE	—	—	1 ppm	20 ppm	0.5 ppm / 1 ppm
SULFUR DIOXIDE	2 ppm	5 ppm	—	100 ppm	1 ppm / 2 ppm
OXYGEN	—	—	—	—	20.5 % of Atmosphere
LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL)	—	—	—	—	5 % LEL

EXAMPLE OF A CHART OF CONFINED SPACE GASES



COMMON GASES THAT CAN BE FOUND IN CONFINED SPACE

Hydrogen Sulfide Gas Introduction

This Chapter provides answers to basic questions about hydrogen sulfide gas. It will explain what hydrogen sulfide gas is, where it is found, how it can affect your health, and what you can do to prevent or reduce exposure to it. Hydrogen sulfide gas is also known as “sewer gas” because it is often produced by the decay of waste material. Hydrogen sulfide gas has a strong odor at low levels. At higher levels, your nose can become overwhelmed by the gas and you cannot smell it. At these higher levels, hydrogen sulfide gas can make you sick and even kill you.

Hydrogen Sulfide Gas
If you wait for a warning, it may be too late
Hydrogen sulfide is a powerful and deadly gas which smells like rotten eggs at low concentrations and has a sweet smell at high concentrations. But workers should not rely on the smell as a warning. At high concentrations H_2S may overcome one's sense of smell. The result could be instant death. Long exposure to low concentrations will also deaden the sense of smell.

What it is
H_2S is explosive - it will ignite and explode when subjected to a spark or an ordinary flame - in any concentration from 4% to 44% of the air. It is also soluble in water and oil, so it may flow for a considerable distance from its origin before escaping above ground or in an entirely unexpected place. Because the vapor (gas) is heavier than air, it may travel for a long way until ignited and then flash back towards the source. Hydrogen sulfide is found in large amounts in the wastewater collection system.

H_2S Sources
H_2S is found widely in the industry and few workers are warned of its dangers or their exposure. It is formed by the decomposition of organic materials, so it is found in sewers and cesspools.

Health Effects of H_2S Acute Exposure
First of all, and most importantly, H_2S can kill you. The extent of acute poisoning danger depends on the concentration of H_2S in the atmosphere. When you breathe in H_2S, it goes directly through your lungs and into your bloodstream. To protect itself, your body "oxidizes" (breaks down) the H_2S as rapidly as possible into a harmless compound. If you breathe in so much H_2S that your body can't oxidize all of it, the H_2S builds up in the blood and you become poisoned. The nervous centers in your brain which control breathing are paralyzed. Your lungs stop working and you asphyxiate--just as though someone had come up and put their hands around your neck and strangled you.

A worker can be overcome by H_2S and lose consciousness in a few seconds. If he is luckily rescued in time and is given artificial respiration within a few minutes, the worker may recover. Either artificial mouth-to-mouth or an oxygen supply system of resuscitation will work if it is done in time, because, with an adequate source of oxygen and no further H_2S intake, the body will quickly break down the H_2S still in the blood.

This is acute poisoning. It can occur with no warning at all, since even the sense of smell may be overcome, and it can be fatal within a few seconds.

Although acute poisoning is deadly if it is not caught in time, when caught and treated it is reversible; this is why rescue attempts with proper safety equipment are so important. Recent evidence has shown irreversible brain damage from acute high doses.

Chronic Effects

H_2S can also cause a wide range of sub-acute and chronic effects. At very low concentrations of 10-100 ppm. Headache, dizziness, nausea and vomiting may develop, together with irritation of the eyes and respiratory tract (the lungs and trachea and bronchi, or air pipes from the nose and mouth to the lungs). The eyes become red, sore, inflamed, and sensitive to light. Respiratory system effects include cough, pain in the nose and throat, and painful breathing.

If exposure at low levels continues, the worker may develop a state of chronic poisoning. In addition to eye and respiratory tract irritation, there will be a slowed pulse rate, fatigue, insomnia, digestive disturbances, and cold sweats. More dangerous, if exposure at the level of 100 ppm (which results in eye and respiratory tract irritation and drowsiness after 15 minutes) lasts for several hours, it may result in death within the next 48 hours.

Symptoms of chronic exposures at low levels are conjunctivitis (eye infections), headache, and attack of dizziness, diarrhea, and loss of weight. Chronic hydrogen sulfide intoxication is marked by headaches, eye disorders, chronic bronchitis, and a grey-green line on the gums. Reports of nervous system disorders including paralysis, meningitis, and neurological problems have been reported, but not confirmed. A study of workers and community residents of a California Wastewater Treatment facility forum complained of headaches, nausea, vomiting, depression, personality changes, nosebleeds and breathing difficulties. When compared to a non-exposed group of people, the exposed people showed abnormalities of color discrimination, hand-eye coordination, balance, and mood disturbances. In rats, exposure to hydrogen sulfide has caused teratogenic effects.

How much is Safe?

The OSHA Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) for a ceiling concentration is 20 ppm hydrogen sulfide, a level which may not ever be exceeded. The acceptable maximum peak, for 10 minutes only, once during an 8 hour day if there is no other measurable exposure, is 50 ppm.

There is no time-weighted average because H_2S is so fast-acting that no fluctuations above 20 ppm are safe; only one peak per day is allowed. This level is too high and recent recommendations are that it be lowered to 10 ppm.

You should remember, however, that H_2S is an invisible gas, floating freely and unpredictably, and a reading even below a 10 ppm Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) may not guarantee your safety. There are no particular medical exams for exposure to H_2S.

Work Practices and Emergency Procedures

Whenever you enter a confined space such as a tank, make sure that you follow strict work practices, including a permit system. Make sure that the Confined Space Entry Standard 1910.146 is followed, that the air is continually monitored for the presence of H_2S, and that a buddy be stationed outside a confined space. Both of you should wear supplied air and lifelines and rescue equipment must be immediately available.

Hazard Information Bulletin

Following are excerpts from a Hazard Bulletin issued by OSHA after a fatality due to H_2S exposure.

Fundamentally, employers and employees must be alert to the fact that working with a "closed system" does not always ensure safety. Operations involving the opening of valves or pumps on otherwise closed systems, or working on such equipment that is not isolated or locked out, are particular sources of danger. When a normally closed system is opened, the potential exists for releasing hazardous chemicals into the workers' breathing zones in unknown concentrations.

Respiratory Protection -- Respirators must be provided by the employer when effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, when such equipment is necessary to protect the health of the worker. The employer must provide respirators that are applicable for the purpose intended. Written procedures must be developed for the safe use of respirators during the performance of operations presenting a potential exposure to hazardous chemicals. Under circumstances where individuals may be exposed to an unknown concentration of hydrogen sulfide or some other hazardous chemical, back-up personnel with appropriate respirators and emergency equipment must be present.

You must be careful around sewer mains and always be careful of Hydrogen Sulfide and Carbon Monoxide gases. Never try to enter a confined space to rescue a downed employee unless you have been trained in rescue procedures and have called 911 first.

If you work with H_2S make sure that:

Your employer has trained you in the hazards of H_2S.
Your employer has appropriate rescue equipment on-site.

Hydrogen Sulfide Highlights

Hydrogen sulfide or H_2S problems are very common in the collection and wastewater system. There are many chemicals used to help or treat this problem. Salts of zinc, lime, hydrogen peroxide, chlorine and magnesium hydroxide are used in the treatment of hydrogen sulfide problems.

Hydrogen sulfide production in collection systems can cause a number of problems, including the following: Corrosion of the pipes and manholes, creation of hazardous atmospheres and foul odors.

The best method of controlling hydrogen sulfide is to eliminate its habitat or growth area by keeping sewers cleaner, this will harbor fewer slime bacteria.

Statements regarding the reduction of hydrogen sulfide: Salts of zinc and iron may precipitate sulfides, lime treatments can also kill bacteria which produce hydrogen sulfide, but this creates a sludge disposal problem. Chlorination is effective at reducing the bacteria which produce hydrogen sulfide.

Hydrogen sulfide conditions occur in the sewer system because of the lack of oxygen.

Safety Chapter 6

Competent Person
One who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees. They have authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate hazards.

The Competent Person also is trained and knowledgeable about soil analysis and the use of protective systems.

Scenario. A fixed ladder drops deep inside a permit required or type II confined space. One man goes inside and passes out from hazardous fumes. A second man goes in and dies within seconds trying to help his buddy. A third man goes in to save the others and dies on the spot. Only the first man survives, that is if you can say that being brain dead is surviving. Never try to rescue your buddies unless you are trained and have proper equipment. Never! Call 911 first. This scenario actually happened inside a sewer system. ***Don't be the next victim.***

Confined Space Entry Program Basics Should Include the Following:

- Written confined space entry procedures
- Evaluation to determine whether entry is necessary
- Issuance of a confined space entry permit
- Evaluation of the confined space by a qualified person
- Testing and monitoring the air quality in the confined space to ensure:
- Oxygen level is at least 19.5%
- Flammable range is less than 10% of the LFL (lower flammable limit)
- Training of workers and supervisors in the selection and use of:
    - *safe entry procedures*
    - *respiratory protection*
    - *lifelines and retrieval systems*
    - *protective clothing*
- Training of employees in safe work procedures in and around confined spaces
- Training of employees in confined space rescue procedures
- Conducting safety meetings to discuss confined space safety
- Availability and use of proper ventilation equipment
- Monitoring the air quality while workers are in the confined space.

Recommendation #2: Employers should identify the types of confined spaces within their jurisdiction and develop and implement confined space entry and rescue programs.

Discussion: Employers may be required to enter confined spaces to perform either non-emergency tasks or emergency rescue.

Therefore, employers should identify the types of confined spaces within their jurisdiction and develop and implement confined space entry and rescue programs that include written emergency rescue guidelines and procedures for entering confined spaces. A confined space program, as outlined in NIOSH Publications 80-106 and 87-113, should be implemented. At a minimum, the following should be addressed:

1. Is entry necessary? Can the task be accomplished from the outside? For example, measures that eliminate the need for employees to enter confined spaces should be carefully evaluated and implemented if at all possible before considering human entry into confined spaces to perform non-emergency tasks.

2. If entry is to be made, has the air quality in the confined space been tested for safety based on the following:
    - oxygen supply at least 19.5%
    - flammable range for all explosive gases less than 10% of the lower flammable limit
    - absence of toxic air contaminants?

3. Is ventilation equipment available and/or used?

4. Is appropriate rescue equipment available?

5. Are supervisors being continuously trained in the selection and use of appropriate rescue equipment such as:

- **SCBA's**
- **lifelines**
- **human hoist systems offering mechanical advantage**
- **protective clothing**
- **ventilation systems**

6. Are employees being properly trained in confined space entry procedures?

7.Are confined space safe work practices discussed in safety meetings?

8. Are employees trained in confined space rescue procedures?

9. Is the air quality monitored when the ventilation equipment is operating?

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standard Z117.1-1989 (Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces), 3.2 and 3.2.1 state, "*Hazards shall be identified for each confined space. The hazard identification process shall include, ... the past and current uses of the confined space which may adversely affect the atmosphere of the confined space; ... The hazard identification process should consider items such as ... the operation of gasoline engine powered equipment in or around the confined space*."

D-Ring on the rear of the harness is necessary for the entrant to be retrieved from the confined space.

Confined Spaces are

-large enough to allow entry of any body part, and
-limited or restricted entry or exit, and
-not designed for continuous employee occupancy

Permit Required Confined Spaces are confined spaces that have any of the following
-potential hazardous atmosphere
-material inside that may engulf or trap you
-internal design that could trap or asphyxiate you
-any other serious safety or health hazard

Entry Permits are required before you enter any "**Permit Required Confined Space**"

Hazards include

- Fire & Explosion
- Engulfment
- Asphyxiation
- Entrapment
- Slips & Falls
- Electric Shock
- Noise & Vibration
- Chemical Exposure
- Toxic Atmospheres
- Thermal / Chemical Burns

Engineering Controls

- ❑ Ventilation
- ❑ Locked Access
- ❑ Lighting

Administrative Controls

- ❑ Controlled Access
- ❑ Hazard Assessments
- ❑ Entry Permits & Procedures
- ❑ Signs & Lockout Tagout
- ❑ Training

Smart Safety Rules

Know what you are getting into.

Know how to get out in an emergency.

Know the hazards & how they are controlled.

Only authorized & trained personnel may enter a Confined Space or act as an attendant.

No smoking in Confined Space or near entrance or exit area.

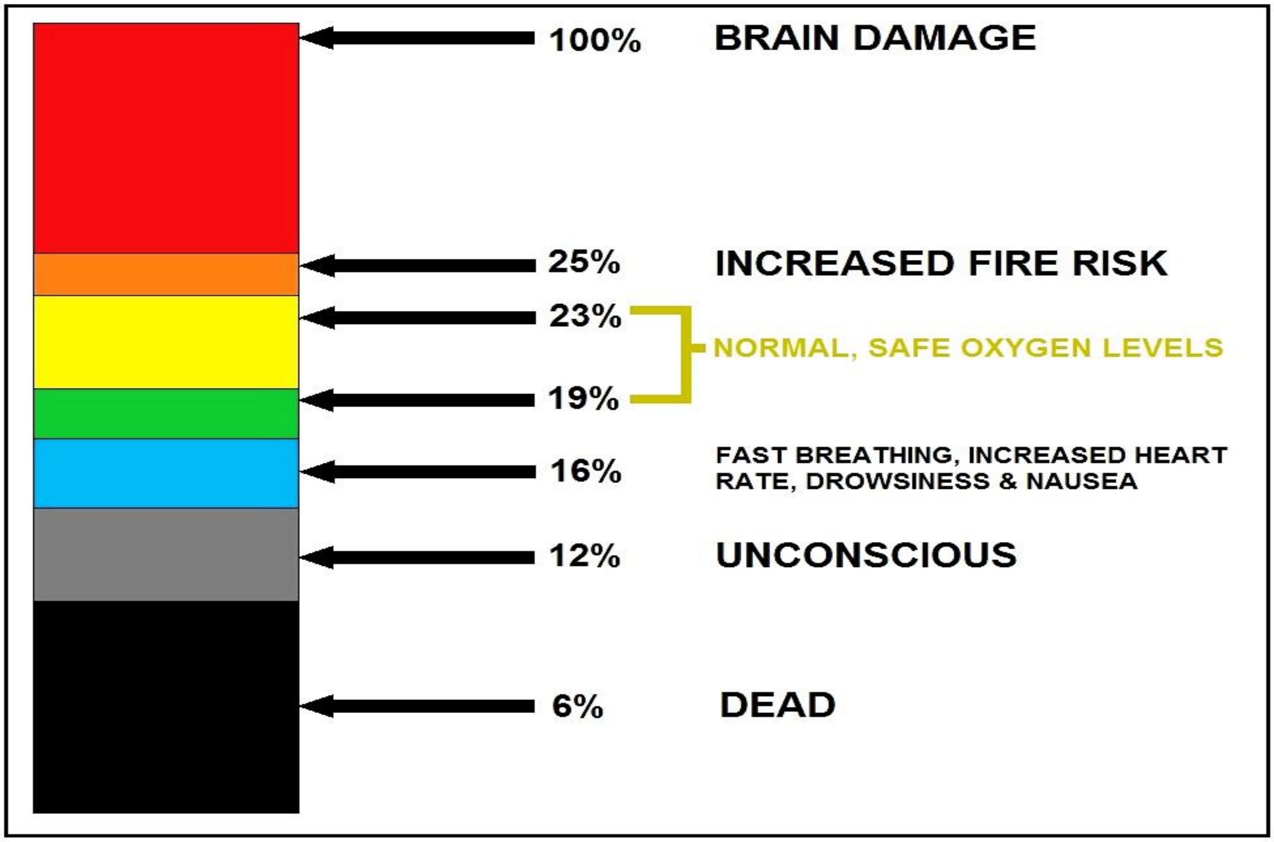
Attendant must be present at all times.

Constant visual or voice communication must be maintained between the attendant and entrants.

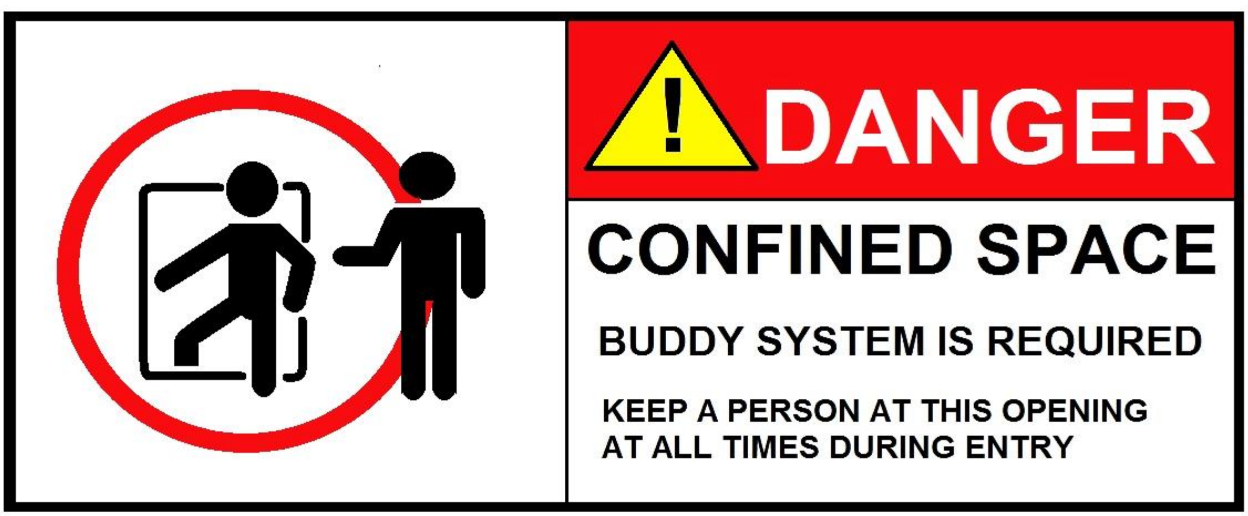
No bottom or side entry will be made, or work conducted below the level any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.

Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering a Permit-Required Confined Space.

Ventilation & oxygen monitoring is required when welding is performed.



RESULTS OF OXYGEN LEVELS IN CONFINED SPACES



EXAMPLE OF A CONFINED SPACE ENTRY DANGER SIGN

Confined Space Entry Program Explained

Purpose
The Confined Space Entry Program is provided to protect authorized employees that will enter confined spaces and may be exposed to hazardous atmospheres, engulfment in materials, conditions which may trap or asphyxiate due to converging or sloping walls, or contains any other safety or health hazards.
Reference: OSHA-Permit-Required Confined Spaces (**29 CFR 1910.146**).

Scope
You are required to recognize the dangers and hazards associated with confined spaces, and this program is designed to assist you in the safety of and compliance with the OSHA standards associated with such.

Most communities will utilize the Fire Department for all rescues and additional assistance dealing with confined spaces, understanding that most Fire Department operations utilize additional in house SOG's/SOP's pertaining to such operations.

Definitions
Confined space:
Is large enough or so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform work.

Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (i.e. tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry).

Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.

Permit required confined space (permit space), is a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics:

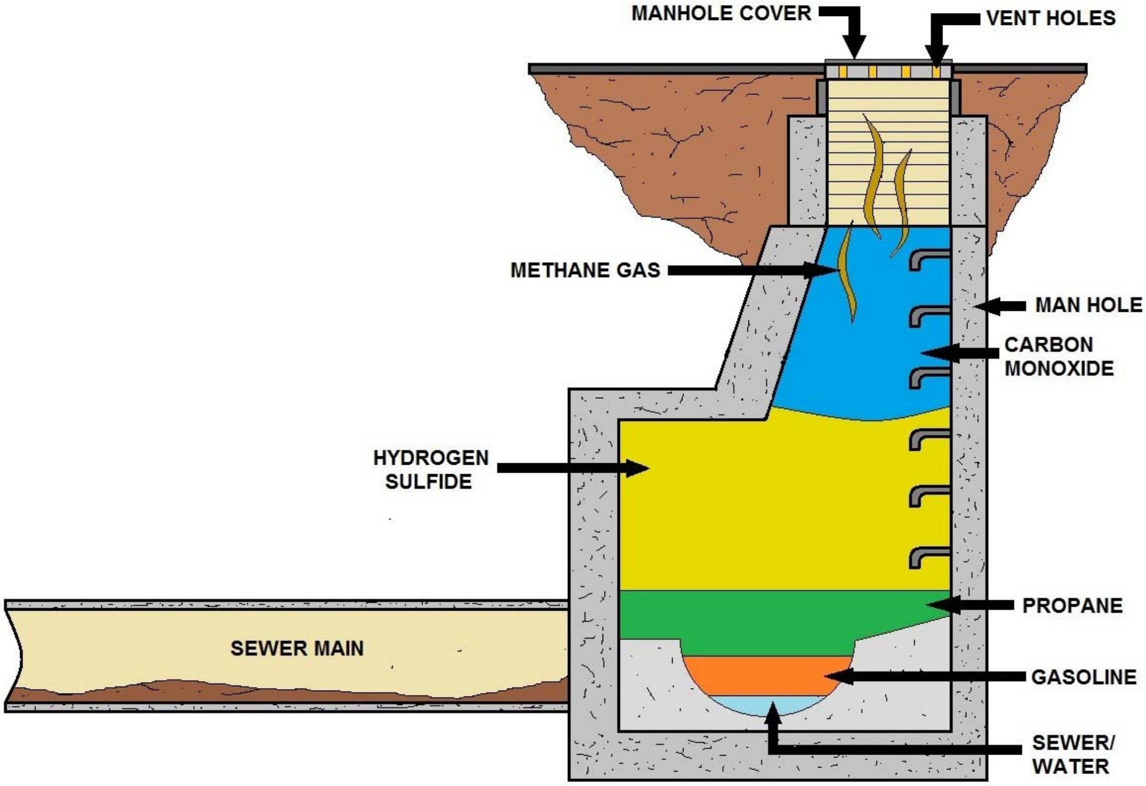
1. Contains or has a potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere.

2. Contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant.

3. Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly covering walls or by a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section.

4. Contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazard.

Each Permit-Required Confined Space will be marked
"***Confined Space - Entry Permit Required***".



POSSIBLE HAZARDOUS ATMOSPHERES PRESENT IN A CONFINED SPACE (EXAMPLE IS OF A SEWER MAIN)

COMMON HAZARDOUS GASES THAT MAY BE PRESENT IN CONFINED SPACE					
SUBSTANCE *	8-HOUR TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE (TWA)	15-MINUTE SHORT-TERM EXPOSURE LIMIT (STEL)	CEILING LIMIT (Never To Be Exceeded)	IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH)	RECOMMENDED ALARM SETTINGS (Low / High)
AMMONIA	25 ppm	35 ppm	—	300 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CARBON MONOXIDE	25 ppm	100 ppm	—	1200 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CHLORINE	0.5 ppm	1 ppm	—	10 ppm	0.25 ppm / 0.5 ppm
HYDROGEN SULFIDE	—	—	10 ppm	100 ppm	5 ppm / 10 ppm
METHANE	1000 ppm	—	—	—	500 ppm / 1000 ppm
NITROGEN DIOXIDE	—	—	1 ppm	20 ppm	0.5 ppm / 1 ppm
SULFUR DIOXIDE	2 ppm	5 ppm	—	100 ppm	1 ppm / 2 ppm
OXYGEN	—	—	—	—	20.5 % of Atmosphere
LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL)	—	—	—	—	5 % LEL

EXAMPLE OF A CHART OF CONFINED SPACE GASES

Confined Space Hazards

Fatalities and injuries constantly occur among construction workers who, during the course of their jobs, are required to enter confined spaces. In some circumstances, these workers are exposed to multiple hazards, any of which may cause bodily injury, illness, or death.

Newspaper and magazine articles abound with stories of workers injured and killed from a variety of atmospheric factors and physical agents. Throughout the construction jobsite, contractors and workers encounter both inherent and induced hazards within confined workspaces.

Inherent Hazards
Inherent hazards, such as electrical, thermal, chemical, mechanical, etc., are associated with specific types of equipment and the interactions among them.

Examples include high voltage (shock or corona discharge and the resulting burns), radiation generated by equipment, defective design, omission of protective features (no provision for grounding non-current-carrying conductive parts), high or low temperatures, high noise levels, and high-pressure vessels and lines (rupturing with resultant release of fragments, fluids, gases, etc.).

Inherent hazards usually cannot be eliminated without degrading the system or equipment, or without making them inoperative. Therefore, emphasis must be placed on hazard control methods.

Induced Hazards
Induced hazards arise, and are induced from, a multitude of incorrect decisions and actions that occur during the actual construction process. Some examples are: omission of protective features, physical arrangements that may cause unintentional worker contact with electrical energy sources, oxygen-deficient atmospheres created at the bottom of pits or shafts, lack of safety factors in structural strength, and flammable atmospheres.

Typical Examples of Confined Workspaces
Following are typical examples of confined workspaces in construction which contain both inherent and induced hazards.

Vaults
A variety of vaults are found on the construction jobsite. On various occasions, workers must enter these vaults to perform a number of functions.
The restricted nature of vaults and their frequently below-grade location can create an assortment of safety and health problems.

Oxygen-Deficient Atmosphere
One of the major problems confronting construction workers while working in vaults is the ever-present possibility of an oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

Explosive or Toxic Gases, Vapors, or Fumes
While working in an electrical vault, workers may be exposed to the build-up of explosive gases such as those used for heating (propane). Welding and soldering produce toxic fumes which are confined in the limited atmosphere.

Electrical Shock
Electrical shock is often encountered from power tools, line cords, etc. In many instances, such electrical shock results from the fact that the contractor has not provided an approved grounding system or the protection afforded by ground-fault circuit interrupters or low-voltage systems.

Purging
In some instances, purging agents such as nitrogen and argon may enter the vault from areas adjacent to it. These agents may displace the oxygen in the vault to the extent that it will asphyxiate workers almost immediately.

Materials Falling In and On
A hazard normally considered a problem associated with confined spaces is material or equipment which may fall into the vault or onto workers as they enter and leave the vault.

Vibration could cause the materials on top of the vault to roll off and strike workers. If the manhole covers were removed, or if they were not installed in the first place, materials could fall into the vault, causing injury to the workers inside.

Condenser Pits
A common confined space found in the construction of nuclear power plants is the condenser pit. Because of their large size, they are often overlooked as potentially hazardous confined spaces.

These below-grade areas create large containment areas for the accumulation of toxic fumes, gases, and so forth, or for the creation of oxygen-deficient atmospheres when purging with argon, Freon, and other inert gases.

Other hazards will be created by workers above dropping equipment, tools, and materials into the pit.

Manholes
Throughout the construction site, manholes are commonplace. As means of entry into and exit from vaults, tanks, pits, and so forth, manholes perform a necessary function. However, these confined spaces may present serious hazards which could cause injuries and fatalities.

A variety of hazards are associated with manholes. To begin with, the manhole could be a dangerous trap into which the worker could fall. Often covers are removed and not replaced, or else they are not provided in the first place.

Pipe Assemblies

One of the most frequently unrecognized types of confined spaces encountered throughout the construction site is the pipe assembly. Piping of sixteen to thirty-six inches in diameter is commonly used for a variety of purposes.

For any number of reasons, workers will enter the pipe. Once inside, they are faced with potential oxygen-deficient atmospheres, often caused by purging with argon or another inert gas. Welding fumes generated by the worker in the pipe, or by other workers operating outside the pipe at either end, subject the worker to toxic atmospheres.

The generally restricted dimensions of the pipe provide little room for the workers to move about and gain any degree of comfort while performing their tasks. Once inside the pipe, communication is extremely difficult. In situations where the pipe bends, communication and extrication become even more difficult. Electrical shock is another problem to which the worker is exposed.

Ungrounded tools and equipment or inadequate line cords are some of the causes. As well, heat within the pipe run may cause the worker to suffer heat prostration.

Ventilation Ducts

Ventilation ducts, like pipe runs, are very common at the construction site. These sheet metal enclosures create a complex network which moves heated and cooled air and exhaust fumes to desired locations in the plant.

Ventilation ducts may require that workers enter them to cut out access holes, install essential parts of the duct, etc. Depending on where these ducts are located, oxygen deficiency could exist. They usually possess many bends, which create difficult entry and exit and which also make it difficult for workers inside the duct to communicate with those outside it. Electrical shock hazards and heat stress are other problems associated with work inside ventilation ducts.

Tanks

Tanks are another type of confined workspace commonly found in construction. They are used for a variety of purposes, including the storage of water, chemicals, etc.

Tanks require entry for cleaning and repairs. Ventilation is always a problem. Oxygen-deficient atmospheres, along with toxic and explosive atmospheres created by the substances stored in the tanks, present hazards to workers. Heat, another problem in tanks, may cause heat prostration, particularly on a hot day.

Since electrical line cords are often taken into the tank, the hazard of electrical shock is always present. The nature of the tank's structure often dictates that workers must climb ladders to reach high places on the walls of the tank.

Sumps

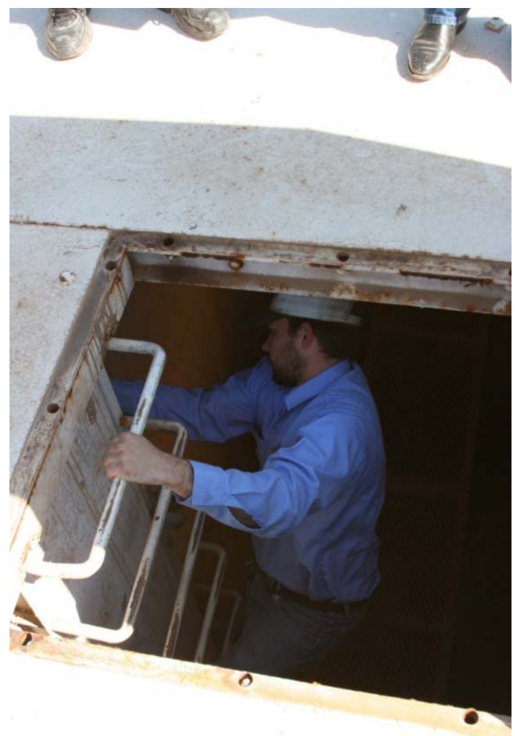
Sumps are commonplace. They are used as collection places for water and other liquids. Workers entering sumps may encounter an oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

Also, because of the wet nature of the sump, electrical shock hazards are present when power tools are used inside. Sumps are often poorly illuminated. Inadequate lighting may create an accident situation.

Containment Cavities
These large below-grade areas are characterized by little or no air movement. Ventilation is always a problem. In addition, the possibility of oxygen deficiency exists. As well, welding and other gases may easily collect in these areas, creating toxic atmospheres. As these structures near completion, more confined spaces will exist as rooms are built off the existing structure.

Electrical Transformers
Electrical transformers are located on the jobsite. They often contain a nitrogen purge or dry air. Before they are opened, they must be well vented by having air pumped in. Workers, particularly electricians and power plant operators, will enter these transformers through hatches on top for various work-related reasons. Testing for oxygen deficiency and for toxic atmospheres is mandatory.

Heat Sinks
These larger pit areas hold cooling water in the event that there is a problem with the pumps located at the water supply to the plant--normally a river or lake--which would prevent cooling water from reaching the reactor core.



When in the pits, workers are exposed to welding fumes and electrical hazards, particularly because water accumulates in the bottom of the sink.

Generally, it is difficult to communicate with workers in the heat sink, because the rebar in the walls of the structure deaden radio signals.

Unusual Conditions

Confined Space within a Confined Space
By the very nature of construction, situations are created which illustrate one of the most hazardous confined spaces of all--a confined space within a confined space.

This situation appears as tanks within pits, pipe assemblies or vessels within pits, etc. In this situation, not only do the potential hazards associated with the outer confined space require testing, monitoring, and control, but those of the inner space also require similar procedures.

Often, only the outer space is evaluated. When workers enter the inner space, they are faced with potentially hazardous conditions.

A good example of a confined space within a confined space is a vessel with a nitrogen purge inside a filtering water access pit. Workers entering the pit and/or the vessel should do so only after both spaces have been evaluated and proper control measures established.

Hazards in One Space Entering another Space
During an examination of confined spaces in construction, one often encounters situations which are not always easy to evaluate or control. For instance, a room or area which classifies as a confined space may be relatively safe for work.

However, access passages from other areas outside or adjacent to the room could, at some point, allow the transfer of hazardous agents into the "*safe*" one. One such instance would be a pipe coming through a wall into a containment room.

Welding fumes and other toxic materials generated in one room may easily travel through the pipe into another area, causing it to change from a safe to an unsafe workplace.

A serious problem with a situation such as this is that workers working in the "safe" area are not aware of the hazards leaking into their area. Thus, they are not prepared to take action to avoid or control it.

Session Conclusion
In this discussion, we have defined inherent and induced hazards in confined spaces. We have examined typical confined spaces on construction sites and we have described representative hazards within these confined spaces.

Examples of "***Permit Required Confined Spaces.***" Make sure you comply with these Confined Space rules or face civil and/or criminal charges. Several states have criminally charged Supervisors and Attendants for the actions of the employees in a Confined Space/Permit Required Confined Space. ***Don't risk death or the chance of going to jail in order to speed up your job!***

Permitted Confined Space Entry Program

Definition of Confined Spaces Requiring an Entry Permit
Confined space:

- ✓ Is large enough or so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform work.
- ✓ Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (i.e. tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry).
- ✓ Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.

Purpose
The Permit Required Space (**PRCS**) Program is provided to protect authorized employees that will enter confined spaces and may be exposed to hazardous atmospheres, engulfment in materials, conditions which may trap or asphyxiate due to converging or sloping walls, or contains any other safety or health hazards.

Many workplaces contain confined spaces not designed for human occupancy which due to their configuration hinder employee activities including entry, work and exit. Asphyxiation is the leading cause of death in confined spaces.

Subpart P applies to all open excavations in the earth's surface.

- ✓ All trenches are excavations.
- ✓ All excavations are not trenches.

Permit Required Confined Space Entry General Rules
During all confined space entries, the following safety rules must be strictly enforced:

1. Only authorized and trained employees may enter a confined space or act as safety watchmen/attendants.

2. No smoking is permitted in a confined space or near entrance/exit area.

3. During confined space entries, a watchmen or attendant must be present at all times.

4. Constant visual or voice communication will be maintained between the safety watchmen and employees entering a confined space.

5. No bottom or side entry will be made or work conducted below the level any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.

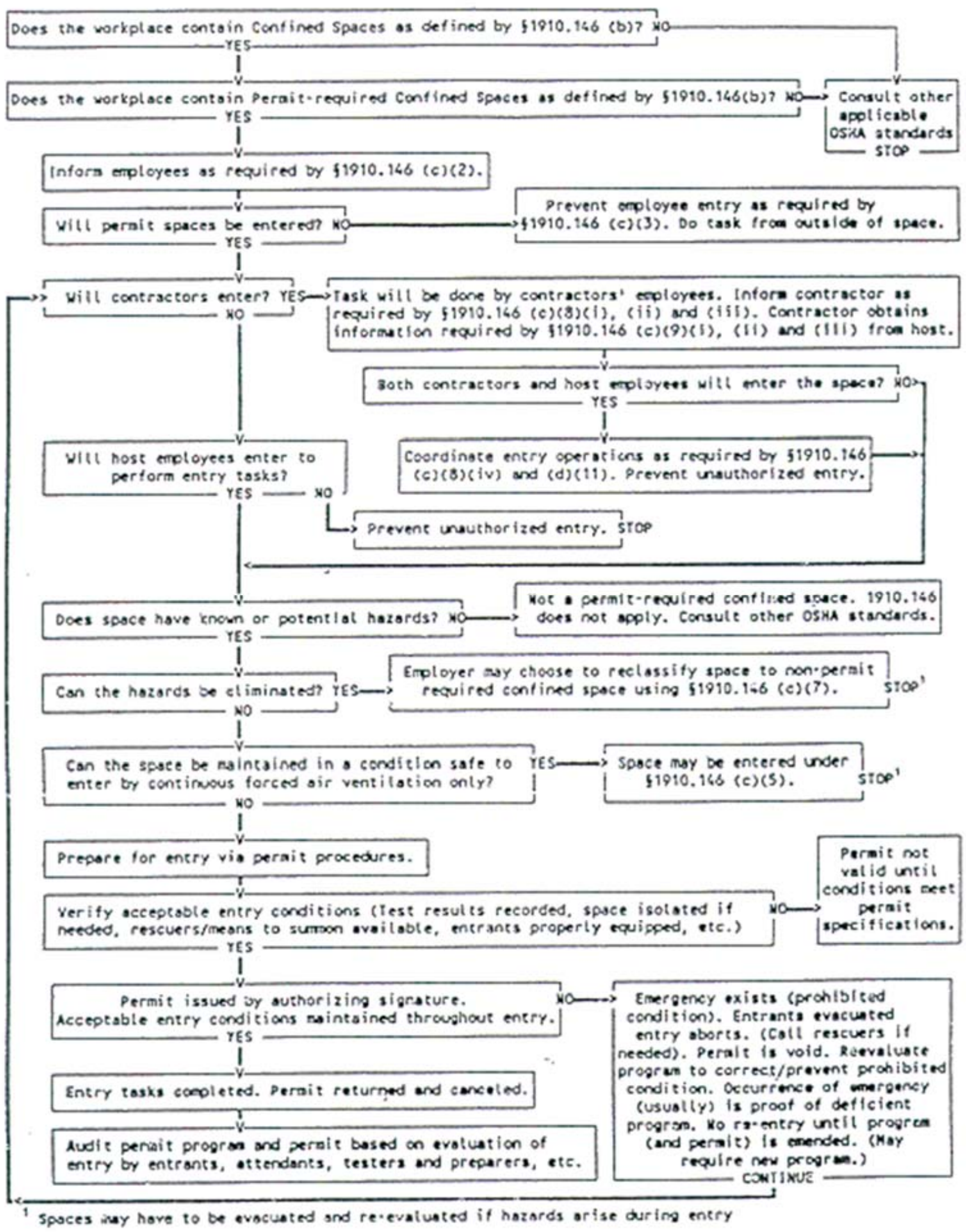
6. Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering any permit-required confined space. Oxygen levels in a confined space must be between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. Levels above or below will require the use of an SCBA or other approved air supplied respirator. Additional ventilation and oxygen level monitoring is required when welding is performed. The monitoring will check oxygen levels, explosive gas levels and carbon monoxide levels. Entry will not be permitted if explosive gas is detected above one-half the Lower Explosive Limit (**LEL**).

7. To prevent injuries to others, all openings to confined spaces will be protected by a barricade when covers are removed.

Appendix A to §1910.146
Permit-Required Confined Space Decision Flow Chart

Note: Appendices A through F serve to provide information and non-mandatory guidelines to assist employers and employees in complying with the appropriate requirements of this section.

APPENDIX A TO §1910.146—PERMIT-REQUIRED CONFINED SPACE DECISION FLOW CHART



[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34846, June 29, 1993; 63 FR 66039, Dec. 1, 1998]

Confined Space Entry Permit *Example*

Date & Time Issued		Date & time Expires	
Space I.D.		Supervisor	
Equipment Affected		Task	
Standby Team			
Pre-Entry Atmospheric Checks	Time (am - pm)		
	Oxygen		
	Explosive (% LEL)		
	Toxic (PPM)		
	Testers Signature		

Pre-entry Fluid System Isolation	Yes	No
Pumps /lines blinded, blocked, disconnected		
Ventilation Source Established		
Mechanical Forced Air		
Natural Ventilation		
Post Ventilation Pre-Entry Atmospheric Checks		
Time		
Oxygen (%)		
Explosive (% LEL		
Toxic (PPM)		
Tester Signature		
Communication Procedures Established per specific Confined Space SOP		
Rescue Procedures established per specific Confined Space SOP		

Training Verification - for the following persons & space to be entered	YES	NO
All persons entering Confined Space		
All persons acting as Supervisor for the Entry		
All persons assigned backup positions		
All persons assigned to monitor access and interior activities		
All persons assigned to emergency rescue team		

Equipment on Scene	YES	NO	NA		YES	NO	NA
Gas Monitor				Life Line			
Safety Harness				Hoisting Equipment			
Fall Arrest Gear				Powered Comm Eq.			

SCBAs				Air Line Respirators			
Protective Clothing				Elect Gear Properly Rated			

Periodic Atmospheric Checks				
Time (am - pm)				
Oxygen				
Explosive (% LEL)				
Toxic (PPM)				
Testers Signature				

A review of the work authorized by this permit and the information contained on this Entry Permit. Written instructions and safety procedures have been received and are understood. Entry cannot be approved if any squares are marked in the "**No**" column.

This permit is not valid unless all appropriate items are completed.

Permit Prepared By: (Supervisor) ________________________________

Approved By: (Unit Supervisor) __________________________________

This permit to be kept at job site.

Return job site copy to Safety Office following job completion.

Copies: Safety Office, Unit Supervisor, Job site

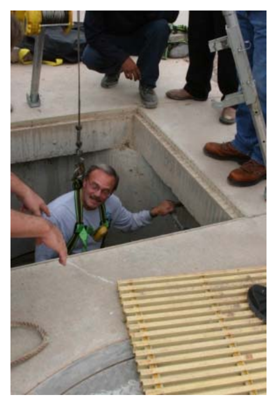
Confined Space Duties & Responsibilities

Examples of Assignments
Employees

- Follow program requirements.
- Report any previously un-identified hazards associated with confined spaces.
- Do not enter any confined spaces that have not been evaluated for safety concerns.

Management
- Provide annual Confined Space training to all employees that may need confined space training.
- Ensure confined space assessments have been conducted.
- Annually review this program and all Entry Permits.

Rescue or Training Department
- Ensure proper training for entry & rescue teams.
- Provide proper equipment for entry & rescue teams.
- Ensure all permit required confined spaces are posted.
- Evaluate rescue teams and service to ensure they are adequately trained and prepared.
- Ensure rescue team at access during entry into spaces with Immediately Dangerous to Life or Health (IDLH) atmospheres.
- Provide annual confined space awareness training to all employees that may need confined space awareness training.



Entry Supervisor
Entry supervisors are responsible for the overall permit space entry and must coordinate all entry procedures, tests, permits, equipment and other relevant activities.

The following entry supervisor duties are required:
Know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure.

Verify by checking that the appropriate entries have been made on the permit, all tests specified by the permit have been conducted, and that all procedures and equipment specified by the permit are in place before endorsing the permit and allowing entry to begin.

Terminate the entry and cancel the permit when the entry is complete or there is a need for terminating the permit.

Verify that rescue services are available and that the means for summoning them are operable.

Remove unauthorized persons who enter or attempt to enter the space during entry operations.

Determine whenever responsibility for a permit space entry operation is transferred and at intervals dictated by the hazards and operations performed within the space that entry operations remain consistent with the permit terms and that acceptable entry conditions are maintained.

Entry Attendants
At least one attendant is required outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of the entry operation.

Responsibilities include:
- To know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure
- To be aware of possible behavioral effects of hazard exposure on entrants
- To continuously maintain an accurate count of entrants in the permit space and ensures a means to accurately identify authorized entrants
- To remain outside the permit space during entry operations until relieved by another attendant (once properly relieved, they may participate in other permit space activities, including rescue if they are properly trained and equipped).
- To communicate with entrants as necessary to monitor entrant status and alert entrants of the need to evacuate.
- To monitor activities inside and outside the space to determine if it is safe for entrants to remain in the space; orders the entrants to immediately evacuate if: the attendant detects a prohibited condition, detects entrant behavioral effects of hazard exposure, detects a situation outside the space that could endanger the entrants; or if the attendant cannot effectively and safely perform all the attendant duties.
- To summon rescue and other emergency services as soon as the attendant determines the entrants need assistance to escape the permit space hazards.
- To perform non-entry rescues as specified by that rescue procedure and entry supervisor and not to perform duties that might interfere with the attendants' primary duty to monitor and protect the entrants.

Procedures for Entering a Confined Space

This space requires an emergency retrieval system, continuous air monitoring, and safety watch or two-way communication for safe entry.

Donning the personal protective equipment (**PPE**) necessary for confined space entry.

The full-body harness provides fully adjustable leg and shoulder straps for worker comfort and proper fit.

Stamped steel sliding back D-ring and sub-pelvic strap provide optimum force distribution.

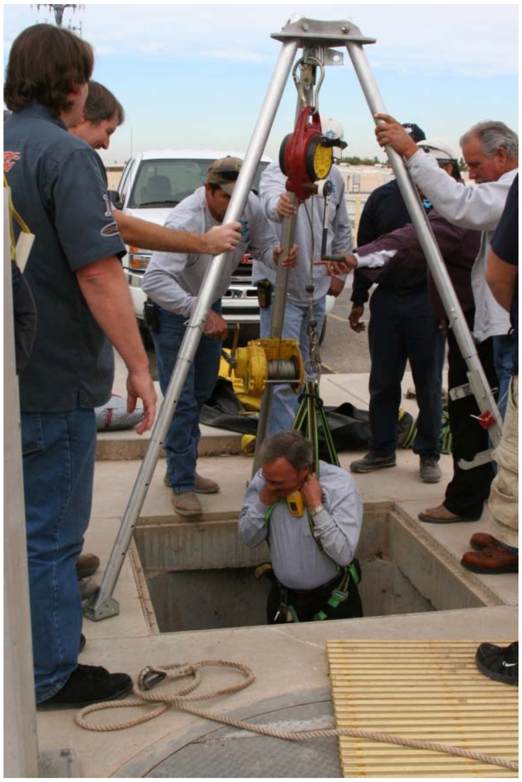
Example of a "***D-Ring***" and fall protection harness used when entering a confined space. The D-Ring provides a compatible anchor point for connecting devices such as lanyards or retractable lifelines. The shock absorbing lanyard provides a deceleration distance during a fall to reduce fall arrest forces for extra protection against injury.

Tripod-retrieval assembly in use for an entry into one of the many confined spaces.

Checking the cable tension and inertial locking mechanism of the retrieval assembly.

Correct use of this device prevents free-falls greater than 2 feet.

The entrant descends into the space as the attendant critiques the operation.



Dramatic rescue simulation using the tripod-retrieval system.

The entrant is now safely out of the space and is ready to return to his many other projects after this simulated exercise.

Duties of the Person Authorizing or in Charge of the Entry

The person who authorizes or is in charge of the permit entry confined space must comply with the following:

1. Make certain that all pre-entry requirements as outlined on the permit have been completed before any worker is allowed to enter the confined space.

2. Make certain that any required pre-entry conditions are present.

3. If an in-plant/facility rescue team is to be used in the event of an emergency, make sure they would be available. If your Employer does not maintain an in-plant rescue team, dial 911 on any telephone for the Rescue Squad.

4. Make sure that any communication equipment which would be used to summon either the in-plant rescue team or other emergency assistance is operating correctly.

5. Terminate the entry upon becoming aware of a condition or set of conditions whose hazard potential exceeds the limits authorized by the entry permit.

If the person who would otherwise issue an entry permit is in charge of the entry and present during the entire entry, then a written permit is not required if that person uses a checklist as provided in the section on "***Permits***".

This person may also serve as the attendant at the site.

Special Considerations During A Permit Required Entry
Certain work being performed in a permit entry confined space could cause the atmosphere in the space to change. Examples of this are welding, drilling, or sludge removal.

In these situations, air monitoring of the confined space should be conducted on a continuous basis throughout the time of the entry.

If the workers leave the confined space for any significant period of time, such as for a lunch or other break, the atmosphere of the confined space must be retested before the workers reenter the confined space.

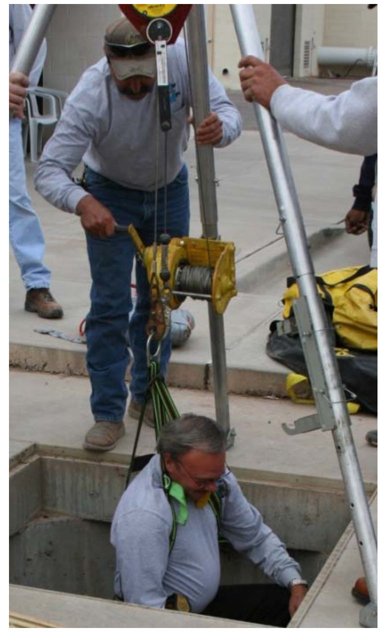
Unauthorized Persons

Take the following actions when unauthorized persons approach or enter a permit space while entry is under way:

1. Warn the unauthorized persons that they must stay away from the permit space,
2. Advise unauthorized persons that they must exit immediately if they have entered the space, and
3. Inform the authorized entrants and the entry supervisor if unauthorized persons have entered the permit space.

Entrants

All entrants must be authorized by the entry supervisor to enter permit spaces, have received the required training, have used the proper equipment, and observed the entry procedures and permit requirements.



The following entrant duties are required:
Know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;

Properly use the equipment required for safe entry;
Communicate with the attendant as necessary to enable the attendant to monitor the status of the entrants and to enable the attendant to alert the entrants of the need to evacuate the space if necessary;

Alert the attendant whenever; the entrant recognizes any warning signs or symptoms of exposure to a dangerous situation, or any prohibited condition is detected; and

Exit the permit space as quickly as possible whenever the attendant or entry supervisor gives an order to evacuate the permit space, the entrant recognizes any warning signs or symptoms of exposure to a dangerous situation, the entrant detects a prohibited condition, or an evacuation alarm is activated.

Hazards

- ✓ **Explosive / Flammable Atmospheres**
- ✓ **Toxic Atmospheres**
- ✓ **Engulfment**
- ✓ **Asphyxiation**
- ✓ **Entrapment**
- ✓ **Slips & falls**
- ✓ **Chemical Exposure**
- ✓ **Electric Shock**
- ✓ **Thermal / Chemical Burns**
- ✓ **Noise & Vibration**

Hazard Control

Engineering Controls
- ➢ Locked entry points
- ➢ Temporary ventilation
- ➢ Temporary Lighting

Administrative Controls
- ➢ Signs
- ➢ Employee training
- ➢ Entry procedures
- ➢ Atmospheric Monitoring
- ➢ Rescue procedures
- ➢ Use of prescribed Personal Protective Equipment

Entry Standard Operating Procedures
This program outlines:
- ➢ Hazards
- ➢ Hazard Control & Abatement
- ➢ Acceptable Entry Conditions
- ➢ Means of Entry
- ➢ Entry Equipment Required
- ➢ Emergency Procedures

Here is a small clip-on style multi-purpose gas meter. Tie a string to lower the meter in the confined space to get a gas reading before entering.

Permit Required Confined Space Entry General Rules

During all confined space entries, the following safety rules must be strictly enforced:

1. Only authorized and trained employees may enter a confined space or act as safety watchman/attendant.

2. No smoking is permitted in a confined space or near entrance/exit area.

3. During confined space entries, a watchman must be present at all times.

4. Constant visual or voice communication will be maintained between the safety watchman/attendant and employees entering a confined space.

5. No bottom or side entry will be made or work conducted below the level of any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.

6. Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering any permit-required confined space. Oxygen levels in a confined space must be between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. Levels above or below will require the use of an SCBA or other approved air supplied respirator. Additional ventilation and oxygen level monitoring is required when welding is performed.

The monitoring will check oxygen levels, explosive gas levels and carbon monoxide levels. Entry will not be permitted if explosive gas is detected above one-half the Lower Explosive Limit (**LEL**), or 10% of a specific gas explosive limit.

7. To prevent injuries to others, all openings to confined spaces will be protected by a barricade when covers are removed.

Confined Space Entry Procedures

Each employee who enters or is involved in the entry must:

1. Understand the procedures for confined space entry
2. Know the Hazards of the specific space
3. Review the specific procedures for each entry
4. Understand how to use entry and rescue equipment

Confined Space Entry Permits

Confined Space Entry Permits must be completed before any employee enters a permit-required confined space. The permit must be completed and signed by an authorized member of management before entry.

Permits will expire before the completion of the shift or if any pre-entry conditions change.

Permits will be maintained on file for 12 months.

Contractor Entry

All work by non-company employees that involves the entry into confined spaces will follow the procedures of this program. The information of this program and specific hazards of the confined spaces to be entered will be provided to contractor management prior to commencing entry or work.

Important Rescue Service Questions

What is the availability of the rescue service?

Is it unavailable at certain times of the day or in certain situations?

What is the likelihood that key personnel of the rescue service might be unavailable at times?

If the rescue service becomes unavailable while an entry is underway, does it have the capability of notifying the employer so that the employer can instruct the attendant to abort the entry immediately?

Confined Space Training

***Training for Confined Space Entry includes*:**

1. Duties of entry supervisor, entrant and attendants
2. Confined space entry permits
3. Hazards of confined spaces
4. Use of air monitoring equipment
5. First aid and CPR training
6. Emergency action & rescue procedures
7. Confined space entry & rescue equipment
8. Rescue training, including entry and removal from representative spaces

Confined Space Training and Education
OSHA's General Industry Regulation, §1910.146 Permit-required confined spaces, contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This regulation does not apply to construction.

OSHA's Construction Safety and Health Regulations Part 1926 do not contain a permit-required confined space regulation. Subpart C, §1926.21 Safety training and education specifies training for personnel who are required to enter confined spaces and defines a "***confined or enclosed space***." These requirements are shown below.

§1926.21 Safety Training and Education. (Partial)
(b)(6)(i) All employees required to enter into confined or enclosed spaces shall be instructed as to the nature of the hazards involved, the necessary precautions to be taken, and in the use of protective and emergency equipment required. The employer shall comply with any specific regulations that apply to work in dangerous or potentially dangerous areas.

(ii) For purposes of paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, "***confined or enclosed space***" means any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels pipelines, and open top spaces more than 4 feet in depth such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels.

OSHA's Construction Regulations also contain requirements dealing with confined space hazards in underground construction (Subpart S), underground electric transmission and distribution work (§1926.956), excavations (Subpart P), and welding and cutting (Subpart J).

Further guidance may be obtained from American National Standard ANSI Z117.1-1989, Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces. This standard provides minimum safety requirements to be followed while entering, exiting and working in confined spaces at normal atmospheric pressure. This standard does not pertain to underground mining, tunneling, caisson work or other similar tasks that have established national consensus standards.

CONFINED SPACE ENTRY CHECKLIST EXAMPLE

Your Employer is Responsible for Certain Training Requirements.

These are as follows:

1. **GENERAL** As an employer, your employer must ensure that all workers who must enter a permit entry confined space in the course of their work are informed of appropriate procedures and controls for entry into such spaces. These workers must be made aware of the fact that an unauthorized entry could be fatal, and that their senses are unable to detect and evaluate the severity of atmospheric hazards.

2. **TRAINING FOR AUTHORIZED ENTRANTS** Your employer must ensure that all authorized entrants know the emergency action plan and have received training covering the following subjects prior to entering any permit entry confined space:

a**. Hazard Recognition**: Each worker must understand the nature of the hazard before entering and the need to perform appropriate testing to determine if it is safe to enter.

b. **Use of Personal Protective Equipment**: Each employee must be taught the proper use of all personal protective equipment required for entry or rescue, and the proper use of protective barriers and shields.

c. **Self-Rescue**: Each worker must be trained to get out of the confined space as rapidly as possible without help whenever an order to evacuate is given by the attendant, whenever an automatic evacuation alarm is activated, or whenever workers recognize the warning signs of exposure to substances that could be found in the confined space. They must also be made aware of the toxic effects or symptoms of exposure to hazardous materials he could encounter in the confined space. This includes anything that could be absorbed through the skin or which could be carried through the skin by any solvents that are used. They must be trained to relay an alarm to the attendant and to attempt self- rescue immediately upon becoming aware of these effects.

d. **Special Work Practices or Procedures**: Each worker must be trained in any modifications of normal work practices that are necessary for permit entry confined space work.

3. **TRAINING FOR PERSONS AUTHORIZING OR IN CHARGE OF ENTRY** In addition to other requirements already covered, the person authorizing or in charge of entry shall be trained to recognize the effects of exposure to hazards that could be in the confined space. They must also carry out all duties that the permit assigns to them.

Rescue practice training. This picture is showing a sand bag being utilized as a dummy.

4. **TRAINING FOR ATTENDANT** Any worker functioning as an attendant at a permit entry confined space must be trained in the company's emergency action plan, the duties of the attendant, and in;

a. Proper use of the communications equipment furnished for communicating with authorized workers entering the confined space or for summoning emergency or rescue services.

b. Authorized procedures for summoning rescue or other emergency services.

c. Recognition of the unusual actions of a worker which could indicate that they could be experiencing a toxic reaction to contaminants that could be present in the space.

d. Any training for rescuers, if the attendant will function as a rescuer also.

e. Any training for workers who enter the confined space, if the permit specifies that the duty of the attendant will rotate among the workers authorized to enter the confined space.

CONFINED SPACE AUTHORIZED ENTRANT'S LOG EXAMPLE

CONFINED SPACE: **DATE:**
TIME:

ENTRANT'S NAME (PRINT)	*TIME IN*	*TIME OUT*

ENTRY Attendant:

ENTRY Supervisor Review:

What do you think? Is this a dangerous confined space? Would you weld inside a large pipe all alone? I am sure he is paid well, but is he safe and sound?

Confined Space Entry Procedure Checklist

	Hazards			**Personal Protective Equipment**
	Explosive / Combustion Hazard			Air supplied Respirator
	Exposed Electrical Circuits			Air Purifying Respirator
	Unguarded Machine Parts			Welding Protection
	Atmospheric Hazard			Gloves
	Potential Atmospheric Hazard			Hard Hat
	Thermal Hazard			**Ventilation Requirements**
	Chemical Hazard			Continuous ___cuft/min Note*: See Ventilation Guidelines for Confined Spaces for typical ventilation configurations and formulas.*
	Fall Hazard			
	Engulfment hazard		Note: *Additional ventilation may be required for hot work, grinding or other operations that would produce airborne fumes, mist or dust. Entry Supervisor must assess additional ventilation requirements base on tasks to be performed in the space*	
	Converging Walls			
	Floors slope-small cross-section			
	Slip Hazard			
	Entry Path			Vent Exhaust Point:
	Side entry			Vent Supply Point:
	Bottom entry			Space Volume
	Door			**Initial Purge Time=** 7.5 X ______ (space volume) Effective Blower Capacity
	Top open entry			
	Top manhole entry			**20 Air Changes per Hour (ACH) for duration of entry**
	Hinged hatch			**Minimum initial Purge Time= 20 Minutes**
	Entry & Rescue Equipment			**Adequate Blower Capacity (ABC) =** ________ ABC = Space Volume x 20 ACH 60 minutes
	Life Line			
	Floor level opening barrier			**Acceptable Entry Conditions**
	Body Harness			Confined Space Entry permit posted
	Tripod			Oxygen 19.5 23.5%
	Man Winch			Lower Explosive Level %
	Fall Arrest Unit			Toxic fumes/vapors Less than PEL
	Emerg Retrieval Line			No engulfing material in space
	Atmospheric Monitor			No hazardous chemicals or material

	Blower /Saddle / Trunks			Drained - Flushed
	Drop Light			Rescue Team Available on Site
	Communication Gear			Ventilation Established & Maintained
	Ladder			LOTO Electrical components in space
	Hand held radios			LOTO Mechanical Components in space
	Portable Lighting			LOTO All pipes to and from space

Other Hazards

Flammable Atmospheres
A flammable atmosphere generally arises from enriched oxygen atmospheres, vaporization of flammable liquids, byproducts of work, chemical reactions, concentrations of combustible dusts, and desorption of chemical from inner surfaces of the confined space.

An atmosphere becomes flammable when the ratio of oxygen to combustible material in the air is neither too rich nor too lean for combustion to occur. Combustible gases or vapors will accumulate when there is inadequate ventilation in areas such as a confined space.

Flammable gases such as acetylene, butane, propane, hydrogen, methane, natural or manufactured gases or vapors from liquid hydrocarbons can be trapped in confined spaces, and since many gases are heavier than air, they will seek lower levels as in pits, sewers, and various types of storage tanks and vessels. In a closed top tank, it should also be noted that lighter than air gases may rise and develop a flammable concentration if trapped above the opening.

The byproducts of work procedures can generate flammable or explosive conditions within a confined space. Specific kinds of work such as spray painting can result in the release of explosive gases or vapors. Welding in a confined space is a major cause of explosions in areas that contain combustible gas.

Chemical reactions forming flammable atmospheres occur when surfaces are initially exposed to the atmosphere, or when chemicals combine to form flammable gases. This condition arises when dilute sulfuric acid reacts with iron to form hydrogen or when calcium carbide makes contact with water to form acetylene.

Other examples of spontaneous chemical reactions that may produce explosions from small amounts of unstable compounds are acetylene-metal compounds, peroxides, and nitrates. In a dry state, these compounds have the potential to explode upon percussion or exposure to increased temperature.

Another class of chemical reactions that form flammable atmospheres arise from deposits of pyrophoric substances (carbon, ferrous oxide, ferrous sulfate, iron, etc.) that can be found in tanks used by the chemical and petroleum industry. These tanks containing flammable deposits will spontaneously ignite upon exposure to air.

Combustible dust concentrations are usually found during the process of loading, unloading, and conveying grain products, nitrated fertilizers, finely ground chemical products, and any other combustible material. High charges of static electricity, which rapidly accumulate during periods of relatively low humidity (below 50%) can cause certain substances to accumulate electrostatic charges of sufficient energy to produce sparks and ignite a flammable atmosphere.

These sparks may also cause explosions when the right air or oxygen to dust or gas mixture is present.

Toxic Atmospheres

The substances to be regarded as toxic in a confined space can cover the entire spectrum of gases, vapors, and finely-divided airborne dust in industry. The sources of toxic atmospheres encountered may arise from the following:

1. The manufacturing process (for example, in producing polyvinyl chloride, hydrogen chloride is used as well as vinyl chloride monomer, which is carcinogenic).
2. The product stored [removing decomposed organic material from a tank can liberate toxic substances, such as hydrogen sulfide (**H_2S**)].
3. The operation performed in the confined space (for example, welding or brazing with metals capable of producing toxic fumes).

During loading, unloading, formulation, and production, mechanical and/or human error may also produce toxic gases which are not part of the planned operation.

Carbon monoxide (**CO**) is a hazardous gas that may build up in a confined space. This odorless, colorless gas that has approximately the same density as air is formed from incomplete combustion of organic materials such as wood, coal, gas, oil, and gasoline; it can be formed from microbial decomposition of organic matter in sewers, silos, and fermentation tanks.

CO is an insidious toxic gas because of its poor warning properties. Early stages of CO intoxication are nausea and headache. CO may be fatal at as little as 1000 ppm or 10% in air, and is considered dangerous at 200 ppm or 2%, because it forms Carboxyhemoglobin in the blood, which prevents the distribution of oxygen in the body.
CO is a relatively abundant colorless, odorless gas.

Therefore, any untested atmosphere must be suspect. It must also be noted that a safe reading on a combustible gas indicator does not ensure that CO is not present. CO must be tested for specifically.

The formation of CO may result from chemical reactions or work activities, therefore fatalities due to CO poisoning are not confined to any particular industry. There have been fatal accidents in sewage treatment plants due to decomposition products and lack of ventilation in confined spaces.

Another area where CO results as a product of decomposition is in the formation of silo gas in grain storage elevators. In another area, the paint industry, varnish is manufactured by introducing the various ingredients into a kettle, and heating them in an inert atmosphere, usually town gas, which is a mixture of carbon dioxide and nitrogen.

In welding operations, oxides of nitrogen and ozone are gases of major toxicologic importance, and incomplete oxidation may occur and carbon monoxide can form as a byproduct.

Another poor work practice, which has led to fatalities, is the recirculation of diesel exhaust emissions. Increased CO levels can be prevented by strict control of the ventilation and the use of catalytic converters.

Procedures for Atmospheric Testing. - 1910.146 App B
OSHA Requirement

Sub-Part Title: General Environmental Controls

Atmospheric testing is required for two distinct purposes:
evaluation of the hazards of the permit space and verification that acceptable entry conditions for entry into that space exist.

(1) Evaluation testing. The atmosphere of a confined space should be analyzed using equipment of sufficient sensitivity and specificity to identify and evaluate any hazardous atmospheres that may exist or arise, so that appropriate permit entry procedures can be developed and acceptable entry conditions stipulated for that space.

Evaluation and interpretation of these data, and development of the entry procedure, should be done by, or reviewed by, a technically qualified professional (e.g., OSHA consultation service, or certified industrial hygienist, registered safety engineer, certified safety professional, certified marine chemist, etc.) based on evaluation of all serious hazards.

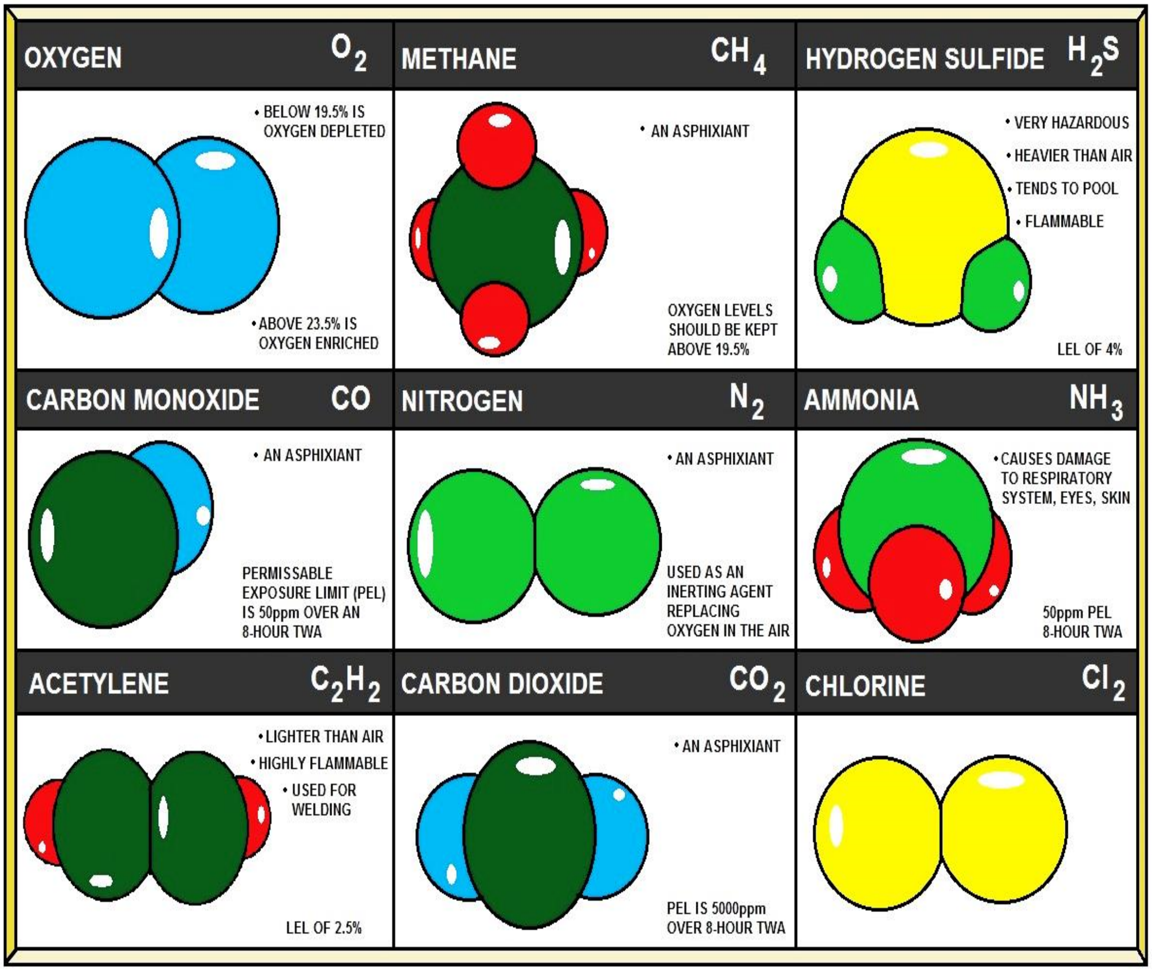
(2) Verification testing. The atmosphere of a permit space which may contain a hazardous atmosphere should be tested for residues of all contaminants identified by evaluation testing using permit specified equipment to determine that residual concentrations at the time of testing and entry are within the range of acceptable entry conditions. Results of testing (i.e., actual concentration, etc.) should be recorded on the permit in the space provided adjacent to the stipulated acceptable entry condition.

(3) Duration of testing. Measurement of values for each atmospheric parameter should be made for at least the minimum response time of the test instrument specified by the manufacturer.

(4) Testing stratified atmospheres. When monitoring for entries involving a descent into atmospheres that may be stratified, the atmospheric envelope should be tested a distance of approximately 4 feet (1.22 m) in the direction of travel and to each side. If a sampling probe is used, the entrant's rate of progress should be slowed to accommodate the sampling speed and detector response.

(5) Order of testing. A test for oxygen is performed first because most combustible gas meters are oxygen dependent and will not provide reliable readings in an oxygen deficient atmosphere.

Combustible gases are tested for next because the threat of fire or explosion is both more immediate and more life threatening, in most cases, than exposure to toxic gases and vapors. If tests for toxic gases and vapors are necessary, they are performed last.



COMMON GASES THAT CAN BE FOUND IN CONFINED SPACE

Atmospheric Testing Policy *Example*

Before entry, it is necessary to test the atmosphere in the confined space for oxygen levels, flammability, and/or any contaminants that have a potential to be present in that confined space. This testing must be done by a qualified person using equipment which has been approved for use in such areas.

The testing equipment itself should be checked to make sure it is working properly before using it. Follow the manufacturer's recommended procedures.

Testing of the confined spaces should be conducted throughout the entire portion of the space that workers will occupy during the entry. This testing shall be done without the use of ventilation systems.

Where the entry is vertical into the confined space, it is recommended that remote probes be used to measure the atmosphere at various levels. This is necessary because some gases and vapors are lighter or heavier than air and can accumulate at different levels in the confined space. Test outside the confined space to make sure the surrounding air is not contaminated.

Atmospheric conditions are considered unacceptable if oxygen levels are less than 19.5% or greater than 23.5%. Regulations define the following unacceptable levels of other hazards monitored:

1. A flammable gas, vapor or mist greater than 10% of its lower flammable limit (**LFL**). LFL means the minimum concentration of the flammable material which will ignite if an ignition source is present.

2. An airborne combustible dust at a concentration that obscures vision at a distance of five feet or less.

3. An atmospheric concentration of a substance greater than the allowed limit in the Material Safety Data Sheet for that substance.

If test results conclude that the atmospheric condition of the confined space is unacceptable, entry is prohibited until such conditions are brought into acceptable limits. This may be done by purging, cleaning and/or ventilating the space.

Purging refers to the method by which gases, vapors, or other airborne impurities are displaced from a confined space.

The confined space may also be made non-flammable, non-explosive or otherwise chemically non-reactive by displacing or diluting the original atmosphere with steam or gas that is non-reactive with respect to that space, a process referred to as "***inerting***".

Irritant (Corrosive) Atmospheres

Irritant or corrosive atmospheres can be divided into primary and secondary groups. The primary irritants exert no systemic toxic effects (effects on the entire body). Examples of primary irritants are chlorine, ozone, hydrochloric acid, hydrofluoric acid, sulfuric acid, nitrogen dioxide, ammonia, and sulfur dioxide. A secondary irritant is one that may produce systemic toxic effects in addition to surface irritation. Examples of secondary irritants include benzene, carbon tetrachloride, ethyl chloride, trichloroethane, trichloroethylene, and chloropropene.

Irritant gases vary widely among all areas of industrial activity. They can be found in plastics plants, chemical plants, the petroleum industry, tanneries, refrigeration industries, paint manufacturing, and mining operations. Prolonged exposure at irritant or corrosive concentrations in a confined space may produce little or no evidence of irritation. This may result in a general weakening of the defense reflexes from changes in sensitivity. The danger in this situation is that the worker is usually not aware of any increase in his/her exposure to toxic substances.

Asphyxiating Atmospheres

The normal atmosphere is composed approximately of 20.9% oxygen and 78.1% nitrogen, and 1% argon with small amounts of various other gases. Reduction of oxygen in a confined space may be the result of either consumption or displacement. The consumption of oxygen takes place during combustion of flammable substances, as in welding, heating, cutting, and brazing. A more subtle consumption of oxygen occurs during bacterial action, as in the fermentation process.

Oxygen may also be consumed during chemical reactions as in the formation of rust on the exposed surface of the confined space (iron oxide). The number of people working in a confined space and the amount of their physical activity will also influence the oxygen consumption rate. A second factor in oxygen deficiency is displacement by another gas. Examples of gases that are used to displace air, and therefore reduce the oxygen level are helium, argon, and nitrogen.

Carbon dioxide may also be used to displace air and can occur naturally in sewers, storage bins, wells, tunnels, wine vats, and grain elevators. Aside from the natural development of these gases, or their use in the chemical process, certain gases are also used as inerting agents to displace flammable substances and retard pyrophoric reactions.

Gases such as nitrogen, argon, helium, and carbon dioxide, are frequently referred to as non-toxic inert gases but have claimed many lives. The use of nitrogen to inert a confined space has claimed more lives than carbon dioxide. The total displacement of oxygen by nitrogen will cause immediate collapse and death.

Carbon Dioxide

Carbon dioxide and argon, with specific gravities greater than air, may lie in a tank or manhole for hours or days after opening. Since these gases are colorless and odorless, they pose an immediate hazard to health unless appropriate oxygen measurements and ventilation are adequately carried out.

Oxygen Deprivation
Oxygen deprivation is one form of asphyxiation. While it is desirable to maintain the atmospheric oxygen level at 21% by volume, the body can tolerate deviation from this ideal. When the oxygen level falls to 17%, the first sign of hypoxia is deterioration to night vision, which is not noticeable until a normal oxygen concentration is restored.

Physiologic effects are increased breathing volume and accelerated heartbeat. Between 14-16% physiologic effects are increased breathing volume, accelerated heartbeat, very poor muscular coordination, rapid fatigue, and intermittent respiration. Between 6-10% the effects are nausea, vomiting, inability to perform, and unconsciousness. Less than 6%, the effects are spasmodic breathing, convulsive movements, and death in minutes.

Mechanical Hazards
If activation of electrical or mechanical equipment would cause injury, each piece of equipment should be manually isolated to prevent inadvertent activation before workers enter or while they work in a confined space.

The interplay of hazards associated with a confined space, such as the potential of flammable vapors or gases being present, and the build-up of static charge due to mechanical cleaning, such as abrasive blasting, all influence the precautions which must be taken.

To prevent vapor leaks, flashbacks, and other hazards, workers should completely isolate the space. To completely isolate a confined space, the closing of valves is not sufficient. All pipes must be physically disconnected or isolation blanks bolted in place. Other special precautions must be taken in cases where flammable liquids or vapors may re-contaminate the confined space.

The pipes blanked or disconnected should be inspected and tested for leakage to check the effectiveness of the procedure. Other areas of concern are steam valves, pressure lines, and chemical transfer pipes. A less apparent hazard is the space referred to as a void, such as double walled vessels, which must be given special consideration in blanking off and inerting.

Thermal Effects
Four factors influence the interchange of heat between people and their environment. They are: (1) air temperature, (2) air velocity, (3) moisture contained in the air, and (4) radiant heat. Because of the nature and design of most confined spaces, moisture content and radiant heat are difficult to control.

As the body temperature rises progressively, workers will continue to function until the body temperature reaches approximately 102^{o}F. When this body temperature is exceeded, the workers are less efficient, and are prone to heat exhaustion, heat cramps, or heat stroke. In a cold environment, certain physiologic mechanisms come into play, which tend to limit heat loss and increase heat production.

The most severe strain in cold conditions is chilling of the extremities so that activity is restricted. Special precautions must be taken in cold environments to prevent frostbite, trench foot, and general hypothermia.

Protective Insulated Clothing

Protective insulated clothing for both hot and cold environments will add additional bulk to the worker and must be considered in allowing for movement in the confined space and exit time. Therefore, air temperature of the environment becomes an important consideration when evaluating working conditions in confined spaces.

Noise

Noise problems are usually intensified in confined spaces because the interior tends to cause sound to reverberate and thus expose the worker to higher sound levels than those found in an open environment.

This intensified noise increases the risk of hearing damage to workers, which could result in temporary or permanent loss of hearing. Noise in a confined space which may not be intense enough to cause hearing damage may still disrupt verbal communication with the emergency standby person on the exterior of the confined space. If the workers inside are not able to hear commands or danger signals due to excessive noise, the probability of severe accidents can increase.

Vibration

Whole body vibration may affect multiple body parts and organs, depending upon the vibration characteristics. Segmental vibration, unlike whole body vibration, appears to be more localized in creating injury to the fingers and hands of workers using tools, such as pneumatic hammers, rotary grinders or other hand tools which cause vibration.

Other Hazards

Some physical hazards cannot be eliminated because of the nature of the confined space or the work to be performed. These hazards include such items as scaffolding, surface residues, and structural hazards. The use of scaffolding in confined spaces has contributed too many accidents caused by workers or materials falling, improper use of guard rails, and lack of maintenance to insure worker safety.

The choice of material used for scaffolding depends upon the type of work to be performed, the calculated weight to be supported, and the surface on which the scaffolding is placed, as well as the substance previously stored in the confined space.

Surface residues in confined spaces can increase the already hazardous conditions of electrical shock, reaction of incompatible materials, liberation of toxic substances, and bodily injury due to slips and falls. Without protective clothing, additional hazards to health may arise due to surface residues.

Structural hazards within a confined space such as baffles in horizontal tanks, trays in vertical towers, bends in tunnels, overhead structural members, or scaffolding installed for maintenance constitute physical hazards, which are exacerbated by the physical surroundings. In dealing with structural hazards, workers must review and enforce safety precautions to assure safety.

Abbreviations:

PEL - permissible exposure limit: Average concentration that must not be exceeded during 8-hour work shift of a 40-hour workweek.

STEL - Short-term exposure limit: 15-minute exposure limit that must not be exceeded during the workday.

REL - Recommended exposure limit: Average concentration limit recommended for up to a 10-hour workday during a 40-hour workweek.

IDLH - Immediately dangerous to life or health: Maximum concentration from which person could escape (in event of respirator failure) without permanent or escape-impairing effects within 30 minutes.

Required Confined Space Equipment Policy *Example*

Air Testing Equipment
All air-testing equipment should be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction.

Oxygen Meters and Monitors
The oxygen content of the air in a confined space is the first and most important constituent to measure before entry is made. The acceptable range of oxygen is between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. This content is measured before flammability is tested because rich mixtures of flammable gases or vapors give erroneous measurement results.

For example, a mixture of 90 percent methane and 10 percent air will test nonflammable because there is not enough oxygen to support the combustion process in the flammability meters. This mixture will not support life and will soon become explosive if ventilation is provided to the space. Before entry, spaces must be ventilated until both oxygen content and flammability are acceptable.

Flammability Meters
Flammability meters are used to measure the amount of flammable vapors or gases in the atmosphere as a percent of the LEL/LFL. The oxygen content must be near 21 percent for results to be meaningful.

Toxic Air Contamination Testers
Tests for toxic contaminants must be specific for the target toxin. The instrument manufacturer should be consulted for interferences. Therefore, it is important to know the history of the confined space so proper tests can be performed. Part of hazard assessment is to identify all possible contaminants that could be in the confined space.

Protective Devices

Fall-Protection Equipment
Fall-protection equipment for confined spaces should be the chest-waist harness type to minimize injuries from uncontrolled movements when it arrests a worker's fall. This type of harness also permits easier retrieval from a confined space than a waist belt. Adjustable lanyards should be used to limit free fall to two feet before arrest.

Respirators
An industrial hygienist should select respirators on the basis of his or her evaluation of possible confined-space hazards. NIOSH-approved respirators should be identified in the approved procedure required by the confined-space entry permit. It is important to note that air-purifying respirators cannot be used in an oxygen deficient atmosphere.

Lockout/Tagout Devices
Lockout/tagout devices permit employees to work safely on de-energized equipment without fear that the devices will be accidentally removed. Lock and tag devices are required to withstand a 50-pound pull without failure.

Devices used to block or restrain stored mechanical energy devices must be engineered for safety.

Safety Barriers
Safety barriers separate workers from hazards that cannot reasonably be eliminated by other engineering controls.

Required barriers will be identified in the approved confined-space entry procedure.

Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters
Ground fault circuit interrupter must be used for all portable electrical tools and equipment in confined spaces because most workers will be in contact with grounded surroundings.

Emergency Response Equipment

Fire Extinguishers
"***Hot work***" inside a confined space requires that an approved fire extinguisher and a person trained in its use be stationed in the confined space or in a suitable vantage point where he or she could effectively suppress any fire that might result from the work.

First Aid Equipment
Blankets, first-aid kit, Stokes stretchers, and any other equipment that may be needed for first-response treatment must be available just outside the confined space. Medical and safety professionals should select equipment on the basis of their evaluations of the potential hazards in the confined space.

Retrieval Equipment
A tripod or another suitable anchorage, hoisting device, harnesses, wristlets, ropes, and any other equipment that may be needed to make a rescue must be identified in the confined-space safe-entry procedures.

It is important that this equipment be available for immediate use. Harnesses and retrieval ropes must be worn by entrants unless they would increase hazards to the entrants or impede their rescue.

Respiratory Protection Section

General
In the Respiratory Protection program, hazard assessment and selection of proper respiratory PPE is conducted in the same manner as for other types of PPE. In the control of those occupational diseases caused by breathing air contaminated with harmful dusts, fogs, fumes, mists, gases, smokes, sprays, or vapors, the primary objective shall be to prevent atmospheric contamination.

This shall be accomplished as far as feasible by accepted engineering control measures (for example, enclosure or confinement of the operation, general and local ventilation, and substitution of less toxic materials). When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used.
References: OSHA Standards *Respiratory Protection* (**29 CFR 1910.134**)

Why Respirators Are Needed
Respirators protect against the inhalation of dangerous substances (vapors, fumes, dust, gases). They can also provide a separate air supply in a very hazardous situation.

Some of the health hazards that respirators prevent include
- *Lung damage*
- *Respiratory diseases*
- *Cancer and other illnesses.*

Respiratory Protection Responsibilities
The employer is responsible for:
- Providing training in the use and care of respirators.
- Ensuring that equipment is adequate, sanitary, and reliable.
- Allowing employees to leave area if ill, for breaks, and to obtain parts.
- Fit testing.
- Providing annual medical evaluations.
- Providing a powered air-purifying respirator (**PAPR**) if an employee cannot wear a tight-fitting respirator.

The employee is responsible for:
- Properly using respirators.
- Maintaining respirator properly.
- Reporting malfunctions.
- Reporting medical changes.

Selection of Respiratory Protection
When choosing the correct respiratory protection for your work environment, it is important to consider:
- Identification of the substance or substances for which respiratory protection is necessary
- A substance's material safety data sheet (**SDS**) (it will state which type of respirator is most effective for the substance)

- Activities of the workers
- Hazards of each substance and its properties
- Maximum levels of air contamination expected
- Probability of oxygen deficiency
- Period of time workers will need to use the respiratory protection devices
- Capabilities and physical limitations of the device used

Types of Respirators The following is a description of different types of respirators.
Commonly Used Respirators (*Air Purifying*)

- **Disposable Dust** masks are worn over the nose and mouth to protect the respiratory system from certain nuisance dusts, mists, etc. They can only provide protection against particular contaminants as specified by the manufacturer (e.g., general dust, fiberglass, etc.). These dust masks cannot be fit tested, and are generally single use. They are not generally recognized as proper respiratory protection and may not be worn if a potential for overexposure exists. They are not included in most companies' Respiratory Protection Programs.
- **Half-Face Respirators** with interchangeable filter cartridges can protect the respiratory system from hazardous dusts, fumes, mists, etc. They can only provide protection against certain contaminants up to limited concentrations specified by the manufacturer for the particular cartridge type used (e.g., toluene, acetone). These generally operate under negative pressure within the respirator which is created by the wearer's breathing through the filter cartridges. As the protection is only gained if there is a proper seal of the respirator face piece, this type requires fit testing prior to respirator assignment and a fit check prior to each use.
- **Full-Face Respirators** operate under the same principle and requirements as the half-face type, however, they offer a better facepiece fit and also protect the wearer's eyes from particularly irritating gases or vapors.
- **Full-face, helmet or hood type powered air purifying respirators** (**PAPRs**) operate under positive pressure inside the facepiece using a battery operated motor blower assembly to force air through a filter cartridge into the wearer's breathing zone. Use of these respirators is also subject to the manufacturers' guidelines.

Less Commonly Used Types Respirators (Air Supplying)

- **Air-Line Respirators** supply clean air through a small diameter hose from a compressor or compressed air cylinders. The wearer must be attached to the hose at all times, which limits mobility. Use of these respirators is subject to the manufacturers' guidelines.
- **Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus** (**SCBA**) respirators supply clean air from a compressed air tank carried on the back of the wearer. These types of respirators are highly mobile and are used primarily for emergency response or rescue work, since only a limited amount of air can be supplied by a single tank, generally 20-60 minutes. Units must be thoroughly inspected on a monthly basis and written records must be kept of all inspections, operator training, etc. Use of these respirators is subject to the manufacturer's guidelines

Basic Types of Respirators

Air-purifying or filtering respirators. Such respirators are used when there is enough oxygen (at least 19.5 percent) and contaminants are present below IDLH level. The respirator filters out or chemically "**scrubs**" contaminants, usually with a replaceable filter. Use color-coded filter cartridges or canisters for different types of contaminants. It's important to select the right filter for the situation.

Air-supplying respirators. These respirators are required when air-purifying respirators aren't effective. Air-purifying respirators are not sufficient in the following settings:

- When there is not enough oxygen.
- Confined spaces.
- When contaminants cannot be filtered out.
- When contaminants are at or above IDLH level.

Different kinds of air-supplying respirators include

- Those connected by hose to stationary air supply (air line)
- Portable tank self-contained breathing apparatus (**SCBA**).


The Importance of Correct Fit

Even a tiny gap between the respirator and the face can allow contaminants to enter. Respirators should be comfortable and properly fitted. Proper fit includes:

- **Secure but not too tight**
- **No slipping or pinching**
- **Allowance for head movement and speech**

An OSHA-accepted qualitative fit test or quantitative fit test must be performed prior to an employee using any tight-fitting respirator.

Tight-fitting respirators must be seal checked before each use by using positive- or negative-pressure check procedures or the manufacturer's instructions.

Respirator Filters/Cartridges
For protection against gases and vapors, the cartridges used for air-purifying respirators must be either equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (**ESLI**), certified by NIOSH for the contaminant, or a cartridge change schedule has to be established.

For protection against particulates, there are nine classes of filters (three levels of filter efficiency, each with three categories of resistance to filter efficiency degradation). Levels of filter efficiency are 95 percent, 99 percent, and 99.97 percent. Categories of resistance to filter efficiency degradation are labeled N, R, and P.

Protection Factors
The protection factor of a respirator is an expression of performance based on the ratio of two concentrations: The contaminant concentration outside the respirator to the contaminant concentration inside the respirator.

Each class of respirator is also given an assigned protection factor (**APF**). The APF is a measure of the minimum anticipated level of respiratory protection that a properly functioning respirator or class of respirators would provide to a percentage of properly fitted and trained users.

When a contaminant concentration is known, the APF can be used to estimate the concentration inside a particular type of respirator worn by a user.

Who Cannot Wear a Respirator?

Respirator fit is essential. Employees must have a medical checkup to make sure they can wear respirators safely. Generally, respirators cannot be worn when a person:

- **Wears glasses or personal protective equipment that interferes with the seal of the face piece to the face of the user.**
- **Has facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the face piece and the face or interferes with valve function.**
- **Has a breathing problem, such as asthma.**
- **Has a heart condition.**
- **Is heat sensitive.**

Sometimes a person's facial features will not permit a good fit. Check with the supervisor or medical department if the fit is a problem.

Checking for Damage

Before each use, make sure there are no holes, tears, etc., in the respirator. Rubber parts can wear out and should be checked very carefully every time a respirator is used. Replace worn and damaged parts when necessary. Make sure air and oxygen cylinders are fully charged.

Staying Prepared for Respirator Use

Respirators are bulky and awkward, so getting used to them takes practice. Possible problems with wearing respirators may include heat exhaustion or heat stroke. Be alert for symptoms, use the "buddy system," and wear a lifeline or harness when necessary. Drink plenty of fluids and take frequent breaks.

Poor maneuverability. Practice with respirators in narrow passages, on ladders, etc., if your use of respirators may be in these types of conditions.

Using up the air supply. When a SCBA is in use, keep checking the gauges and listening for alarms; be ready to leave the area immediately if there is a problem.

Panic. Remember the importance of staying calm in a hot, stressful, or awkward situation.

Cleaning Respirators

Respirators should be cleaned and disinfected after every use. Check the respirator for damage before putting it away; look for holes, cracks, deterioration, dented cartridges, etc. If any damage is found, it should be reported to a supervisor. Respirators stored for emergency use must be inspected monthly when not in use, as well as after each use.

Respirators should be stored away from light, heat, cold, chemicals, and dust.

Store respirators in a "*normal*" (natural, undistorted) position to hold their shape. Do not allow respirators to get crushed, folded, or twisted.

OSHA Overview

OSHA requires that supervisors consult with employees and encourage their participation in the process safety management plan. In fact, managers must have a written plan of action for employee participation in process safety management. Employee participation is critical because…

- **Employees know a lot about the process which they work upon**
- **They play key roles in making sure that process operation is conducted safely.**

Operating Procedures
Managers must furnish written operating procedures that clearly explain how to perform each covered process safely. The procedures must be accurate and must be written in language that people can understand. Avoid technical jargon and, if necessary, supply translations.

Operating procedures must include at least the following:

- Operating steps for initial startup, normal and temporary operations, emergency shutdown (including when it's called for and who does it), emergency operations, normal shutdown, and startup after a turnaround or an emergency shutdown
- Operating limits, including what happens if workers don't conform to operating limits and how to avoid or correct such problems
- Safety and health considerations, such as chemical or other hazards, precautions to prevent exposure, quality and inventory control for chemicals, and what to do if an employee is exposed to a hazardous substance
- Safety systems and their functions, including up-to-date operating procedures and safe work practices.

Contractor Employees
Process safety training and safety programs are also required for contractors who work on-site. Managers must check out the safety performance and programs of any contractors being considered for maintenance, repair, turnaround, major renovation, or specialty work on or around a process covered by the regulation.

When a contractor is hired, the manager must provide the contractor with information on the hazards of the process the contractor will work on. To further ensure contractor safety, managers must also

- ❖ provide the contractor with information on safe work practices for the process they're involved with and tell them what to do in an emergency
- ❖ keep a log of contractor employees' injuries or illnesses related to their work in process areas
- ❖ evaluate the contractor's performance to make sure they're living up to their safety obligations set by the standard.

The Contractor has Responsibilities, too

- Document that employees are trained to recognize hazards and to follow safe work practices on the job
- Make sure that the contractor's employees understand potential job-related hazards, are trained to work safely, and follow the safety rules of the facility in which they're working.

Written Respiratory Protection Program

This paragraph requires the employer to develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required worksite-specific procedures and elements for required respirator use. The program must be administered by a suitably trained program administrator. In addition, certain program elements may be required for voluntary use to prevent potential hazards associated with the use of the respirator.

The Small Entity Compliance Guide contains criteria for the selection of a program administrator and a sample program that meets the requirements of this paragraph. Copies of the Small Entity Compliance Guide will be available on or about April 8, 1998 from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's Office of Publications, Room N 3101, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20210 (202-219-4667).

(c)(1) In any workplace where respirators are necessary to protect the health of the employee or whenever respirators are required by the employer, the employer shall establish and implement a written respiratory protection program with worksite-specific procedures. The program shall be updated as necessary to reflect those changes in workplace conditions that affect respirator use. The employer shall include in the program the following provisions of this section, as applicable:

(c)(1)(i) Procedures for selecting respirators for use in the workplace;

(c)(1)(ii) Medical evaluations of employees required to use respirators;

(c)(1)(iii) Fit testing procedures for tight-fitting respirators;

(c)(1)(iv) Procedures for proper use of respirators in routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations;

(c)(1)(v) Procedures and schedules for cleaning, disinfecting, storing, inspecting, repairing, discarding, and otherwise maintaining respirators;

(c)(1)(vi) Procedures to ensure adequate air quality, quantity, and flow of breathing air for atmosphere-supplying respirators;

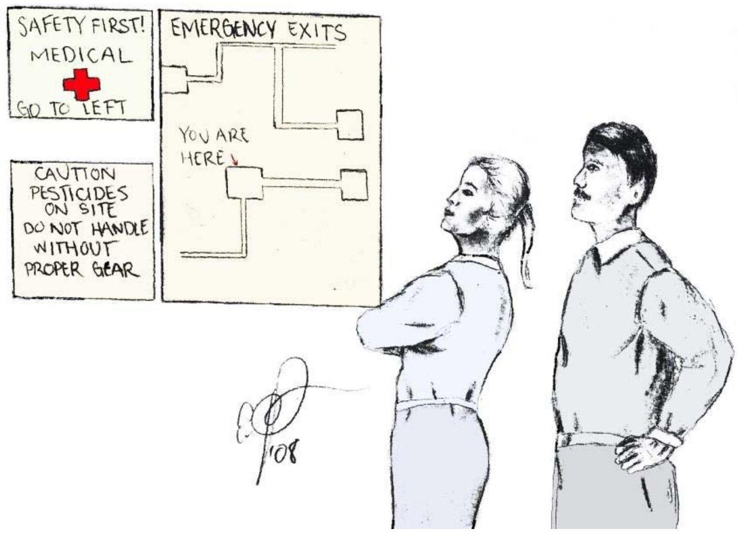
(c)(1)(vii) Training of employees in the respiratory hazards to which they are potentially exposed during routine and emergency situations;

Example of RP Employee Responsibilities

All Employees shall follow the requirements of the Respiratory Protection Program.

Management
- Implement the requirements of this program.
- Provide a selection of respirators as required.
- Enforce all provisions of this program.
- Appoint a ***Specific Designated*** individual to conduct the respiratory protection program.

Administrative Department
- Review sanitation/storage procedures.
- Ensure respirators are properly stored, inspected and maintained.
- Monitor compliance for this program.
- Provide training for affected Employees.
- Review compliance and ensure monthly inspection of all respirators.
- Provide respirator fit testing.



Designated-Occupational Health Care Provider
- Conducts medical aspects of program.

Program Administrator
Each Department will designate a program administrator who is qualified by appropriate training or experience that is commensurate with the complexity of the program to administer or oversee the respiratory protection program and conduct the required evaluations of program effectiveness.

Voluntary Use of Respirators is Prohibited
OSHA requires that voluntary use of respirators, when not required by the Employer, must be controlled as strictly as under required circumstances. To prevent violations of the Respiratory Protection Standard, Employees are not allowed voluntary use of their own or Employer supplied respirators of any type.

Exception: Employees whose only use of respirators involves the voluntary use of filtering (non-sealing) face pieces (dust masks).

Respiratory Protection Program Statement *Example*

Facility ____________________________________

Policy Statement
A respiratory protection program is hereby established so as to coordinate the use and maintenance or respiratory protective equipment as determined necessary to:

1. Reduce Personnel exposure to toxic chemical agents, harmful dusts, mist and fumes and

2. Allow trained personnel to work safely in hazardous environments, such as welding, oxygen deficient atmospheres, toxic atmospheres, etc.

Designation of Program Administrator
Management has designated ____________________________________
to be responsible for the respiratory protection program at this facility. He/she has been delegated authority by Management to make decisions and implement changes in the respirator program anywhere in this facility.
The following responsibilities apply:

1. Supervision of respirator selection process and procedures
2. Establishment of respiratory protection training sessions
3. Establishment of a continuing program of cleaning and inspections
4. Establishment of medical screening program
5. Establishment of issuing procedures
6. Establishment of periodic inspections
7. Continuing evaluation of all aspects of the respiratory protection program to assure continued effectiveness
8. Establishment of annual fit tests procedures

Any questions or problems concerning respirators or their use should be directed to the Program Administrator

_______________________________________ _____________
Facility Manager Date

Program Evaluation

Evaluations of the workplace are necessary to ensure that the written respiratory protection program is being properly implemented; this includes consulting with employees to ensure that they are using the respirators properly. Evaluations shall be conducted as necessary to ensure that the provisions of the current written program are being effectively implemented and that it continues to be effective.

Program evaluation will include discussions with employees required to use respirators to assess the employees' views on program effectiveness and to identify any problems.

Any problems that are identified during this assessment shall be corrected. Factors to be assessed include, but are not limited to:

- Respirator fit (including the ability to use the respirator without interfering with effective workplace performance);
- Appropriate respirator selection for the hazards to which the employee is exposed;
- Proper respirator use under the workplace conditions the employee encounters; and
- Proper respirator maintenance.

RP Recordkeeping

The employer will retain written information regarding medical evaluations, fit testing, and the respiratory protection program.

This information will facilitate employee involvement in the respiratory protection program, assist the Employer in auditing the adequacy of the program, and provide a record for compliance determinations by OSHA.

Training and Information

Effective training for employees who are required to use respirators is essential. The training must be comprehensive, understandable, and recur annually and more often if necessary. Training will be provided prior to requiring the employee to use a respirator in the workplace.

The training shall ensure that each employee can demonstrate knowledge of at least the following:

- Why the respirator is necessary and how improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect of the respirator
- Limitations and capabilities of the respirator
- How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including situations in which the respirator malfunctions
- How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator
- Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator
- How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators
- The general requirements of this program

Retraining shall be conducted annually and when:

- changes in the workplace or the type of respirator render previous training obsolete
- inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the respirator indicate that the employee has not retained the requisite understanding or skill
- other situation arises in which retraining appears necessary to ensure safe respirator use

Training is divided into the following sections:

Classroom Instruction

1. Overview of the Employer’s Respiratory Protection Program & OSHA Standard.
2. Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures.
3. Respirator Selection.
4. Respirator Operation and Use.
5. Why the respirator is necessary.
6. How improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect.
7. Limitations and capabilities of the respirator.
8. How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including respirator malfunctions.
9. How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator.
10. Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator.
11. How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators.
12. Change out schedule and procedure for air purifying respirators.

Respiratory Protection Program
Training Certificate *Example*

Name:____

Department: __________________________ **Date:** ___________

I have received Training on the Respiratory Protection Program. The Training included the following:

Classroom Training

- ✓ Overview of the Company Respiratory Protection Program
- ✓ Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures
- ✓ Respirator Selection
- ✓ Respirator Operation and Use
- ✓ Why the respirator is necessary
- ✓ How improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect.
- ✓ Limitations and capabilities of the respirator.
- ✓ How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including respirator malfunctions
- ✓ How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator.
- ✓ Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator.
- ✓ How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators.
- ✓ Respirator filter & cartridge change out schedule
- ✓ The general requirements of this program

Hands-on Training

- ✓ Respirator Inspection
- ✓ Respirator cleaning and sanitizing
- ✓ Fit Check
- ✓ Record Keeping
- ✓ Respirator Storage
- ✓ Emergencies

____

Employee Signature

____

Trainer's Signature

Fit Testing   Hands-On Respirator Training

1. **Respirator Inspection**
2. **Respirator cleaning and sanitizing**
3. **Record Keeping**
4. **Respirator Storage**
5. **Respirator Fit Check**
6. **Emergencies**

Basic Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures

1. Only authorized and trained employees may use respirators. Those employees may use only the respirator that they have been trained on and properly fitted to use.
2. Only physically qualified employees may be trained and authorized to use respirators. A pre-authorization and annual certification by a qualified physician will be required and maintained. Any changes in an Employee's health or physical characteristics will be reported to the Occupational Health Department and will be evaluated by a qualified physician.
3. Only the proper prescribed respirator or SCBA may be used for the job or work environment. Air cleansing respirators may be worn in work environments when oxygen levels are between 19.5 percent to 23.5 percent and when the appropriate air cleansing canister, as determined by the Manufacturer and approved by NIOSH or MESA, for the known hazardous substance is used. SCBAs will be worn in oxygen deficient and oxygen rich environments (below 19.5 percent or above 23.5 percent oxygen).
4. Employees working in environments where a sudden release of a hazardous substance is likely will wear an appropriate respirator for that hazardous substance (example: employees working in an ammonia compressor room will have an ammonia APR respirator on their person.).
5. Only SCBAs will be used in oxygen deficient environments, environments with an unknown hazardous substance or unknown quantity of a known hazardous substance or any environment that is determined "***Immediately Dangerous to Life or Health***" (IDLH).
6. Employees with respirators loaned on "permanent check out" will be responsible for the sanitation, proper storage and security. Respirators damaged by normal wear will be repaired or replaced by the employer when returned.
7. The last employee using a respirator and/or SCBA that are available for general use will be responsible for proper storage and sanitation. Monthly and after each use, all respirators will be inspected with documentation to assure its availability for use.
8. All respirators will be located in a clean, convenient and sanitary location.
9. In the event that employees must enter a confined space, work in environments with hazardous substances that would be dangerous to life or health should an RPE fail (a SCBA is required in this environment), and/or conduct a HAZMAT entry, a "**buddy system**" detail will be used with a safety watchman with constant voice, visual or signal line communication. Employees will follow the established emergency response program and/or confined space entry program when applicable.
10. Management will establish and maintain surveillance of jobs and work place conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress to maintain the proper procedures and to provide the necessary RPE.

11. Management will establish and maintain safe operation procedures for the safe use of RPE with strict enforcement and disciplinary action for failure to follow all general and specific safety rules. Standard operation procedures for general RPE use will be maintained as an attachment to the respiratory protection program and standard operation procedures for RPE use under emergency response situations will be maintained as an attachment to the emergency response program.

Selection of Respirators
The employer is responsible for and needs to have evaluated the respiratory hazard(s) in each workplace, identified relevant workplace and user factors and have based respirator selection on these factors. Also included are estimates of employee exposures to respiratory hazard(s) and an identification of the contaminant's chemical state and physical form.

This selection has included appropriate protective respirators for use in IDLH atmospheres, and has limited the selection and use of air-purifying respirators. All selected respirators are NIOSH-certified.

Filter Classifications - These classifications are marked on the filter or filter package
N-Series: Not Oil Resistant
- Approved for non-oil particulate contaminants
- Examples: dust, fumes, mists not containing oil

R-Series: Oil Resistant
- Approved for all particulate contaminants, including those containing oil
- Examples: dusts, mists, fumes
- Time restriction of 8 hours when oils are present

P-Series: Oil Proof
- Approved for all particulate contaminants including those containing oil
- Examples: dust, fumes, mists
- See Manufacturer's time use restrictions on packaging

Respirators for IDLH Atmospheres
- The following respirators will be used in IDLH atmospheres:
- A full face piece pressure demand SCBA certified by NIOSH for a minimum service life of thirty minutes, or
- A combination full face piece pressure demand supplied-air respirator (**SAR**) with auxiliary self-contained air supply.
- Respirators provided only for escape from IDLH atmospheres shall be NIOSH-certified for escape from the atmosphere in which they will be used.

Respirators for Atmospheres that are not for IDLH
The respirators selected shall be adequate to protect the health of the employee and ensure compliance with all other OSHA statutory and regulatory requirements, under routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations. The respirator selected shall be appropriate for the chemical state and physical form of the contaminant.

Identification of Filters & Cartridges

All filters and cartridges shall be labeled and color coded with the NIOSH approval label; the label is not to be removed and must remain legible. A change out schedule for filters and canisters has been developed to ensure the elements of the respirators remain effective.

Respirator Filter & Canister Replacement
An important part of the Respiratory Protection Program includes identifying the useful life of canisters and filters used on air-purifying respirators. Each filter and canister shall be equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (**ESLI**) certified by NIOSH for the contaminant; or If there is no ESLI appropriate for conditions a change schedule for canisters and cartridges that is based on objective information or data that will ensure that canisters and cartridges are changed before the end of their service life.

It is unacceptable maintenance and storage (OSHA Violation).

Filter & Cartridge Change Schedule
Stock of spare filters and cartridges shall be maintained to allow immediate change when required or desired by the employee.

Cartridges shall be changed based on the most limiting factor below:
- Prior to expiration date
- Manufacturer's recommendations for the specific use and environment
- After each use
- When requested by employee
- When contaminate odor is detected
- When restriction to air flow has occurred as evidenced by increased effort by user to breathe normally
- Cartridges shall remain in their original sealed packages until needed for immediate use

Filters shall be changed on the most limiting factor below:
- Prior to expiration date
- Manufacturer's recommendations for the specific use and environment
- When requested by employee
- When contaminate odor is detected
- When restriction to air flow has occurred as evidenced by increased effort by user to breathe normally
- When discoloring of the filter media is evident
- Filters shall remain in their original sealed package until needed for immediate use.

Death trap example

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION PROGRAM CHECKLIST			PAGE 1 OF 1 PAGES		
DIVISION:	**SECTION:**	**SUPERVISOR:**	**DATE:**		

		YES	NO	NA
1	Is respiratory protection (RP) being worn in the section?			
2	Has air sampling been accomplished that mandates using RP?			
3	Where air sampling results greater than Occupational Exposure Limits? (If NO, why are you using a respirator?)			
4	Has a Hazard Assessment been generated concerning the task or process that placed the section on the RP Program?			
5	Have all processes that may warrant the use of RP been evaluated? (If NO, request an assessment from the Department Safety Analyst /Personnel Safety, unless the operation is emergency response).			
6	Have workers received physicals and been found medically qualified to wear RP?			
7	Is there documentation that workers were formally briefed on air sampling results and why RP is required?			
8	Is respiratory protection training and fit-testing documentation available on everyone who wears a respirator?			
9	Are RP wearers being fit-tested at least annually?			
10	Are section employees wearing RP voluntarily when conditions have not mandated their use?			
11	Are employees wearing contacts in hazardous atmospheres or using eye-wear that negates face to face piece seal?			
12	Do RP users have facial hair that negates face to face piece seal?			
13	Has a respirator inventory been compiled that list the type of respirator(s) used in the workplace? (Use Respirator Inventory Worksheet attach to this checklist)			
14	Has the Section Supervisor received formal RP training on OSHA, City Personnel Safety and Respiratory Protection Program requirements and his or her responsibilities?			
15	Does the section have written standard operating instructions governing the selection, fit-testing, use, cleaning, storage and maintenance of respirators?			
16	Is the Fire Department the only source being used to charge SCBA’s with compressed air?			
17	Are SCBA’s being inspected at least every 30 days?			

18	Does the section have on hand, applicable OSHA, CITY, and Section Respiratory Protection Program guidance documents?			
19	Are periodic audits of the section's RP program conducted with discrepancies tracked until closed out?			
20	Have program deficiencies been elevated to the Director and Department Safety Analyst?			

SURVEYED BY:	REVIEWED BY:

Respiratory Protection Schedule by Job and Working Condition

The employer needs to maintain a Respiratory Protection Schedule by Job and working condition. This schedule is provided to each authorized and trained employee.

The Schedule provides the following information:

1. Job/Working conditions.
2. Work location.
3. Hazards present.
4. Type of respirator or SCBA required.
5. Type of filter/canister required.
6. Location of respirator or SCBA.
7. Filter/Cartridge change out schedule.

The schedule will be reviewed and updated at least annually and whenever any changes are made in the work environments, machinery, equipment, or processes or if respirator different respirator models are introduced or existing models are removed.

Permanent respirator Schedule Assignments are:
Each person who engages in welding will have their own employer provided dust-mist-fume filter APR. This respirator will be worn during all welding operations.

Physical and Medical Qualifications
Records of medical evaluations must be retained and made available in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1020.

Medical Evaluation Required
Using a respirator may place a physiological burden on employees that varies with the type of respirator worn, the job and workplace conditions in which the respirator is used, and the medical status of the employee. The Employer is required to provide a medical evaluation to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator before the employee is fit tested or required to use the respirator in the workplace.

Medical Evaluation Procedures
The employee will be provided a medical questionnaire by the designated Occupational Health Care Provider.

Follow-up Medical Examination

The employer shall ensure that a follow-up medical examination is provided for an employee who gives a positive response to any question among questions in Part B of the questionnaire or whose initial medical examination demonstrates the need for a follow-up medical examination. The follow-up medical examination shall include any medical tests, consultations, or diagnostic procedures that the physician deems necessary to make a final determination.

Administration of the Medical Questionnaire and Examinations.
The medical questionnaire and examinations shall be administered confidentially during the employee's normal working hours or at a time and place convenient to the employee. The medical questionnaire shall be administered in a manner that ensures that the employee understands its content. The employer shall provide the employee with an opportunity to discuss the questionnaire and examination results with the Physician.

Supplemental Information for the Physician
The following information must be provided to the physician before the Physician makes a recommendation concerning an employee's ability to use a respirator.

- The type and weight of the respirator to be used by the employee
- The duration and frequency of respirator use (including use for rescue and escape)
- The expected physical work effort
- Additional protective clothing and equipment to be worn
- Temperature and humidity extremes that may be encountered
- Any supplemental information provided previously to the physician regarding an employee need not be provided for a subsequent medical evaluation if the information and the physician remain the same.

The employer has provided the physician with a copy of the written respiratory protection program and a copy of the OSHA Standard 1910.134

Acronyms
Qualitative fit test (QLFT) means a pass/fail fit test to assess the adequacy of respirator fit that relies on the individual's response to the test agent.

Quantitative fit test (QNFT) means an assessment of the adequacy of respirator fit by numerically measuring the amount of leakage into the respirator.

Medical Determination

In determining the employee's ability to use a respirator, the employer shall:

- Obtain a written recommendation regarding the employee's ability to use the respirator from the physician. The recommendation shall provide only the following information:
  - Any limitations on respirator use related to the medical condition of the employee, or relating to the workplace conditions in which the respirator will be used, including whether or not the employee is medically able to use the respirator.
  - The need, if any, for follow-up medical evaluations.
  - A statement that the Physician has provided the employee with a copy of the physician's written recommendation.
- If the respirator is a negative pressure respirator and the physician finds a medical condition that may place the employee's health at increased risk if the respirator is used, the employer shall provide an APR if the physician's medical evaluation finds that the employee can use such a respirator; if a subsequent medical evaluation finds that the employee is medically able to use a negative pressure respirator, then the employer is no longer required to provide an APR.

Additional Medical Evaluations
At a minimum, the employer shall provide additional medical evaluations that comply with the requirements of this section if:

- An employee reports medical signs or symptoms that are related to the ability to use a respirator
- A physician, supervisor, or the respirator program administrator informs the employer that an employee needs to be reevaluated
- Information from the respiratory protection program, including observations made during fit testing and program evaluation, indicates a need for employee reevaluation
- A change occurs in workplace conditions (e.g., physical work effort, protective clothing, and temperature) that may result in a substantial increase in the physiological burden placed on an employee.

Respirator Fit Testing (see Appendix A for more information)
Before an employee is required to use any respirator with a negative or positive pressure tight-fitting face piece, the employee must be fit tested with the same make, model, style, and size of respirator that will be used. The Employer shall ensure that an employee using a tight-fitting face piece respirator is fit tested prior to initial use of the respirator, whenever a different respirator face piece (size, style, model or make) is used, and at least annually thereafter.
The employer has established a record of the qualitative and quantitative fit tests administered to employees including:

- The name or identification of the employee tested
- Type of fit test performed
- Specific make, model, style, and size of respirator tested
- Date of test
- The pass/fail results for QLFTs or the fit factor and strip chart recording or other recording of the test results for QNFTs

Additional fit tests will be conducted whenever the employee reports, or the employer, physician, supervisor, or program administrator makes visual observations of, changes in the employee's physical condition that could affect respirator fit.

Such conditions include, but are not limited to, facial scarring, dental changes, cosmetic surgery, or an obvious change in body weight.

If after passing a QLFT or QNFT, the employee notifies the employer's program administrator, supervisor, or physician that the fit of the respirator is unacceptable, the employee shall be given a reasonable opportunity to select a different respirator face piece and to be retested.

Types of Fit Tests

The fit test shall be administered using an OSHA-accepted QLFT or QNFT protocol. The OSHA-accepted QLFT and QNFT protocols and procedures are contained in Appendix A of OSHA Standard 1910.134.

- QLFT may only be used to fit test negative pressure air-purifying respirators that must achieve a fit factor of 100 or less.
- If the fit factor, as determined through an OSHA-accepted QNFT protocol, is equal to or greater than 100 for tight-fitting half face pieces, or equal to or greater than 500 for tight-fitting full face pieces, the QNFT has been passed with that respirator.
- Fit testing of tight-fitting atmosphere-supplying respirators and tight-fitting powered air-purifying respirators shall be accomplished by performing quantitative or qualitative fit testing in the negative pressure mode, regardless of the mode of operation (negative or positive pressure) that is used for respiratory protection.
- Qualitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by temporarily converting the respirator user's actual face piece into a negative pressure respirator with appropriate filters, or by using an identical negative pressure air-purifying respirator face piece with the same sealing surfaces as a surrogate for the atmosphere-supplying or powered air-purifying respirator face piece.
- Quantitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by modifying the face piece to allow sampling inside the face piece in the breathing zone of the user, midway between the nose and mouth. This requirement shall be accomplished by installing a permanent sampling probe onto a surrogate face piece, or by using a sampling adapter designed to temporarily provide a means of sampling air from inside the face piece.
- Any modifications to the respirator face piece for fit testing shall be completely removed, and the face piece restored to NIOSH approved configuration, before that face piece can be used in the workplace.

Fit test records shall be retained for respirator users until the next fit test is administered. Written materials required to be retained shall be made available upon request to affected employees.

Respirator Operation and Use

Respirators will only be used following the respiratory protection safety procedures established in this program. The Operations and Use Manuals for each type of respirator will be maintained by the program administrator and be available to all qualified users.

Surveillance by the direct supervisor shall be maintained of work area conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress. When there is a change in work area conditions or degree of employee exposure or stress that may affect respirator effectiveness, the employer shall reevaluate the continued effectiveness of the respirator.

For continued protection of respirator users, the following general use rules apply:

- Users shall not remove respirators while in a hazardous environment
- Respirators are to be stored in sealed containers out of harmful atmospheres
- Store respirators away from heat and moisture
- Store respirators such that the sealing area does not become distorted or warped
- Store respirators such that the face piece is protected
- Face piece seal protection

The Employer does not permit respirators with tight-fitting face pieces to be worn by employees who have:

- Facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the face piece and the face or that interferes with valve function; or
- Any condition that interferes with the face-to-face piece seal or valve function.

If an employee wears corrective glasses or goggles or other personal protective equipment, the employer shall ensure that such equipment is worn in a manner that does not interfere with the seal of the face piece to the face of the user.

Continuing Effectiveness of Respirators

The employer shall ensure that employees leave the respirator use area for the following:

- To wash their faces and respirator face pieces as necessary to prevent eye or skin irritation associated with respirator use
- If they detect vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the face piece
- To replace the respirator or the filter, cartridge, or canister elements.

If the employee detects vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the face piece, the employer will replace or repair the respirator before allowing the employee to return to the work area.

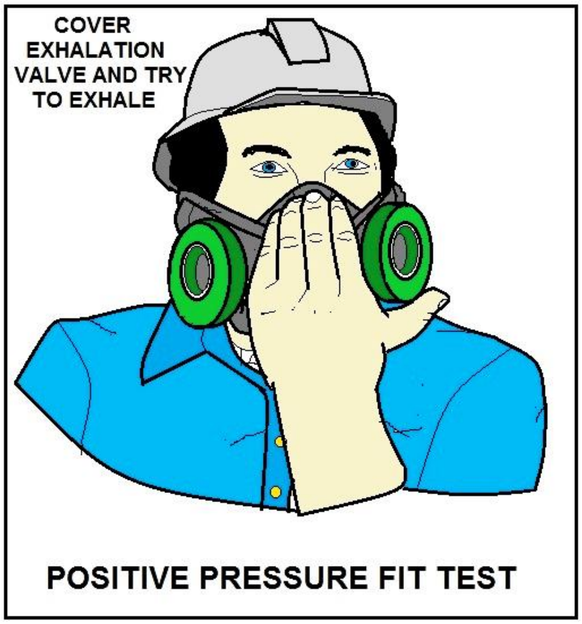
Procedures for IDLH atmospheres

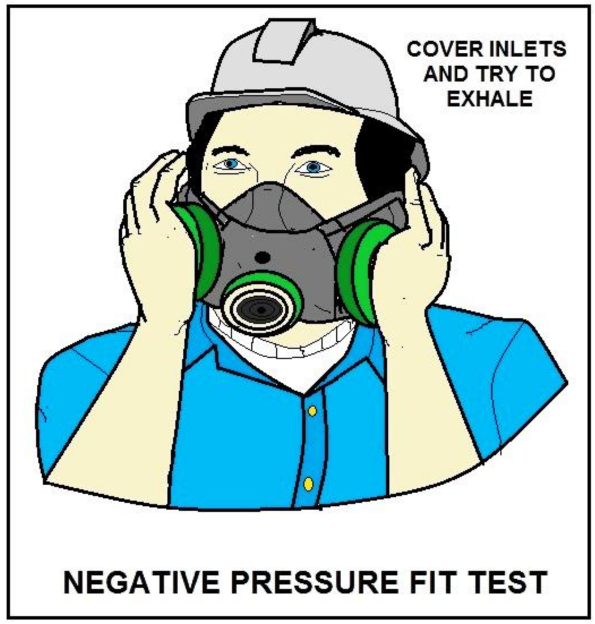
For all IDLH atmospheres, the Employer shall ensure that:

- One employee or, when needed, more than one employee is located outside the IDLH atmosphere
- Visual, voice, or signal line communication is maintained between the employee(s) in the IDLH atmosphere and the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere
- The employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere are trained and equipped to provide effective emergency rescue
- The employer or designee is notified before the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere enter the IDLH atmosphere to provide emergency rescue
- The employer or designee authorized to do so by the employer, once notified, provides necessary assistance appropriate to the situation

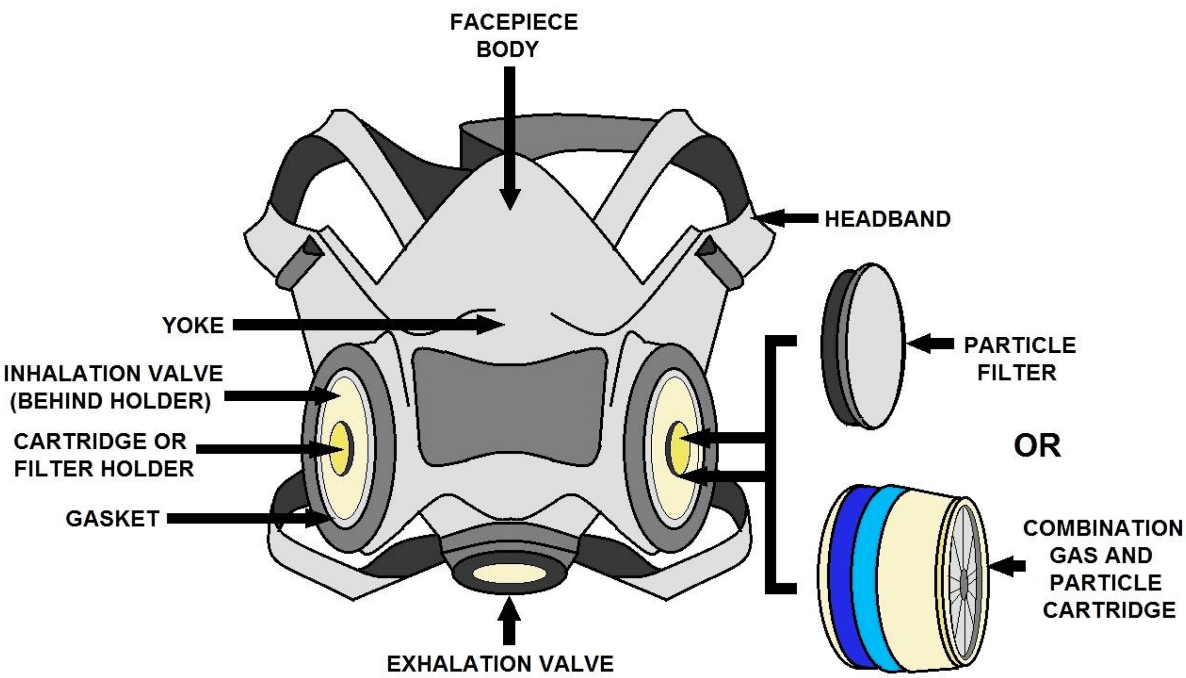
Employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmospheres will be equipped with:

- Pressure demand or other positive pressure SCBAs, or a pressure demand or other positive pressure supplied-air respirator with auxiliary SCBA; and either
- Appropriate retrieval equipment for removing the employee(s) who enter(s) these hazardous atmospheres where retrieval equipment would contribute to the rescue of the employee(s) and would not increase the overall risk resulting from entry; or
- Equivalent means for rescue where retrieval equipment is not required.





POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE PRESSURE FIT CHECKS



BASIC PARTS OF A HALF-FACEPIECE RESPIRATOR

RP Cleaning and Disinfecting

The employer shall provide each respirator user with a respirator that is clean, sanitary, and in good working order. The employer shall ensure that respirators are cleaned and disinfected using the Standard Operating Procedure SOP: Cleaning and Disinfecting.

The respirators shall be cleaned and disinfected when:

- Respirators issued for the exclusive use of an employee shall be cleaned and disinfected as often as necessary to be maintained in a sanitary condition.
- Respirators issued to more than one employee shall be cleaned and disinfected before being worn by different individuals.
- Respirators maintained for emergency use shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.
- Respirators used in fit testing and training shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.

Cleaning and Storage of respirators assigned to specific employees is the responsibility of that employee.

Respirator Inspection

All respirators/SCBAs, both available for "**General Use**" and those on "**Permanent Check-out**", will be inspected after each use and at least monthly. Should any defects be noted, the respirator/SCBA will be taken to the program Administrator. Damaged Respirators will be either repaired or replaced. The inspection of respirators loaned on "**Permanent Check-out**" is the responsibility of that trained employee.

Respirators shall be inspected as follows:

- All respirators used in routine situations shall be inspected before each use and during cleaning.
- All respirators maintained for use in emergency situations shall be inspected at least monthly and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be checked for proper function before and after each use.
- Emergency escape-only respirators shall be inspected before being carried into the workplace for use.

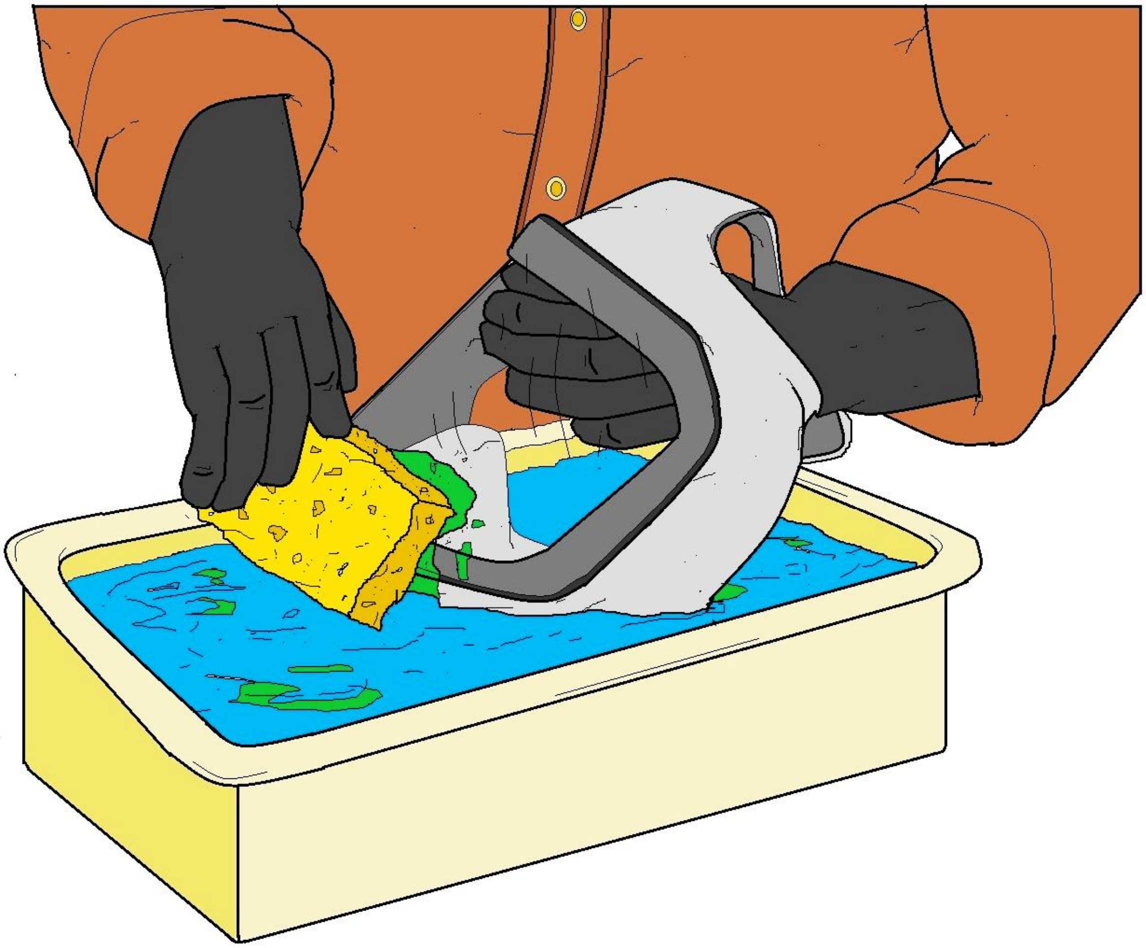
Respirator inspections include the following:

- A check of respirator function, tightness of connections, and the condition of the various parts including, but not limited to, the face piece, head straps, valves, connecting tube, and cartridges, canisters or filters
- Check of elastomeric parts for pliability and signs of deterioration.
- Self-contained breathing apparatus shall be inspected monthly. Air and oxygen cylinders shall be maintained in a fully charged state and shall be recharged when the pressure falls to 90% of the manufacturer's recommended pressure level. The employer shall determine that the regulator and warning devices function properly

For Emergency Use Respirators the additional requirements apply:

- Certify the respirator by documenting the date the inspection was performed, the name (or signature) of the person who made the inspection, the findings, required remedial action, and a serial number or other means of identifying the inspected respirator.
- Provide this information on a tag or label that is attached to the storage compartment for the respirator, is kept with the respirator, or is included in inspection reports stored

as paper or electronic files. This information shall be maintained until replaced following a subsequent certification.



CLEANING AN SCBA MASK

Excavation and Trenching Section
OSHA SUBPART P - 29 CFR 1926.650-652
COMPETENT PERSON TRAINING

PREFACE

Anyone who has done excavation work will tell you that once the first bucket of dirt is out of the ground, you never know what surprises await. Tales of unmarked utilities, unexpected rock and other nightmares are common. The greatest variable, however, is the type of excavation or trenching will be done and how to protect yourself for a cave-in.

The OSHA excavation standard was revised because excavating is the most dangerous of all construction operations. More workers are killed or seriously injured in and around excavations than in any other construction work. The second reason that OSHA revised the existing standard was to clarify the requirements. The revised standard makes the standard easier to understand.

The new standard uses performance criteria where ever possible. This added flexibly provides employers with options when classifying soil and when selecting methods to protect the employee from cave-ins.

Although the standard has been clarified and employers have options when meeting some of the requirements, employers must realize that the employee must be protected at all times.

Some employers have a mindset of not needing this training until they are caught by OSHA, which is equivalent to buying car insurance only after a car collision.

Excavation decisions will have to be made right from the planning stages through completion of the work.

Some sections of the standard require that documentation be kept. TLC will provide a sample of this type of documentation. In some situations professional engineers will be required to plan or design the excavation and/or method of protecting the worker (such as when an excavation exceeds 20 feet in depth).

The purpose of this session is to provide you with information about the OSHA excavation standard. This program is not designed or intended to provide participants with all the information, rules, regulations, and methods that they may need to know to perform all excavation work safety. Every plan involving excavation must be studied carefully to determine the specific hazards for each job.

Supporting Utilities is mandatory.

Major OSHA Violation. Do not operate equipment in unprotected trenches. This guy is trying hard to get to Heaven before his time is up.

Excavation Facts

Every year in the United States:

- ✓ **100 to 500 people are killed in an excavation cave-in.**
- ✓ **1000 to 5000 employees are seriously injured.**

The average worker that is killed by a cave-in is a 20 to 30 year old male who has had little or no training at all. Most deaths occur in trenches 5 feet to 15 feet in depth.

Cave-ins cause deaths and injuries by:

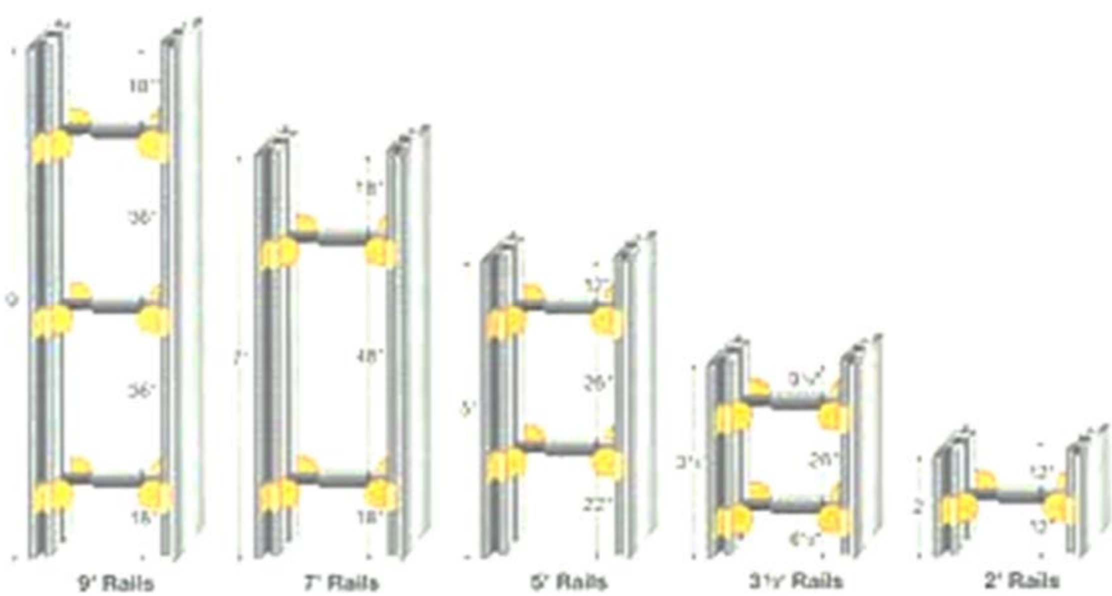
- ✓ **Suffocation**
- ✓ **Crushing**
- ✓ **Loss of circulation**
- ✓ **Falling objects**

One cubic foot (12" x 12" x 12") can weigh between 90 and 140 pounds.

Therefore, one cubic yard (3' x 3' x 3') weights as much as a backhoe (approximately 3000 pounds).

Subpart P applies to all open excavations in the earth's surface.

- ✓ **All trenches are excavations.**
- ✓ **All excavations are not trenches.**



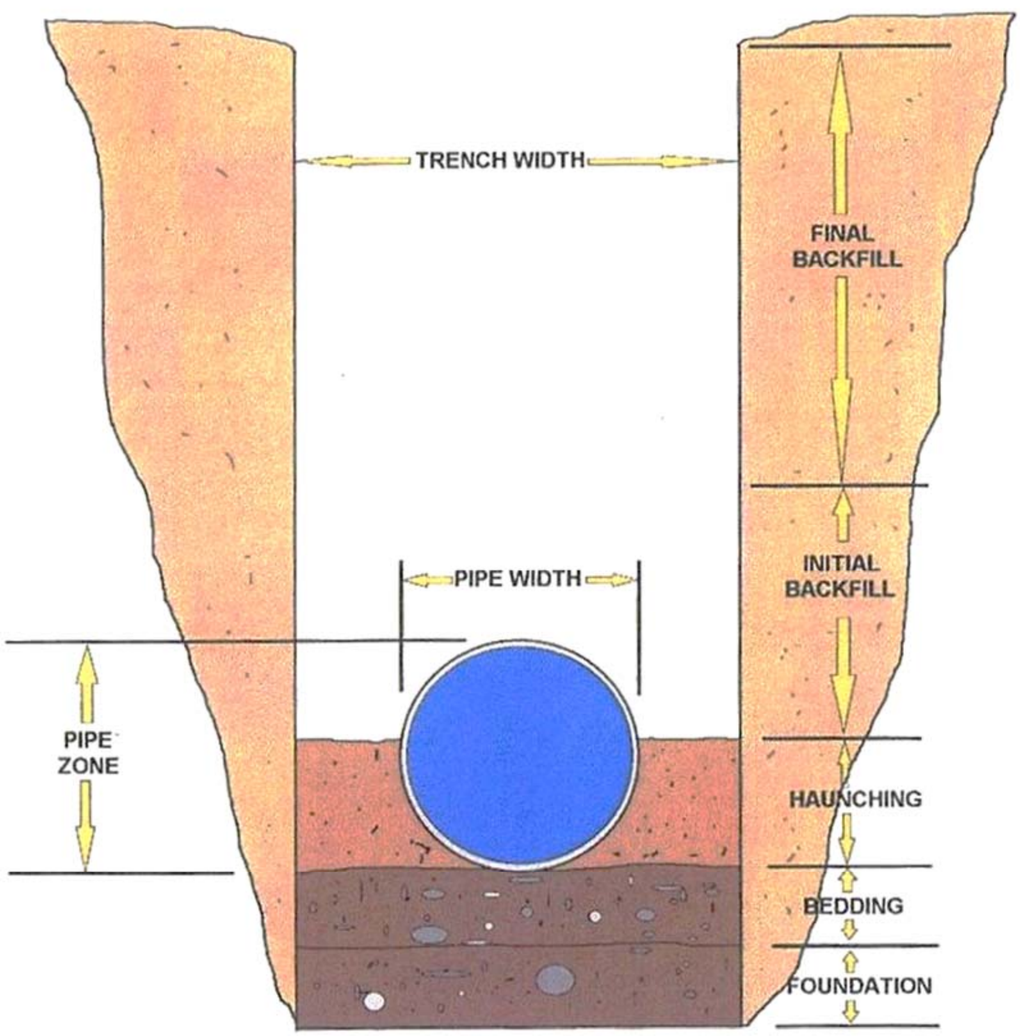
Notice that employees are wearing hard hats but no ladders are present. Spoil piles are too close to the hole. Almost looks like they over did the shores for the photograph but forgot all ladder.

Notice the ladder is partially properly tied down. Three rungs out and tied but not staked.

Competent Person Definition

Competent person means one who is capable of identifying existing hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees and has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

In order to be a "**Competent Person**" for the purpose of this standard, one must have specific training in and be knowledgeable about soils analysis, the use of protective systems and the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1926.650-652 Subpart P.



CROSS-SECTION OF A TRENCH

Competent Person Duties

- Performs daily inspections of the protective equipment, trench conditions, safety equipment and adjacent areas.
- Inspections shall be made prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift.
- Inspections shall be made after every rainstorm or other hazard occurrence.
- Knowledge of emergency contact methods, telephone or radio dispatch.
- Removes employees and all other personnel from hazardous conditions and makes all changes necessary to ensure their safety.
- Insures all employees have proper protective equipment, hard-hats, reflective vests, steel-toed boots, harnesses, eye protection, hearing protection and drinking water.
- Categorize soil conditions and conduct visual and manual tests.
- Determine the appropriate protection system to be used.
- Maintain on-site records of inspections and protective systems used.
- Maintain on-site Hazard Communication program, Material Safety Data Sheets and a Risk Management Plan, if necessary.
- Maintain current First Aid and CPR certifications. Maintain current Confined Space certification training.

Scope of Work

1. During excavation work a competent person shall be on the job site at all times when personnel are working within or around the excavation. This is necessary in order to monitor soil conditions, equipment and protection systems employed.
2. The estimated locations of utility installations, such as sewer, telephone, fuel, electric, water lines, or any other underground installation that reasonably may be expected to be encountered during excavation work, shall be determined prior to opening an excavation.
3. Adequate precautions shall be taken to protect employees working in excavations, against the hazards posed by water accumulation.
4. Employees shall be protected from excavated or other materials or equipment that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling into excavations. Protection shall be provided by placing and keeping such material or equipment at least two (2') feet from the edge of excavations.
5. A stairway, ladder, or ramp shall be used as a means of access or egress in trench excavations that are four (4') feet or more in depth. The ladder(s), stairway(s), or ramp shall be spaced so that no employee in the trench excavation is more than twenty five (25') feet from a means of egress. When ladder(s) are employed, the top of the ladder shall extend a minimum of three (3') feet above the ground and shall be properly secured.
6. When excavations are exposed to vehicular traffic, each employee shall wear a warning vest made with reflective material or highly visibility material. All personnel within the construction area shall wear a hard-hat at all times.
7. Employees shall not be permitted underneath loads handled by lifting or digging equipment. Employees shall be required to stand away from any vehicle being loaded or unloaded to avoid being struck by any spillage or falling materials.
8. In excavations where oxygen deficiency or gaseous conditions exist, or could be reasonably expected to exist, air in the excavation shall be tested.

9. Where oxygen deficiency (atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen) exists, the area must be continuously ventilated until the oxygen levels are above 19.5 percent.
10. Where a gaseous condition exists, the area shall be ventilated until the flammable gas concentration is below 20 percent of the lower flammable limit.
11. Whenever oxygen deficiency or gaseous conditions exist or could reasonably exist, the area shall be monitored continuously to assure that employees are protected.
12. Where the stability of adjoining buildings, walls or other structures are endangered by excavation operations, support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning shall be provided to ensure the stability of such structures for the protection of employees.
13. Sidewalks, pavement and appurtenant structures shall not be undermined unless a support system such as shoring is provided to protect employees from the possible collapse of such structures.

Always wait for the buried utilities to be marked before excavation begins. Believe it or not, this crew dug 9 feet deep before the Locator showed up and marked fiber optics in the same trench. Notice that the employees do not have hard hats, ladders, or any protective systems. Several major OSHA violations.

Personnel Protective Systems Introduction

Employees in excavations shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system, which shall be inspected by a competent person.

The use of protective systems is required for all excavations, in excess of five (5') feet, except when excavation is within stable rock.

Trench excavation less than five (5') feet in depth may not require the use of protective systems, unless there is evidence of a potential cave-in. The competent person shall determine the need for the use of protective systems when such conditions exist.

When sloping, benching or protective systems are required, refer to requirements in CFR 1926.652 (OSHA Construction Standards).

Whenever support systems, shield systems, or other protective systems are being used, a copy of the manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, and limitations sheet shall be in written form and maintained at the job site.

This poor soul is probably going to be a short timer here on earth. He is sitting on the sewer main in a bell shaped hole under a steel plate which cars are driving over. No protection at all. There was a ladder in the trench but was about 50 feet away.

Excavation Protection Systems Defined

The three basic protective systems for excavations and trenches are sloping and benching systems, shoring, and shields. The protective systems shall have the capacity to resist without failure all loads that are intended or could reasonably be expected to be applied to or transmitted to the system. Every employee in an excavation shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system.

Exceptions to Using Protective System:
- Excavations are made entirely in stable rock.
- Excavations are less than 5 feet deep and declared safe by a competent person.

Sloping and Benching Systems
There are four options for sloping**:**
- Slope to the angle required by the standard for Type C, which is the most unstable soil type.
- The table provided in Appendix B of the standard may be used to determine the maximum allowable angle (after determining the soil type).
- Tabulated data prepared by a registered professional engineer can be utilized.
- A registered professional engineer can design a sloping plan for a specific job.

Sloping and benching systems for excavations five (5) to twenty (20) feet in depth must be constructed under the instruction of a designated competent person. Sloping and benching systems for excavations greater than twenty (20) feet must be designed and stamped by a registered professional engineer. Sloping and benching specifications can be found in Appendix B of the OSHA Standard (Subpart P).

Shoring Systems
Shoring is another protective system or support system. Shoring utilizes a framework of vertical members (uprights), horizontal members (whales), and cross braces to support the sides of the excavation to prevent a cave-in. Metal hydraulic, mechanical or timber shoring are common examples.

This is my favorite photograph of all. Here are two men in a 30 foot deep trench without any protection or ladders. They are lucky to have a rope. Please do not work in this dangerous environment.

The different examples of shoring are found in the OSHA Standard under these appendices:
APPENDIX C - Timber Shoring for Trenches
APPENDIX D - Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring for Trenches
APPENDIX E - Alternatives to Timber Shoring

Shield Systems (Trench Boxes)
Shielding is the third method of providing a safe workplace. Unlike sloping and shoring, shielding does not prevent a cave-in. Shields are designed to withstand the soil forces caused by a cave-in and protect the employees inside the structure. Most shields consist of two flat, parallel metal walls that are held apart by metal cross braces.

Shielding design and construction is not covered in the OSHA Standards. Shields must be certified in design by a registered professional engineer and must have either a registration plate on the shield or registration papers from the manufacturer on file at the jobsite office. ***ANY REPAIRS OR MODIFICATIONS MUST BE APPROVED BY THE MANUFACTURER.***

Safety Precautions for Shield Systems
- Shields must not have any lateral movement when installed.
- Employees will be protected from cave-ins when entering and exiting the shield (examples - ladder within the shield or a properly sloped ramp at the end).
- Employees are not allowed in the shield during installation, removal, or during any vertical movement.

- Shields can be 2 ft. above the bottom of an excavation if they are designed to resist loads at the full depth and if there are no indications of caving under or behind the shield.
- The shield must extend at least 18 inches above the point where proper sloping begins (the height of the shield must be greater than the depth of the excavation).
- The open end of the shield must be protected from the exposed excavation wall. The wall must be sloped, shored, or shielded. Engineer designed end plates can be mounted on the ends of the shield to prevent cave-ins.

Personal Protective Equipment
It is **OSHA** policy for you to wear a hard hat, safety glasses, and work boots on the jobsite. Because of the hazards involved with excavations, other personal protective equipment may be necessary, depending on the potential hazards present (examples-goggles, gloves, and respiratory equipment).

Excavation & Trenching Guidelines

This section outlines procedures and guidelines for the protection of employees working in and around excavations and trenches. This section requires compliance with OSHA Standards described in Subpart P (**CFR 1926.650**) for the construction industry.

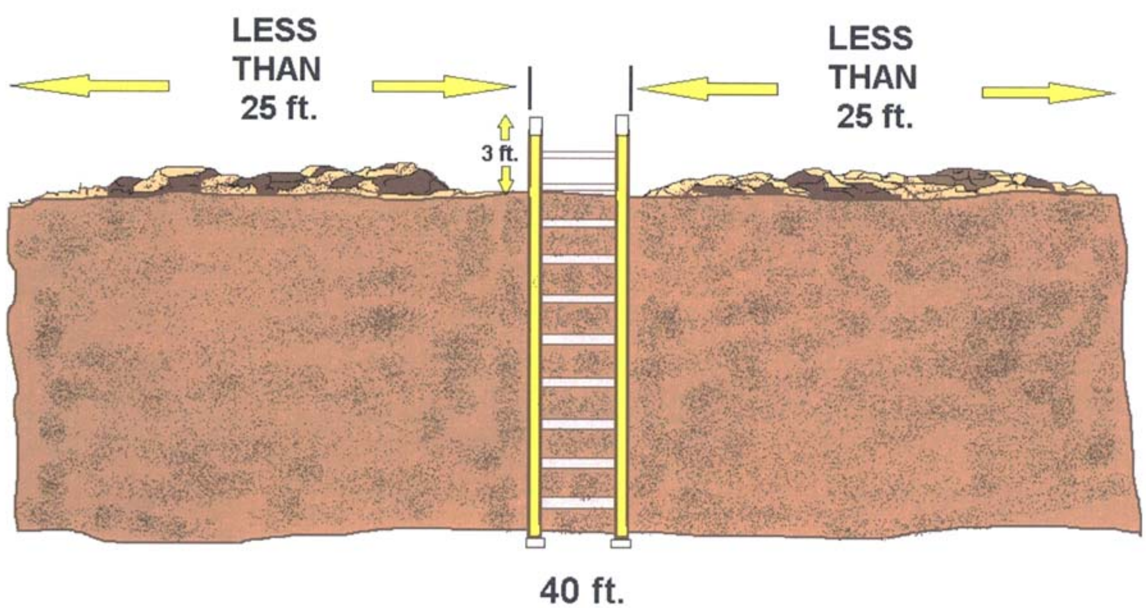
Safety compliance is mandatory to ensure employee protection when working in or around excavations.

The competent person(s) must be trained in accordance with the OSHA Excavation Standard, and all other programs that may apply (examples Hazard Communication, Confined Space, and Respiratory Protection), and must demonstrate a thorough understanding and knowledge of the programs and the hazards associated.

All other employees working in and around the excavation must be trained in the recognition of hazards associated with trenching and excavating.

REFERENCES

- 29 CFR 1926.650, Subpart P - Excavations
- Excavation Equipment Manufacturer Safety Procedures



Trench Shields and Boxes

Hazards

One of the reasons OSHA requires a competent person on-site during excavation & trenching are the numerous potential hazardous that may be encountered or created.

Hazards include:

Electrocution
Gas Explosion
Entrapment
Struck by equipment
Suffocation

Hazard Controls

Before any work is performed and before any employees enter the excavation, a number of items must be checked and insured:

- Before any excavation, underground installations must be determined. This can be accomplished by either contacting the local utility companies or the local "**one-call'** center for the area. All underground utility locations must be documented on the proper forms. All overhead hazards (**surface encumbrances**) that create a hazard to employees must be removed or supported to eliminate the hazard.
- If the excavation is to be over 20 feet deep, it must be designed by a registered professional engineer who is registered in the state where the work will be performed.
- Adequate protective systems will be utilized to protect employees. This can be accomplished through sloping, shoring, or shielding.
- The worksite must be analyzed in order to design adequate protection systems and prevent cave-ins. There must also be an excavation safety plan developed to protect employees.
- Workers must be supplied with, and wear, any personal protective equipment deemed necessary to assure their protection.
- All spoil piles will be stored a minimum of **two (2) feet** from the sides of the excavation. The spoil pile must not block the safe means of egress.
- If a trench or excavation is 4 feet or deeper, stairways, ramps, or ladders will be used as a safe means of access and egress. For trenches, the employee must not have to travel any more than 25 feet of lateral travel to reach the stairway, ramp, or ladder.
- No employee will work in an excavation where water is accumulating unless adequate measures are used to protect the employees.
- A competent person will inspect all excavations and trenches daily, prior to employee exposure or entry, and after any rainfall, soil change, or any other time needed during the shift. The competent person must take prompt measures to eliminate any and all hazards.
- Excavations and trenches 4 feet or deeper that have the potential for toxic substances or hazardous atmospheres will be tested at least daily. If the atmosphere is inadequate, protective systems will be utilized.
- If work is in or around traffic, employees must be supplied with and wear orange reflective vests. Signs and barricades must be utilized to ensure the safety of employees, vehicular traffic, and pedestrians.

Excavation Safety Plan

An excavation safety plan is required in written form. This plan is to be developed to the level necessary to insure complete compliance with the OSHA Excavation Safety Standard and state and local safety standards.

Excavation Safety Plan Factors:

- Utilization of the local one-call system.
- Determination of locations of all underground utilities.
- Consideration of confined space atmosphere potential.
- Proper soil protection systems and personal protective equipment and clothing.
- Determination of soil composition and classification.
- Determination of surface and subsurface water.
- Depth of excavation and length of time it will remain open.
- Proper adherence to all OSHA Standards, this excavation and trenching safety program, and any other coinciding safety programs.

1. Warning system for mobile equipment, methods to help prevent vehicles and equipment from falling in the trench can be accomplished by providing:

A. Barricades.
B. Hand or mechanical signals.
C. Stop logs.
D. Grade away from the excavation.

All equipment with an obstructed rear view is required to have a back-up alarm or an observer when backing {1926.601 (b) (4).}

2. Hazardous atmospheres, you must limit all exposures to hazardous atmospheres.

A. Oxygen deficient is anything less than 19.5% oxygen. Symptoms will include dizziness, increased heart rate or may experience a buzzing in the ears.
B. Normal is 21% oxygen.
C. Oxygen enriched atmospheres increase flammability of combustible materials.
D. Carbon monoxide causes oxygen starvation and can be fatal at a concentration of 1% for one minute. This is equal to 10,000 PPM. The Threshold Limit Value (**TLV**) is only 50 PPM.
E. If there is a possibility that a hazardous atmosphere exists or could be reasonably expected to exist, test the atmosphere before the employee enters an excavation. Some areas of concern include; digging near gas lines, sewers, landfills and near areas of high traffic.
F. Provide respirators or ventilation when needed. All personnel must be fit tested before wearing a respirator and all personnel must be training how to use ventilation.

The use of any respirator by employees will require a written respirator program form the employer {1926.103).

A. Ventilate trench if flammable gas exceeds 20% of the lower flammable limit.
B. Test the atmosphere often--this will ensure that the trench remains safe.

C. Perform regular maintenance on gas meters. Calibrate and change out filters regularly.

D. Never enter a hazardous atmosphere to rescue an employee unless you have been trained in rescue techniques and have proper rescue equipment. More than half the deaths occur while attempting a rescue.

3. **Emergency rescue equipment must be available when a hazardous atmosphere exists or could be reasonably expected to exist**.

A. Respirator must be suitable for the exposure. An air supplied or self-contained breathing apparatus is preferable

B. Harness and lifeline is required when an employee enters bellbottom piers and other deep confined spaces. The lifeline must be attended at all times.

Employees entering confined spaces must be trained. {1926.21 (b) (6) I}
Specific requirements for welding in confined spaces {1926.352 (g) and 1926.653 (b)}.

4. Protection from hazards associated with water accumulation is necessary to prevent cave-ins.

A. Methods for controlling accumulated water vary with each situation.

B. Employees are not permitted to work in trenches were water accumulation exists.

C. Special support system or shield systems may be used to protect employees from cave-ins.

D. Water removal equipment may be used and must be monitored by a competent person to prevent water accumulation.

E. Safety harness and lifeline may be used to protect employees.

F. Surface water must be diverted and controlled.

G. Trench must be inspected after rain.

5. Stability of adjacent structures to protect employees from cave-ins.

A. Support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning must be used to support structures that may be unstable due to excavation operations.

B. Excavation below the base or footing of a foundation or wall is not permitted unless:
   i. Support system is provided to ensure the stability of the structure.
   ii. The excavation is in stable rock.
   iii. A Registered Professional Engineer approves the operation.

C. Support systems must be provided for sidewalks, pavements and other structures that may be affected by the excavation operations.

6. Protection of employees from loose rock or soil.

A. Employees must be protected from being struck by materials falling or rolling from the edge and the face of the trench.

B. Spoils and equipment must be set back at least 2 feet from the edge of the trench and/or a retaining device must be installed.

7. Fall protection is required for walkways and bridges over trenches. Other fall protection may also be required.

8. Remotely located excavations shall be backfilled, covered, or barricaded (for example wells, pits, shafts, etc.)

Inspections must be made:

A. Daily prior to starting work

B. As needed throughout the shift by a competent person.

C. After every rainstorm.

D. After other hazard increasing occurrence (snowstorm, windstorm, thaw, earthquake, etc.).

E. Inspect the trench for indications of possible cave-ins (fissures, tension cracks, sloughing, undercutting, water seepage, bulging at the bottom).

F. Inspect adjacent areas (spoil piles, structures).

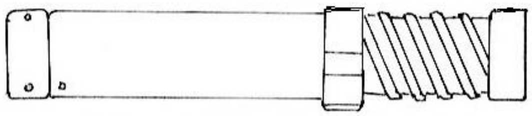
G. To protective systems and their components (uprights, wales sheeting, shields hydraulics) before and after use.

H. Check for indications of a hazardous or potentially hazardous atmosphere.

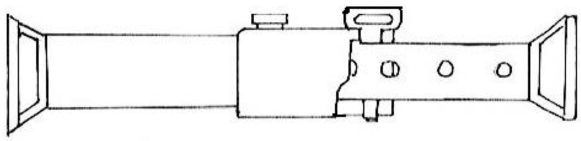
I. Test the atmosphere if a hazard could reasonably be expected to exist.

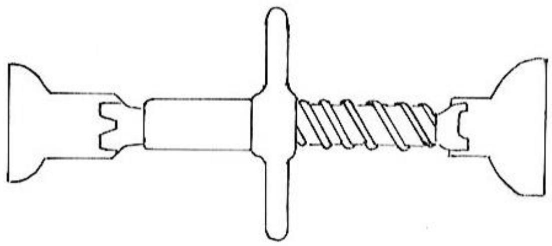
Remove employees from the trench when there are indications of possible cave-ins, protective system failures, or other potentially hazardous conditions. Never work in or under water without proper protection. You will have to wear a Lifeline with a rope to drag your dead body out of these hazardous conditions.

Illegal ladder storage.

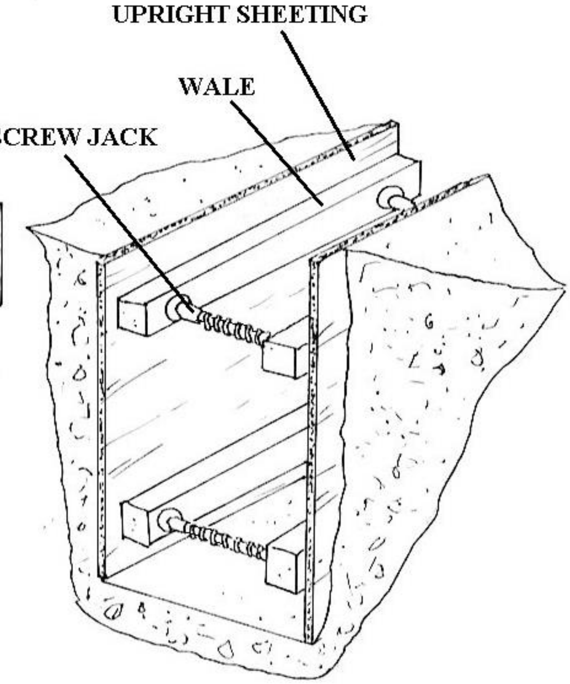


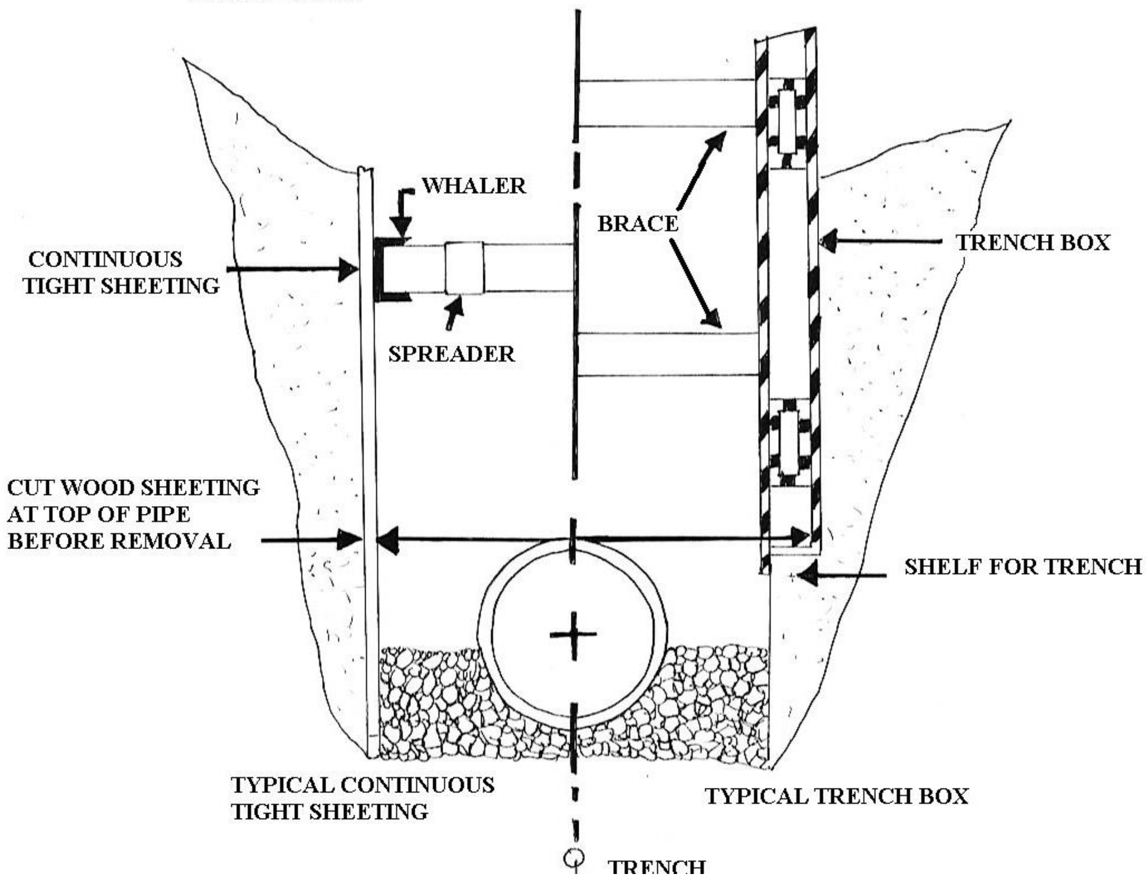
PNEUMATIC / HYDRAULIC JACKS





SCREW JACK





Soil Classification and Identification Introduction

The OSHA Standards define soil classifications within the Simplified Soil Classification Systems, which consist of four categories: Stable rock, Type A, Type B, and Type C. Stability is greatest in stable rock and decreases through Type A and B to Type C, which is the least stable. Appendix A of the standard provides soil mechanics terms and types of field tests used to determine soil classifications. Stable rock is defined as natural solid mineral matter that can be excavated with vertical sides and remain intact while exposed.

Type A soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 tons per square foot (**TSF**) or greater.
- Cemented soils like caliche and hardpan are considered Type A.

Soil is NOT Type A if:

- It is fissured.
- The soil is subject to vibration from heavy traffic, pile driving or similar effects.
- The soil has been previously disturbed.
- The material is subject to other factors that would require it to be classified as a less stable material.
- The exclusions for Type A most generally eliminate it from most construction situations.

Type B soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength greater than .5 TSF, but less than 1.5 TSF.
- Granular cohesion-less soil including angular gravel, silt, silt loam, and sandy loam.
- The soil has been previously disturbed except that soil classified as Type C soil.
- Soil that meets the unconfined compressive strength requirements of Type A soil, but is fissured or subject to vibration.
- Dry rock that is unstable.

Type C soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength of .5 TSF or less.
- Granular soils including gravel, sand and loamy sand.
- Submerged soil or soil from which water is freely seeping.
- Submerged rock that is not stable.

Soil Test & Identification Detailed

The competent person will classify the soil type in accordance with the definitions in Appendix A based on at least one visual and one manual analysis. These tests should be run on freshly excavated samples from the excavation and are designed to determine stability based on a number of criteria: the cohesiveness, the presence of fissures, the presence and amount of water, the unconfined compressive strength, and the duration of exposure, undermining, and the presence of layering, prior excavation and vibration.

The cohesion tests are based on methods to determine the presence of clay. Clay, silt, and sand are size classifications, with clay being the smallest sized particles, silt intermediate and sand the largest.

Clay minerals exhibit good cohesion and plasticity (can be molded). Sand exhibits no elasticity and virtually no cohesion unless surface wetting is present. The degree of cohesiveness and plasticity depend on the amounts of all three types and water.

When examining the soil, three questions must be asked: Is the sample granular or cohesive? Is it fissured or non-fissured? What is the unconfined compressive strength measured in TSF?

The competent person will perform several tests of the excavation to obtain consistent, supporting data along its depth and length. The soil is subject to change several times within the scope of an excavation and the moisture content will vary with weather and job conditions. The competent person must also determine the level of protection based on what conditions exist at the time of the test, and allow for changing conditions.

Ribbon Soil Test

Sloping

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES

SOIL TYPE	SLOPE (H:V)	ANGLE(º)
Stable Rock	Vertical	90º
Type A	3/4 : 1	53º
Type B	1 : 1	45º
Type C	1/2 : 1	34º

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPE means the steepest incline of an excavation face that is acceptable for the most favorable site conditions as protection against cave-ins and is expressed as the ratio of horizontal distance to vertical rise (**H:V**).

The tables and configurations within Appendix B may be used to a maximum depth of twenty (20') feet deep. Jobs more than twenty (20') feet in depth require the design of a sloping plan by a registered professional engineer (**RPE**). If configurations are used for depths less than 20 feet other than those found in Appendix B, they must also be designed by a registered professional engineer.

Shielding

The third method of providing a safe workplace in excavations is shielding. Shielding is different from shoring and sloping in that it does not prevent cave-ins. Instead, it protects the workers in the event of a cave-in. Its function is therefore somewhat similar to that of a bomb shelter.

Shields are simply devices that, when placed in an excavation, have sufficient structural strength to support the force of a cave-in should one occur. Shields take a number of different shapes and sizes. Most shields consist of two flat, parallel metal walls which are held apart by metal cross braces which are placed at the ends of the "Box" to allow for the installation of pipe within its interior dimensions.

These boxes are used to greatest effect in what is known as "cut and cover" operations where a contractor excavates just enough trench to install the shield, then sets a joint of pipe, then excavates further, then pulls the shield forward to install another joint while the first is being backfilled. This method is extremely cost effective in that it is fast, safe, requires minimum excavation and minimum open trench. It has become the preferred method of laying pipe in most instances. While original shields were quite large, smaller shields have gained in popularity with public works maintenance crews and contractors working in shallow excavations because of their ease of use. Recently, round shields, made of corrugated metal have appeared. The sizes, shapes and possibilities for the applications of shields are endless. If they are to be used, however, several points must be borne in mind.

1. Shield construction is not covered by the standard. Users must rely on manufacturers' requirements. For this reason, it is critical that you know your supplier. Reputable manufacturers supply boxes designed by registered professional engineers, and the standard requires that they are certified for their applications. Do not make the mistake of having the neighborhood welder fabricate one. A user must know that their shield is appropriate for the situation.

2. Bent cross braces are not braces, they are hinges. Any bent of deformed structural member must be repaired or replaced according to the manufactures' guidelines.

3. The manufacturer must approve any modification to the shields.

4. Shields must be installed so as to prevent lateral movement in the event of a cave-in.

5. Shields may ride two feet above the bottom of an excavation, provided they are calculated to support the full depth of the excavation and there is no caving under or behind the shield.

6. Workers must enter and leave the shield in a protected manner, such as by ladder within the shield or a properly sloped ramp at the end.

7. Workers may not remain in the shield during its installation, removal or during vertical movement.

8. Do not forget about the open end of the shield if it exposes a wall of the excavation. The wall should be sloped, shored or shielded off to prevent a cave-in from the end.

9. If the excavation is deeper than the shield is tall, attached shields of the correct specifications may be used or the excavation may be sloped back to maximum allowable angle from a point 18 inches below the top of the shield.

Complete Rule and further instructions are located in TLC's Competent Person Course.

Inspections

Daily inspection of excavations, the adjacent areas and protective systems shall be made by the competent person for evidence of a situation that could result in a cave-in, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres or other hazardous conditions.

- All inspections shall be conducted by the competent person prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift.
- Inspections will be made after every rainstorm or any other increasing hazard.
- All documented inspections will be kept on file in the jobsite safety files and forwarded to the Safety Director weekly.
- A copy of the ***Daily Excavation Inspection*** form is located at the end of this program.

The competent person(s) must be trained in accordance with the OSHA Excavation Standard, and all other programs that may apply (examples Hazard Communication, Confined Space, and Respiratory Protection), and must demonstrate a thorough understanding and knowledge of the programs and the hazards associated. All other employees working in and around the excavation must be trained in the recognition of hazards associated with trenching and excavating.

Two unsafe excavation examples: Top, notice the man in a 6 foot deep trench with no ladder or shoring, and the placement of spoil. Bottom photograph, utilities are marked after the excavation has begun, no hard hats, no ladders, no protective system, incorrect spoil placement.

DAILY EXCAVATION CHECKLIST

Client		**Date**	
Project Name		**Approx. Temp.**	
Project Location		**Approx. Wind Dir.**	
Job Number		**Safety Rep**	
Excavation Depth & Width		**Soil Classification**	
Protective System Used			
Activities In Excavation			
Competent Person			

Excavation > 4 feet deep? ___Yes ___No

NOTE: **Trenches over 4 feet in depth are considered excavations. Any items marked *NO* on this form *MUST* be remediated prior to any employees entering the excavation.**

YES	NO	N/A	DESCRIPTION
			GENERAL
			Employees protected from cave-ins & loose rock/soil that could roll into the excavation
			Spoils, materials & equipment set back at least 2 feet from the edge of the excavation.
			Engineering designs for sheeting &/or manufacturer's data on trench box capabilities on site
			Adequate signs posted and barricades provided
			Training (toolbox meeting) conducted w/ employees prior to entering excavation
			UTILITIES
			Utility company contacted & given 24 hours' notice &/or utilities already located & marked
			Overhead lines located, noted and reviewed with the operator
			Utility locations reviewed with the operator, & precautions taken to ensure contact does not occur
			Utilities crossing the excavation supported, and protected from falling materials
			Underground installations protected, supported or removed when excavation is open
			WET CONDITIONS
			Precautions taken to protect employees from water accumulation (continuous dewatering)
			Surface water or runoff diverted /controlled to prevent accumulation in the excavation
			Inspection made after every rainstorm or other hazard increasing occurrence

HAZARDOUS ATMOSPHERES			
			Air in the excavation tested for oxygen deficiency, combustibles, other contaminants
			Ventilation used in atmospheres that are oxygen rich/deficient &/or contains hazardous substances
			Ventilation provided to keep LEL below 10 %
			Emergency equipment available where hazardous atmospheres could or do exist
			Safety harness and lifeline used
			Supplied air necessary (if yes, contact safety department)
ENTRY & EXIT			
			Exit (i.e. ladder, sloped wall) no further than 25 feet from ANY employee
			Ladders secured and extend 3 feet above the edge of the trench
			Wood ramps constructed of uniform material thickness, cleated together @ the bottom
			Employees protected from cave-ins when entering or exiting the excavation

Explain how you have secured the site and made it safe to work inside (if possible)

One-call Center or Bluestakes

You are required to locate or call for proper buried utility locations before you dig or excavate. You will usually need a 48-hour notice before you excavate. Please check with your local one-call system.

Red spray marks means - Electricity, Yellow marks-Gas, Blue marks-Water

Orange spray marks means - Telephone & Fiber Optics

One Call Program

According to federal safety statistics, damage from unauthorized digging is the major cause of natural gas pipeline failures. To prevent excavation damage to all utilities, including pipelines, all 50 states have instituted "*One Call*" Programs. The programs provide telephone numbers for excavation contractors to call before excavation begins.

The one-call operator will notify a pipeline company of any planned excavation in the vicinity of its pipeline so that the company can flag the location of the pipeline and assign personnel to be present during excavation, if necessary.

In a related effort, a joint government-industry team has developed a public education program entitled "*Dig Safely*". The team involved representatives from the U.S. Department of Transportation, gas and liquid pipeline companies, distribution companies, excavators, the insurance industry, one-call systems and the telecommunications industry. This campaign provides information to the general public concerning underground utilities and the danger of unknowingly digging into buried lines and cables.

The program has posters, brochures, and other printed materials available for use by interested organizations. For more information, contact www.digsafely.com.

Telephone Cables, nasty to dig around. It’s almost as bad as electric lines.

One-Call Center, Underground Utilities

One Call Centers were established as a one-call notification system by underground facility owners to assist excavators with statutory requirements to notify underground facility owners prior to excavation. This damage prevention service is provided free of charge to any individual or company planning to excavate. By participating in the program and getting underground facilities located, you can:

- **Comply with Federal Law**
- **Avoid Injuries**
- **Prevent costly damages and interruptions of facility services**
- **Save time and money**
- **Avoid hazards**
- **Eliminate construction delays**

Color Codes for marking underground utility lines.

Red--------------- Electric Power
Yellow----------- Gas-Oil- Product Lines
Orange----------- Communication, Cable television
Blue--------------- Water systems, slurry pipelines
Green------------- Sanitary sewer system
Pink--------------- Temporary survey markings

Example of a One-Call Center's Rules
Excavations: determining location of underground facilities; providing information; excavator marking; on-site representative; validity period of markings.

A. A person shall not make or begin any excavation in any public street, alley, right-of-way dedicated to the public use or utility easement or on any express or implied private property utility easement without first determining whether underground facilities will be encountered, and if so where they are located from each and every public utility, municipal corporation or other person having the right to bury such underground facilities within the public street, alley, right-of-way or utility easement and taking measures for control of the facilities in a careful and prudent manner.

B. Every public utility, municipal corporation or other person having the right to bury underground facilities shall file with the corporation commission the job title, address and telephone number of the person or persons from whom the necessary information may be obtained. Such person or persons shall be readily available during established business hours. The information on file shall also include the name, address and telephone number of each one-call notification center to which the owner of the facility belongs. Upon receipt of inquiry or notice from the excavator, the owner of the facility shall respond as promptly as practical, but in no event later than two days, by marking such facility with stakes, paint or in some customary manner. No person shall begin excavating before the location and marking are complete or the excavator is notified that marking is unnecessary.

C. On a timely request by the owner of a facility, the excavator shall mark the boundaries of the location requested to be excavated in accordance with a color code designated by the commission or by applicable custom or standard in the industry. A request under this subsection for excavator marking does not alter any other requirement of this section.

D. In performing the marking required by subsection B of this section, the owner of an underground facility installed after December 31, 1988 in a public street, alley or right-of–way dedicated to public use, but not including any express or implied private property utility easement, shall locate the facility by referring to installation records of the facility and utilizing one of the following methods:

1. Vertical line or facility markers.
2. Locator strip or locator wire.
3. Signs or permanent markers.
4. Electronic or magnetic location or tracing techniques.
5. Electronic or magnetic sensors or markers.
6. Metal sensors or sensing techniques.
7. Sonar techniques.
8. Underground electrical or radio transmitters.
9. Manual location techniques, including pot-holing.
10. Surface extensions of underground facilities.
11. Any other surface or subsurface location technique at least as accurate as the other marking methods in this subsection not prohibited by the commission or by federal or state law.

E. For an underground facility other than one installed after December 31, 1988, in a public street, alley or right-of-way dedicated to public use, in performing the marking required by subsection B of this section, the owner may refer to installation or other records relating to the facility to assist in locating the facility and shall locate the facility utilizing one of the methods listed under subsection D of this section.

If an underground facility owner is unable to complete the location and marking within the time period provided by subsection B of this section, the facility owner shall satisfy the requirements of this section by proving prompt notice of these facts to the excavator.

Assigning one or more representatives to be present on the excavation site at all pertinent times as requested by the excavator to provide facility location services until the facilities have been located and marked.

The underground facility owner shall bear all of its costs associated with assigning representatives. If representatives are assigned under this subsection, the excavator is not responsible or liable for damage or repair of the owner's underground facility while acting under the direction of an assigned representative of the owner, unless the damage or need for repair was caused by the excavator's negligence.

Natural Gas Safety

That familiar blue flame that plays such an important role in our lives should, like other sources of energy, be treated with respect. Following a few simple guidelines can help ensure that you can safely enjoy all the benefits natural gas has to offer.

Natural gas is colorless and invisible. When it burns it should appear as a clear, blue flame. Because natural gas has no odor, a special chemical called mercaptan is added to make it easy to detect gas leaks from pipes or appliances. This odor is commonly described as a rotten-egg smell.

Natural gas is clean-burning. When burned completely, it produces only water vapor and carbon dioxide, just as you do when you breathe. Natural gas is such a safe and dependable fuel that it's easy to take for granted. But please, never take safety for granted. As with any source of energy, you should follow certain safety measures when using natural gas.

When it's taken from the ground, natural gas is tasteless, colorless and odorless. To make it easier to detect, a harmless but strong-smelling odorant is added, Ethyl Mercaptan. If you ever smell this "***rotten egg-like***" odor, it may mean there is a gas leak.

WHAT TO DO IF YOU SMELL GAS:

- Do not smoke. Do not use lighters or matches.
- Do not turn on/off any switches or appliances.
- Our personnel are available 24 hours a day to respond to any emergency call.

Carbon Monoxide

Carbon monoxide is produced when burning any fuel incompletely, such as charcoal, gasoline or wood. Carbon monoxide is highly poisonous and it has no odor, taste or color. If natural gas equipment is not maintained, adjusted and operated properly, it could produce carbon monoxide.

Your natural gas appliances should produce a clear, steady blue flame. If your gas appliances exhibit an unusual behavior or produce a yellowish-color flame, that may be a warning sign that your appliance is producing carbon monoxide.

A licensed professional should inspect appliances annually to insure safe operation. An inspection will accomplish the following:

- Make sure the appliance is installed properly and that it is in good working condition.
- Ensure that there is enough fresh air circulating for the fuel to burn properly.
- Check that vents are in good condition and are not blocked with debris.

Other helpful tips:

- The area surrounding your gas appliances should be clear from clutter or trash.
- Carbon monoxide detectors may be helpful in your home or business. But remember, a carbon monoxide detector should never be substituted for using equipment safely - which includes having your heating and cooking equipment inspected once a year by a trained professional.

OSHA's General Industry Regulation, §1910.146 Permit-required confined spaces, contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This regulation does not apply to construction.

OSHA's Construction Safety and Health Regulations Part 1926 do not contain a permit-required confined space regulation. Subpart C, §1926.21 Safety training and education specifies training for personnel who are required to enter confined spaces and defines a "*confined or enclosed space*."

Lockout - Tagout Training Section
(LOTO) Lockout and Tagout

Purpose
Control of Hazardous energy is the purpose of the Lockout- Tagout Policy. This policy establishes the requirements for isolation of both kinetic and potential electrical, chemical, thermal, hydraulic and pneumatic and gravitational energy prior to equipment repair, adjustment or removal. The Lockout -Tagout Electrical Safety Policy is part of your overall safety program. If you do not understand this policy, it's your responsibly to ask your supervisor to have this policy explained to you.
Reference: OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1910. 147, the control of hazardous energy.

Definitions
Authorized (Qualified) Employees are the only ones certified to lock and tag-out equipment or machinery. Whether an employee is considered to be qualified will depend upon various circumstances in the workplace. It is likely for an individual to be considered "qualified" with regard to certain equipment in the workplace, but "*unqualified*" as to other equipment.

An employee who is undergoing on-the-job training and in the course of such training, has demonstrated an ability to perform duties safely at his or her level of training and who is under the direct supervision of a qualified person, is considered to be "qualified" for the performance of those duties.

Affected Employees are those employees who operate machinery or equipment upon which lockout or tagging out is required under this program. Training of these individuals will be less stringent in that it will include the purpose and use of the lockout procedures.
Other Employees are identified as those that do not fall into the authorized, affected or qualified employee category. Essentially, it will include all other employees. These employees will be provided instruction in what the program is and not to touch any machine or equipment when they see that it has been locked or tagged out.

Training
Authorized Employees Training *Example*
All maintenance employees and Department Supervisors will be trained to use the Lock and Tagout Procedures. The training will be conducted by the Supervisor or Safety Coordinator at time of initial hire. Retraining shall be held at least annually. The training will consist of the following:

- Review of General Procedures.
- Review of Specific Procedures for machinery, equipment and processes.
- Location and use of Specific Procedures.
- Procedures when questions arise.

Affected Employee Training

- Only trained and authorized employees will repair, replace or adjust machinery, equipment or processes.
- Affected employees may not remove Locks, locking devices or tags from machinery, equipment or circuits.
- Purpose and use of the lockout procedures.

Other Employee Training

- Only trained and authorized employees will repair, replace or adjust machinery or Equipment.
- Other employees may not remove Locks, locking devices or tags from machinery, equipment or circuits.

Preparation for Lock and Tagout Procedures *Example*

A Lockout - Tagout survey will be conducted to locate and identify all energy sources to verify which switches or valves supply energy to machinery and equipment. Dual or redundant controls will need to be removed.

A Tagout Schedule will be developed for each piece of equipment and machinery. This schedule describes the energy sources, location of disconnects, type of disconnect, special hazards and special safety procedures. The schedule will be reviewed each time to ensure employees properly lock and tag out equipment and machinery.

If a Tagout Schedule does not exist for a particular piece of equipment, machinery and process, one must be developed prior to conducting a Lockout - Tagout. As repairs and/or renovations of existing electrical systems are made, standardized controls will be used. It is your departmental supervisor's responsibility to ensure that a schedule is made.

Routine Maintenance & Machine Adjustments

Lock and Tag out procedures are not required if equipment must be operating for proper adjustment. This rare exception may be used only by trained and authorized employees when specific procedures have been developed to safely avoid hazards with proper training. All consideration shall be made to prevent the need for an employee to break the plane of a normally guarded area of the equipment by use of tools and other devices.

Standard Operating Procedure (SOP): General Lock and Tag out Procedures

Before working on, repairing, adjusting or replacing machinery and equipment, the following procedures will be utilized to place the machinery and equipment in a neutral or zero mechanical state.

Preparation for Shutdown *Example*

Before authorized or affected employees turn off a machine or piece of equipment, the authorized employee will have knowledge of the type and magnitude of the energy, the hazards of the energy to be controlled, and the means to control the energy. Notify all affected employees that the machinery, equipment or process will be out of service.

Machine or Equipment Shutdown.
The machine or equipment will be turned off or shut down using the specific procedures for that specific machine. An orderly shutdown will be utilized to avoid any additional or increased hazards to employees as a result of equipment de-energization.

If the machinery, equipment or process is in operation, follow normal stopping procedures (depress stop button, open toggle switch, etc.). Move switch or panel arms to "Off" or "Open" positions and close all valves or other energy isolating devices so that the energy source(s) is disconnected or isolated from the machinery or equipment.

Machine or Equipment Isolation.
All energy control devices that are needed to control the energy to the machine or equipment will be physically located and operated in such a manner as to isolate the machine or equipment from the energy source.

Lockout or Tagout Device Application.
Lockout or tagout devices will be affixed to energy isolating devices by authorized employees. Lockout devices will be affixed in a manner that will hold the energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" position.

Where tagout devices are used, they will be affixed in such a manner that will clearly state that the operation or the movement of energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" positions is prohibited.

The tagout devices will be attached to the same point a lock would be attached. If the tag cannot be affixed at that point, the tag will be located as close as possible to the device in a position that will be immediately obvious to anyone attempting to operate the device.

Lock and tag out all energy devices by use of hasps, chains and valve covers with assigned individual locks.

Stored Energy
Following the application of the lockout or tagout devices to the energy isolating devices, all potential or residual energy will be relieved, disconnected, restrained, and otherwise rendered safe.

Where the re-accumulation of stored energy to a hazardous energy level is possible, verification of isolation will be continued until the maintenance or servicing is complete.

Release stored energy (capacitors, springs, elevated members, rotating fly wheels, and hydraulic/air/gas/steam systems) must be relieved or restrained by grounding, repositioning, blocking and/or bleeding the system.

Verification of Isolation
Prior to starting work on machines or equipment that have been locked or tagged out, the authorized employees will verify that isolation or de-energization of the machine or equipment have been accomplished.

After assuring that no employee will be placed in danger, test all lock and tag outs by following the normal start up procedures (depress start button, etc.).
Caution: After Test, place controls in neutral position.

Extended Lockout - Tagout
Should the shift change before the machinery or equipment can be restored to service, the lock and tag out must remain. If the task is reassigned to the next shift, those employees must lock and tag out before the previous shift may remove their lock and tag.

SOP: Release from LOCKOUT/TAGOUT *Example*
Before lockout or tagout devices are removed and the energy restored to the machine or equipment, the following actions will be taken:

1. The work area will be thoroughly inspected to ensure that nonessential items have been removed and that machine or equipment components are operational.
2. The work area will be checked to ensure that all employees have been safely positioned or removed. Before the lockout or tagout devices are removed, the affected employees will be notified that the lockout or tagout devices are being removed.
3. Each lockout or tagout device will be removed from each energy-isolating device by the employee who applied the device.

SOP: LOTO Procedure for Electrical Plug-Type Equipment *Example*
This procedure covers all Electrical Plug-Type Equipment such as battery chargers, some product pumps, office equipment, powered hand tools, powered bench tools, lathes, fans, etc.

When working on, repairing, or adjusting the above equipment, the following procedures must be utilized to prevent accidental or sudden startup:

1. Unplug electrical equipment from wall socket or in-line socket.
2. Attach "**Do Not Operate**" Tag and Plug Box & Lock on end of power cord.
An exception is granted to not lock & tag the plug if the cord & plug remain in the exclusive control of the Employee working on, adjusting or inspecting the equipment.
3. Test equipment to assure power source has been removed by depressing the "Start" or “On" Switch.
4. Perform required operations.
5. Replace all guards removed.
6. Remove Lock & Plug Box and Tag.
7. Inspect power cord and socket before plugging equipment into power source. Any defects must be repaired before placing the equipment back in service.

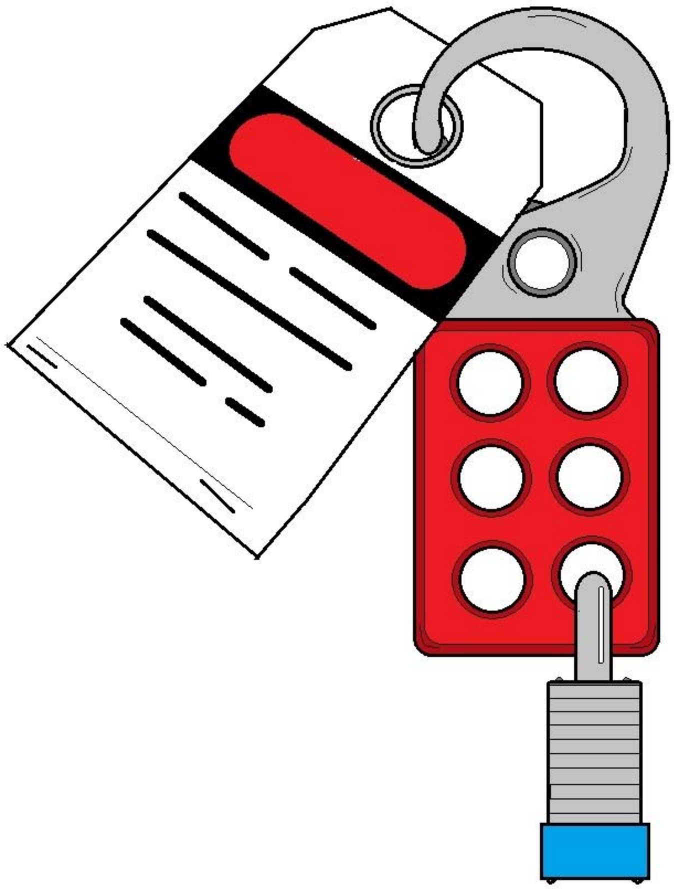
NOTE: Occasionally used equipment may be unplugged from power source when not in use.

SOP: LOTO Procedures Involving More Than One Employee
In the preceding SOPs, if more than one employee is assigned to a task requiring a lock and tag out, each must place his/her own lock and tag on the energy isolating device(s).

SOP: Management Removal of Lock and Tag Out
Only the employee that locks and tags out machinery, equipment or processes may remove his/her lock and tag. However, the employee should leave the facility before removing his/her lock and tag, and the supervisor may remove the lock and tag. The supervisor must be assured that all tools have been removed, all guards have been replaced and all employees are free from any hazard before the lock and tag are removed and the machinery, equipment or process are returned to service. Notification of the employee who placed the lock is required prior to lock removal.

Contractors
Contractors working on our property and equipment must use this Lockout-Tagout procedure while servicing or maintaining equipment, machinery or processes.

Lockout - Tag out Safety Equipment
The employer will provide all Lockout-Tagout safety equipment and training to any employee that may need or work with electricity or powered equipment. Your supervisor will be able to provide any assistance or equipment.



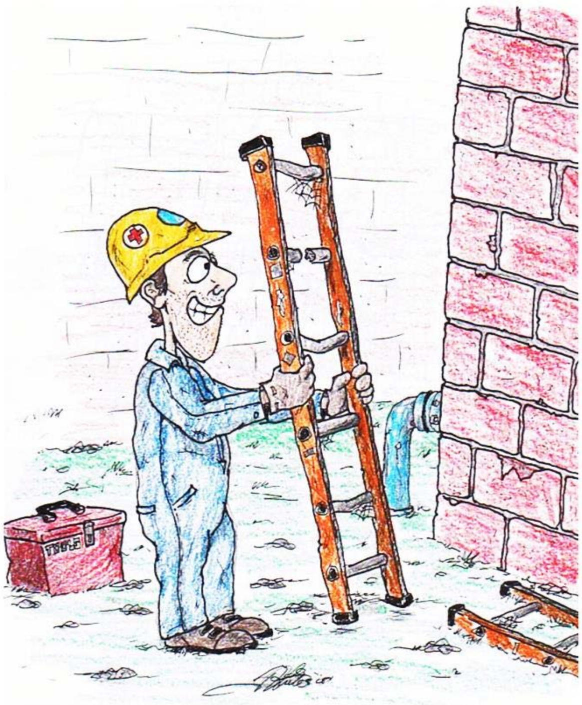
USE LOCK-OUT TAGS, LOCKS AND HASPS TO DENERGIZE EQUIPMENT TO AVOID ACCIDENTAL START-UP AND PREVENT INJURIES OR DEATH

Ladder Safety Section

Purpose
Ladders present unique opportunities for unsafe acts and unsafe conditions. Employees who use ladders must be trained in proper selection, inspection, use and storage. Improper use of ladders has caused a large percentage of accidents in the workplace. Use caution on ladders.

OSHA reference: (29 CFR 1910.25, 1910.26, and 1910.27).
Ladder Hazards
Falls from ladders can result in broken bones and death. Ladder safety is a lifesaving program at our company.

Hazards include:
- Ladders with missing or broken parts.
- Using a ladder with too low a weight rating.
- Using a ladder that is too short for the intended purpose.
- Using metal ladders near electrical wires.
- Using ladders as a working platform.
- Objects falling from ladders.



Ladder Inspection
Inspect ladders before each use.
- All rungs and steps are free of oil, grease, dirt, etc.
- All fittings are tight.
- Spreaders or other locking devices are in place.
- Non-skid safety feet are in place.
- No structural defects, all support braces intact.

Do not use broken ladders. Most ladders cannot be repaired to manufacturer specifications. Throw away all broken ladders.

Ladder Storage
Store ladders on sturdy hooks in areas where they cannot be damaged. Store to prevent warping or sagging. Do not hang anything on ladders that are in a stored condition.

Ladder Ratings & Limits
Ladder weight ratings
- I-A 300 pounds (heavy duty)
- I 250 pounds (heavy duty)
- II 225 pounds (medium duty)
- III 200 pounds (light duty).

Limits on ladder length.

- A stepladder should be no more than 20 feet high.
- A one-section ladder should be no more than 30 feet.
- An extension ladder can go to 60 feet, but the sections must overlap.

Ladder Setup

The following procedure must be followed to prevent ladder accidents:

- ✓ Place ladder on a clean, slip-free level surface.
- ✓ Extend the ladder to have about 4 feet above the top support or work area.
- ✓ Anchor the top and bottom of the ladder.
- ✓ Place the ladder base 1/4 the height of the ladder from the wall when using an extension ladder.
- ✓ Never allow more than one person on a ladder.
- ✓ Use carriers and tool belts to carry objects up a ladder.
- ✓ Do not lean out from the ladder in any direction.
- ✓ If you have a fear of heights - don't climb a ladder.
- ✓ Do not allow others to work under a ladder in use.

Ladder Maintenance

- ✓ Keep ladders clean.
- ✓ Never replace broken parts unless provided by the original manufacturer.
- ✓ Do not attempt to repair broken side rails.

We finally have a ladder in an excavation, but no protective system in place or hard hat.

SAFETY SECTION GLOSSARY

Barricades: Visible warning barriers that keep vehicles and pedestrians from entering a construction site.

Braces: Devices that hold or fasten two or more parts together or in place. Braces are diagonal or horizontal. They may be made of wood or metal.

Bracing System: A system of braces which applies pressure against trench walls to stabilize them. A bracing system is part of a trench shoring system used to prevent trench walls from collapsing.

Benching: A method of cutting back the sides of a trench into horizontal steps to prevent cave-ins.

Bulge: An outward swelling in the soil of a trench; may be a warning sign of trench failure.

Buried Structures: Manholes, junction boxes or catch basins beneath the ground or any other installations that may be encountered during trenching.

Clay: Fine-grained natural soil that is plastic when moist and hard and brittle when dry. Clay is made up of particles smaller than .0002 millimeters.

Clumps: Heavy lumps or thick groupings of soil.

Cohesion: The relative ability to clump together, the force holding two like substances together.

Cohesive: When a soil has grains that hold together and clump well.

Competent Person: One who is capable of identifying existing, and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to employees. They have the authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate hazards. The Competent Person is trained and knowledgeable about soil analysis and the use of protective systems.

Confined Space: Has limited or restricted means of entry or exit, is large enough for an employee to enter and perform assigned work, and is not designed for continuous occupancy by the employee. These spaces may include, but are not limited to, underground vaults, tanks, storage bins, pits, and diked areas, vessels, and silos.

Diversion Ditches: A ditch cut around the work site to keep water from entering the trench.

Drainage System: Pumps, pipe or channel used to drain off rain or groundwater from inside the trench.

Excavation: Any man-made cut, cavity trench or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removal.

Fissure: A long narrow opening or crack in the rock or soil. Fissures are often a sign of trench wall failure.

Grain: Particles that once were large rocks, but have been broken down through time and the effects of weathering. The size of the grain of a soil determines the stability and cohesiveness of a soil. The larger the grain is, the more unstable the soil is.

Gravel: A loose mixture of pebbles and rock fragments, which is coarser than sand.

Hardpan: A layer of hard subsoil or clay that does not allow water in. Hardpan is classified as a Type A soil.

Heaving: The swelling of a soil.

Jacks: Jacks are braces or supports within a shoring system. They are placed against beams to resist the pressure of the earth.

Loamy Sand: Soil composed of a mixture of sand, clay and silt, with more sand grains than clay or silt. It is classified as a Type C soil.

Manufacturer's Tabulated Data: Tables and charts approved by a registered professional engineer and used to design and construct a protective system.

Permit Required Confined Space: Meets the definition of a confined space and has one or more of these characteristics: (1) contains or has potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere, (2) contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant, (3) has an internal configuration that might cause an entrant to be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or by a floor that slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross section, and/or (4) contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazards.

Personal Protective Equipment: Safety goggles and glasses, reflective clothing, work gloves, hard hat, safety shoes, rubber boots, earplugs or protectors, face shield and face mask or respirator.

Registered Professional Engineer: A person who is registered as a professional engineer in the state where the work is to be performed.

Sand: A type C soil with small, loose grains of disintegrated rock.

Sandy Loam: Granular soil with enough silt and clay to make it slightly cohesive

Saturation: The process of a soil being filled to capacity with moisture.

Shear: A phenomenon which happens when a trench wall is subjected to stress. Fissured cracks widen until a portion of the trench wall breaks off and slides into the trench.

Sheeting: Durable sheets of metal or wood, which are held firmly against a trench wall to prevent it from caving-in. Sheeting is a component of a trench shoring system.

Shielding: A device which provides adequate protection from falling or collapsing earth loads. The trench box is a common form of shielding.

Shoring: Main method of stabilizing and supporting a trench wall to prevent cave-ins. It consists of uprights, stingers and braces.

Silt: A soil which contains fine particles and is very smooth.

Silty Clay: A plastic soil that will appear rough or broken when rubbed over the thumb and finger.

Sloping: The process of cutting back the sides of a trench to avoid a cave-in.

Sloughing: When loose soil begins to run in from the lower part of the wall into the excavation. It is the first step to a wall collapse.

Soil Type: A system of classifying soils and rock deposits. Soil must be classified by a qualified person as: Stable rock, Type-A, Type-B, Type-C.

Spall: When a soil begins to crack or flake due to pressure, or from moisture from within the trench.

Spoil Pile/Spoilage: Rock waste, banks and dumps from the excavation.

Supports: Part of a shoring system which helps to bear the weight of braces and other parts of the shoring system.

Trench Box: A prefabricated moveable box usually constructed of metal plates welded to a heavy steel frame. The box is moved along as work progresses. It is able to withstand the forces imposed on it by a cave-in and thereby protects trench workers.

Type-A Soil: The most stable and cohesive type of soil while working at a trench site. Examples are clay, silty clay and hardpan.

Type-B Soil: Type-B soil is next to the most stable soil. Silt, silt loam, sandy loam, medium clay and unstable rock would be good examples of Type-B soils.

Type-C Soil: The least stable type of soil. Examples of Type-C soils are gravel, loamy sand, soft clay, submerged silt and heavy unstable rock.

Unconfined Compressive Strength: Through a variety of tests, a soil's strength is found. The unconfined compressive strength is the soil's measure of bearing capacity and shearing resistance. Measured as the amount of weight per square foot needed to collapse a soil sample.

Uprights: Vertical members of a trench shoring system placed in context with the earth. These members usually are not placed in direct contact with one another.

Vibration: When a soil or excavation site trembles and shakes rapidly due to forces such as loud noises or heavy equipment or traffic.

Voids: Voids are empty spaces between particles of rocks.

Wales: Wales are parts of a shoring system. They are positioned horizontally and help to brace vertical beams and supports. Wales can be fastened to studs with nails, clips or brackets.

Wall Stability: The relative strength and capacity of walls of a trench.

Provide at least one attendant outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of entry operations;

NOTE: Attendants may be assigned to monitor more than one permit space provided the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored. Likewise, attendants may be stationed at any location outside the permit space to be monitored as long as the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored.

Confined Space Information Summary

A. The National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (**NIOSH**) defines Confined Space as "***any space which, by design, has limited openings for entry and exit; unfavorable natural ventilation which could contain or produce dangerous air contaminants, and which is not intended for continuous employee occupancy***."

B. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**) in 1926.21 "***Safety training and education***" paragraph 5, sub-paragraph ii, defines Confined Space as "any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels, pipelines, and open top spaces more than 4 feet deep such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels." OSHA 1926 is the construction industry standard.

C. OSHA 1910.146(a) (23), the general industry standard, defines Confined Space Entry as "A permit-required confined space (permit space) means an enclosed space which:
1. Is large enough and so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform assigned work.
2. Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit, (some examples are tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, pits and diked areas);
3. Is not designed for continuous human occupancy, and has one or more of the following characteristics:

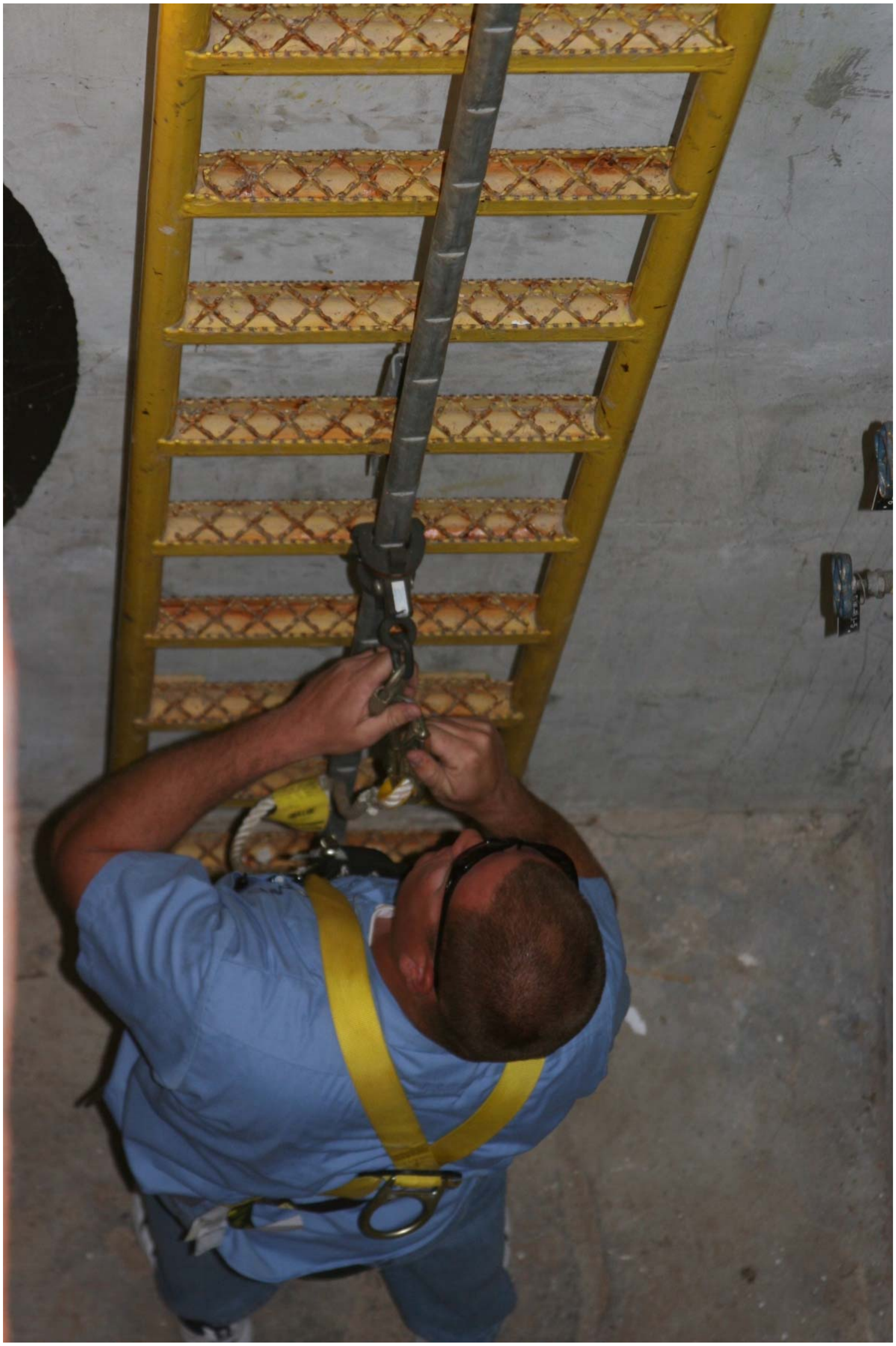
a. Contains or has a known potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere;
b. Contains a material with the potential for engulfment of the entrant;
c. Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section;
d. Contains any other recognized "***safety or health hazard***."

D. The exact number of workers killed and injured each year in confined-space accidents is unknown. The NIOSH criteria document on confined spaces lists a study that reviewed 20,000 accident reports filed over a three-year period.
Analysis of those reports showed that 234 deaths and 193 injuries were linked to 276 confined-space incidents. An OSHA report summarizing an in-house review of inspection case files showed that 173 fatalities resulted from 122 confined-space accidents.

E. Employees assigned to work in confined spaces are not the only people at risk. A NIOSH study conducted in 1986 suggests that more than half of those killed in confined spaces were rescuers. In some cases, as many as four would-be rescuers were killed in a single accident.

F. The practices and procedures which your Employer follows when doing confined space entry are designed to protect you from the hazards of entry into and working in this environment. Never short cut these safe work practices.

G. You should know and remember that work-related accidents in confined spaces usually result in serious injury or death.



Notice the ladder safety climbing device in the center of the fixed ladder. Most people do not like or use this device, we call these people "dead".

Math Conversion Factors

1 PSI = 2.31 Feet of Water
1 Foot of Water = .433 PSI
1.13 Feet of Water = 1 Inch of Mercury
454 Grams = 1 Pound
2.54 CM =Inch
1 Gallon of Water = 8.34 Pounds
1 mg/L = 1 PPM
17.1 mg/L = 1 Grain/Gallon
1% = 10,000 mg/L
694 Gallons per Minute = MGD
1.55 Cubic Feet per Second = 1 MGD
60 Seconds = 1 Minute
1440 Minutes = 1 Day
.746 kW = 1 Horsepower

LENGTH
12 Inches = 1 Foot
3 Feet = 1 Yard
5,280 Feet = 1 Mile

AREA
144 Square Inches = 1 Square Foot
43,560 Square Feet = 1 Acre

VOLUME
1000 Milliliters = 1 Liter
3.785 Liters = 1 Gallon
231 Cubic Inches = 1 Gallon
7.48 Gallons = 1 Cubic Foot of Water
62.38 Pounds = 1 Cubic Foot of Water

Dimensions

SQUARE: Area (sq.ft) = Length X Width
Volume (cu.ft.) = Length (ft) X Width (ft) X Height (ft)

CIRCLE: Area (sq.ft) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft)

CYLINDER: Volume (Cu. ft) = 3.14 X Radius (ft) X Radius (ft) X Depth (ft)

PIPE VOLUME: .785 X Diameter ^{2} X Length = ? To obtain gallons multiply by 7.48

SPHERE: $\frac{(3.14)\ (\text{Diameter})^3}{(6)}$

Circumference = 3.14 X Diameter

General Conversions

Flowrate

Multiply	—>	to get
to get	**<—**	**Divide**
cc/min	1	mL/min
cfm (ft^3/min)	28.31	L/min
cfm (ft^3/min)	1.699	m^3/hr
cfh (ft^3/hr)	472	mL/min
cfh (ft^3/hr)	0.125	GPM
GPH	63.1	mL/min
GPH	0.134	cfh
GPM	0.227	m^3/hr
GPM	3.785	L/min
oz/min	29.57	mL/min

POUNDS PER DAY= Concentration or Dose (mg/L) X Flow (MG) X 8.34
AKA* Solids Applied Formula** = Flow X Dose X 8.34 ***Instructor Rusty's Favorite Math Formula Please memorize

PERCENT EFFICIENCY = $\frac{\text{In} - \text{Out}}{\text{In}} \times 100$

TEMPERATURE: $^0F = (^0C \times 9/5) + 32$ $9/5 = 1.8$

$^0C = (^0F - 32) \times 5/9$ $5/9 = .555$

CONCENTRATION: Conc. (A) X Volume (A) = Conc. (B) X Volume (B)

FLOW RATE (Q): Q = A X V (**Q**uantity = **A**rea X **V**elocity)

FLOW RATE (gpm): Flow Rate (gpm) = $\frac{2.83\ (\text{Diameter, in})^2\ (\text{Distance, in})}{\text{Height, in}}$

% SLOPE = $\frac{\text{Rise (feet)}}{\text{Run (feet)}} \times 100$

ACTUAL LEAKAGE = $\frac{\text{Leak Rate (GPD)}}{\text{Length (mi.)} \times \text{Diameter (in)}}$

VELOCITY = $\frac{\text{Distance (ft)}}{\text{Time (Sec)}}$

N = Manning's Coefficient of Roughness
R = Hydraulic Radius (ft.)
S = Slope of Sewer (ft/ft.)

HYDRAULIC RADIUS (ft) = $\frac{\text{Cross Sectional Area of Flow (ft)}}{\text{Wetted pipe Perimeter (ft)}}$

WATER HORSEPOWER = $\frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960}$

BRAKE HORSEPOWER = $\frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960 \times \text{Pump Efficiency}}$

MOTOR HORSEPOWER = $\frac{\text{Flow (gpm)} \times \text{Head (ft)}}{3960 \times \text{Pump Eff.} \times \text{Motor Eff.}}$

MEAN OR AVERAGE = $\frac{\text{Sum of the Values}}{\text{Number of Values}}$

TOTAL HEAD (ft) = Suction Lift (ft) X Discharge Head (ft)

SURFACE LOADING RATE (gal/min/sq.ft) = $\frac{\text{Flow Rate (gpm)}}{\text{Surface Area (sq. ft)}}$

MIXTURE STRENGTH (%) = $\frac{(\text{Volume 1, gal})(\text{Strength 1, \%}) + (\text{Volume 2, gal})(\text{Strength 2,\%})}{(\text{Volume 1, gal}) + (\text{Volume 2, gal})}$

INJURY FREQUENCY RATE = $\frac{(\text{Number of Injuries})\ 1{,}000{,}000}{\text{Number of hours worked per year}}$

DETENTION TIME (hrs) = $\frac{\text{Volume of Basin (gals)} \times 24\ \text{hrs}}{\text{Flow (GPD)}}$

SLOPE = $\frac{\text{Rise (ft)}}{\text{Run (ft)}}$

SLOPE (%) = $\frac{\text{Rise (ft)}}{\text{Run (ft)}} \times 100$

POPULATION EQUIVALENT (PE):

1 PE = .17 Pounds of BOD per Day
1 PE = .20 Pounds of Solids per Day
1 PE = 100 Gallons per Day

LEAKAGE (GPD/inch) = $\frac{\text{Leakage of Water per Day (GPD)}}{\text{Sewer Diameter (inch)}}$

CHLORINE DEMAND (mg/L) = Chlorine Dose (mg/L) – Chlorine Residual (mg/L)

MANNING FORMULA

τQ = Allowable time for decrease in pressure from 3.5 PSU to 2.5 PSI
τq = As below

$\tau Q = (0.022)\ (d_1{}^2 L_1)/Q \quad \tau q = \frac{[\,0.085]}{q}\ [(d_1{}^2 L1)/(d_1 L_1)]$

Q = 2.0 cfm air loss
θ = .0030 cfm air loss per square foot of internal pipe surface
δ = Pipe diameter (inches)
L = Pipe Length (feet)

$V = \frac{1.486}{\nu} R^{2/3} S^{1/2}$

V = Velocity (ft./sec.)
ν = Pipe Roughness
R = Hydraulic Radius (ft)
S= Slope (ft/ft)

HYDRAULIC RADIUS (ft) = $\frac{\text{Flow Area (ft. 2)}}{\text{Wetted Perimeter (ft.)}}$

WIDTH OF TRENCH (ft) = Base (ft) + (2 Sides) X $\frac{\text{Depth (ft 2)}}{\text{Slope}}$

Wastewater Collections Glossary

Absorption Area: Means the entire area used for underground dispersion of the liquid portion of sewage including the area designated for a future replacement system. It may consist of a seepage pit, absorption field, or combination of the two. It may also consist of a cesspool, seepage bed, bottomless sand filter, or evapotranspiration-absorption system.
Absorption Facility: Means a system of open-jointed or perforated piping, alternative distribution units, or other seepage systems for receiving the flow from septic tanks or other treatment facilities that are designed to distribute effluent for oxidation and absorption by the soil within the zone of aeration.
Absorption Field: Means a system of absorption trenches, a seepage trench, or a system of seepage trenches.
Absorption Trench: Means a ditch or a trench installed into soil, permeable saprolite, or diggable bedrock, with vertical sides and a substantially flat bottom.
Active Sand Dune: Means wind-drifted ridges and intervening valleys, pockets, and swales of sand adjacent to the beach. The sand is grayish-brown with little or no horizon, color, or textural difference. Active dunes are either bare of vegetation or lack sufficient vegetation to prevent blowing of sand.
Aeration: A method of controlling hydrogen sulfide by chemical treatment that is considered the least expensive.
Aerobic Sewage Treatment Facility: Means a sewage treatment plant that incorporates a means of introducing air and oxygen into the sewage to provide aerobic biochemical stabilization during a detention period. Aerobic sewage treatment facilities may include anaerobic processes as part of the treatment system.
Aerobic System: Means an alternative system that incorporates a septic tank or other treatment facility, an aerobic sewage treatment facility, and an absorption facility to provide treatment before dispersal.
Air Gap Installation: The only acceptable method to prevent a cross-connection when filling a tank truck from a fire hydrant.
Air Gap: This device should be observed when filling a water truck to clean sewers. There should be an air gap between the discharge line and the top of the water level to prevent a cross connection.
Alternative System: Means any onsite wastewater treatment system DEQ or the Commission approves for use in lieu of the standard subsurface system.
Alternative Treatment Technologies: Means an alternative system that incorporates aerobic and other treatment technologies or units not specifically described elsewhere in this division.
Ambient Temperature: The surrounding temperature.
Anaerobic: The absence of dissolved molecular oxygen.
ASTM: Means American Society of Testing Materials.
Authorization Notice: Means a written document issued by an agent establishing that an existing onsite wastewater treatment system appears adequate for its intended use.
Automatic Siphon: Means a hydraulic device designed to rapidly discharge the contents of a dosing tank between predetermined liquid levels.
Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD5): Means the quantity of oxygen used in the biochemical oxidation of organic matter in five days at 20 degrees centigrade under specified conditions and reported as milligrams per liter (mg/L).
Black Waste: Means human body wastes including feces, urine, other substances of body origin, and toilet paper.
Capping Fill System: Means an alternative system that incorporates an absorption trench with an effective sidewall installed a minimum of 12 inches into the natural soil below a soil cap of specified depth and texture.
Carbonaceous Biochemical Oxygen Demand (CBOD5): Means BOD minus the nitrogenous oxygen demand, typically measured in mg/L.
CCTV: The main purpose for using a video camera while inspecting a sewer line is that it provides operators with a picture record, for log entries and of conditions of trouble spots in the lines. During a CCTV inspection of a sewer line, roots intruding a joint, illegal taps or cracks may be observed.
Centrifugal Pump: Centrifugal pumps are a sub-class of dynamic axisymmetric work-absorbing turbomachinery. Centrifugal pumps are used to transport fluids by the conversion of rotational kinetic energy

to the hydrodynamic energy of the fluid flow. The rotational energy typically comes from an engine or electric motor.
Cesspool: Means a lined pit that receives raw sewage, allows separation of solids and liquids, retains the solids, and allows liquids to seep into the surrounding soil through perforations in the lining.
Chemical Recirculating Toilet Facility: Means a toilet facility in which black wastes are deposited and carried from a bowl by a combination of chemically treated and filtered liquid waste and water.
Chemical Toilet Facility: Means a nonflushing, nonrecirculating toilet facility in which black wastes are deposited directly into a chamber containing a solution of water and chemical.
Clayey Soil: Means mineral soil with over 40 percent clay that shrinks and develops wide cracks when dry and swells and shears when wet, forming slickensides and wedge-shaped structure. Clayey soil is very hard or extremely hard when dry, very firm when moist, and very sticky and very plastic when wet.
Claypan: Means a dense, compact clay layer in the subsoil. It has a much lower permeability than the overlying soil horizon from which it is separated by an abrupt boundary. Claypans are hard when dry and very sticky and very plastic when wet and impede movement of water, air, and growth of plant roots.
Combustion Toilet Facility: Means a toilet facility wherein black wastes are deposited directly into a combination chamber for incineration.
Commercial Facility: Means any structure or building or portion of one other than a single-family dwelling.
Community System: Means an onsite system that serves more than one lot or parcel, more than one condominium unit, or more than one unit of a planned unit development.
Confined Space: The definition of a hazardous atmosphere is an atmosphere that is explosive, flammable, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritating, oxygen-deficient, toxic, or otherwise harmful that may cause death, illness, or injury. Below 19.5%O2 percentage an atmosphere is considered oxygen deficient. The detailed plan for emergency response to an injury or other emergency within the confined space should be described in detail in the water system's Confined Space Entry Program. Entry into a confined space requires a confined space entry permit. Atmospheric monitoring in a confined space should be performed continuously from pre-entry to exit. Hot Work permit type is required when operations may cause a source of ignition to a material or substance, or create a work induced hazard by ignition within any confined space. A Type 2 confined space or permit required confined space has the characteristic of containing or has the potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere.
Confining Layer: Means a layer associated with an aquifer that, because of low permeability, does not allow water to move through it perceptibly under head differences occurring in the groundwater system.
Construction: Includes installing a new system, or a part of one, or altering, repairing, or extending an existing system. The grading, excavating, and earth-moving work connected with installing, altering, or repairing a system or a part of one is considered system construction.
Conventional Sand Filter: Means a filter with 2 feet or more of sand filter media designed to chemically and biologically process septic tank or other treatment unit effluent from a pressure distribution system operated on an intermittent basis.
Curtain Drain: Means a groundwater interceptor that is designed to divert groundwater from an absorption facility. The drain creates a "curtain" to block water from reaching the absorption facility.
Cut-manmade: Means a land surface resulting from mechanical land shaping operations where the modified slope is greater than 50 percent and the depth of cut exceeds 30 inches.
Design Capacity: Means the maximum daily flow a system is designed to treat and disperse.
Design Criteria: Means the criteria used in designing onsite wastewater treatment systems including but not limited to dimensions, geometry, type of materials, size of drain media or filter media, absorption field sizing, depth, grade or slope, hydraulic loading rate, or any other factor relevant to the successful operation of the system. It does not include absorption area siting criteria.
Designer: Means a person who plans onsite wastewater treatment and dispersal technology for an onsite system.
Disposal Trench: Means "absorption trench."
Distribution Box: Means a watertight structure that receives septic tank or other treatment facility effluent and distributes it concurrently into 2 or more header pipes leading to the absorption area.
Distribution Pipe: Means an open-jointed or perforated pipe used in the dispersion of septic tank or other treatment facility effluent into absorption trenches, seepage trenches, or seepage beds.
Distribution Unit: Means a distribution box, dosing tank, diversion valve or box, header pipe, or other means of transmitting septic tank or other treatment unit effluent from the effluent sewer to the distribution pipes.

Diversion Valve: Means a watertight structure that receives septic tank or other treatment facility effluent through one inlet and distributes it to 2 outlets, only one of which is used at a time.
Dosing Septic Tank: Means a unitized device performing functions of both a septic tank and a dosing tank.
Dosing Tank: Means a watertight receptacle placed after a septic tank or other treatment facility equipped with an automatic siphon or pump.
Drain Media: Means clean washed gravel or clean, crushed rock with a minimum size of 3/4 inch and a maximum size of 2-1/2 inches used in the distribution of effluent. The material must be durable and inert so that it will maintain its integrity, will not collapse or disintegrate with time, and will not be detrimental to the performance of the system. Drain media also includes any product or material approved by DEQ for distribution of effluent in an absorption field.
Drainfield: Means an "absorption field."
Ductile iron pipe (DIP): A type of pipe that is recommended when crossing another underground utility.
Dwelling: Means any structure or building or portion thereof that is used, intended, or designed to be occupied for human living purposes including but not limited to houses, houseboats, boathouses, mobile homes, recreational cabins, travel trailers, hotels, motels, and apartments.
Effective Seepage Area: Means the sidewall area within an absorption trench or a seepage trench from the bottom of the trench to a level 2 inches above the distribution pipes, the sidewall area of any cesspool, seepage pit, unsealed earth pit privy, graywater waste absorption sump seepage chamber, or trench with drain media substitute, or the bottom area of a pressurized soil absorption facility installed in soil.
Effective Soil Depth: Means the depth of soil material above a layer that impedes movement of water and air and growth of plant roots. Layers that differ from overlying soil material enough to limit effective soil depth are hardpans, claypans, fragipans, compacted soil, bedrock, saprolite, and clayey soil.
Effluent Filter: Means an effluent treatment device installed on the outlet of a septic tank or outside the septic tank in a separate enclosure and designed to prevent the passage of suspended matter larger than 1/8 inch in size.
Effluent Lift Pump: Means a pump used to lift septic tank or other treatment facility effluent to a higher elevation.
Effluent Sewer: Means that part of the system of drainage piping that conveys partially treated sewage from a septic tank or other treatment facility into a distribution unit or an absorption facility.
Emergency Repair: Means immediate action to repair a failing system when sewage is backing up into a dwelling or building or to repair a broken pressure sewer pipe. It does not include the construction of new or additional absorption facilities but does include using the septic tank as a temporary holding tank until new or additional absorption facilities can be permitted and constructed.
Equal Distribution: Means the distribution of effluent to a set of absorption trenches in which each trench receives effluent in equivalent or proportional volumes.
Escarpment: Means any naturally occurring slope greater than 50 percent that extends vertically 6 feet or more from toe to top, is characterized by a long cliff or steep slope that separates two or more comparatively level or gently sloping surfaces, and may intercept one or more layers that limit effective soil depth.
Failing System: Means any system that discharges untreated or incompletely treated sewage or septic tank effluent directly or indirectly onto the ground surface or into public waters or that creates a public health hazard.
Fecal Coliform: Means bacteria common to the digestive systems of warm-blooded animals and cultured in standard tests. The term is typically used to indicate fecal pollution and the possible presence of enteric pathogens and is measured as colonies/100ml.
Ferric Chloride: ($FeCl3$) This chemical can be used to remove sulfides by precipitation.
Filter Fabric: Means a woven or spun-bonded sheet material used to impede or prevent the movement of sand, silt, and clay into drain media.
Fire Point: The temperature at which oil vaporizes enough to keep burning.
Fragipan: Means a loamy subsurface horizon with high bulk density relative to the horizon above, seemingly cemented when dry, and weakly to moderately brittle when moist. Fragipans are mottled and low in organic matter, and they impede movement of water and air and growth of plant roots.
Gas Chlorine: Discharged when opening the top valve on a one-ton chlorine cylinder.
Grade: Means the rate of fall or drop in inches per foot or the percentage of fall of a pipe.
Gravity Sewer: A sewer systems that conveys sewage via gravity. Components of a gravity collection system: Main sewers, Manholes, Lateral sewers and Lift stations, but does not contain not Vacuum interface pumps or Grinder Pumps.

Graywater Waste Sump: Means a receptacle or series of receptacles designed to receive hand-carried graywater for dispersal into the soil.
Graywater: Means household sewage other than "black wastes," such as bath water, kitchen wastewater, and laundry wastes.
Grease and Oils: Means a component of sewage typically originating from foodstuffs, consisting of compounds of alcohol or glycerol with fatty acids.
Grease Removal: Various methods are often implemented to control grease, including Ordinances, Violations of codes, Inspections and complaints. Some chemicals will remove grease, but chemicals may be very effective under specific conditions, but may not work in all conditions. The best method is for the customer to maintain the grease device and for regular cleaning.
Groundwater Interceptor: Means any natural or artificial groundwater or surface water drainage system, including drain tile, curtain drain, foundation drain, cut banks, and ditches, that intercept and divert groundwater or surface water from the area of the absorption facility.
Hardpan: Means a hardened layer in soil caused by cementation of soil particles with silica, calcium carbonate, magnesium carbonate, iron, or organic matter. The hardness does not change appreciably with changes in moisture content. Hardpans impede movement of water and air and growth of plant roots.
Hazardous Energy: Hazardous energy comes in different forms. Understanding these sources of hazardous energy is very important in the overall process of controlling it. First is kinetic or mechanical energy, which comes from moving parts of machines like propellers, blades, moving chains, and conveyor belts. When not properly controlled, these can lacerate, cut, crush, amputate, and fracture body parts. Another form of hazardous energy is electrical energy, which generates electricity and can be stored in batteries and capacitors. Pneumatic and hydraulic system, springs, gas tanks, and pressure vessels uses potential energy. On the other hand, some hazards can come from thermal energy. But whatever the source of energy, it all boils down to one point: it can bring danger and therefore, must be controlled.
Header Pipe: Means a tight-jointed part of the sewage drainage conduit that receives septic tank effluent from the distribution box, drop box, or effluent sewer and conveys it to the absorption area.
Headwall: Means a steep slope at the head or upper end of a land slump block or unstable landform.
Hearing Protection: It is the employer's responsibility to ensure that you are provided proper hearing protection. The first step to ensure adequate protection for employees is to ensure that engineered controls are used on equipment whenever possible and provide hearing protection.
Holding Tank System: Means an alternative system consisting of the combination of a holding tank, service riser, and level indicator (alarm), designed to receive and store sewage for intermittent removal for treatment at another location.
Holding Tank: Means a watertight receptacle designed to receive and store sewage to facilitate treatment at another location.
Hydro-brake: A vortex flow regulator.
Hydrogen Sulfide Reduction: Salts of zinc and iron may precipitate sulfides. Lime treatments can kill bacteria which produce hydrogen sulfide, but create a sludge disposal problem. Chlorination is effective at reducing the bacteria which produce hydrogen sulfide. Chemical treatment is not the preferred treatment method for reducing hydrogen sulfide, but regular cleaning is. A concentration of 0.4 or 40% hydrogen peroxide should be used to control hydrogen sulfide.
Hydrogen Sulfide: Hydrogen sulfide is the chemical compound with the formula H 2S. It is a colorless chalcogen hydride gas with the characteristic foul odor of rotten eggs. It is very poisonous, corrosive, and flammable. Hydrogen sulfide often produced from the microbial breakdown of organic matter in the absence of oxygen gas, such as in swamps and sewers; this process is commonly known as anaerobic digestion which is done by sulfate-reducing microorganisms.
Hydrosplitter or Hydrasplitter: Means a hydraulic device to proportion flow under pressure by the use of one or more orifices.
Hypochlorous acid: This species of chlorine is the most germicidal of all chlorine compounds with the possible exception of chlorine dioxide.
Incinerator Toilet Facility: Means "combustion toilet facility."
Individual System: Means a system that is not a community system.
Individual Water Supply: Means a source of water and a distribution system that provides water for drinking, culinary, or household uses and is not a public water supply system.

Industrial Waste: Means any liquid, gaseous, radioactive, or solid waste or a combination thereof resulting from any process of industry, manufacturing, trade, or business or from developing or recovering any natural resources.
Intermittent Sand Filter: Means a conventional sand filter.
Intermittent Stream: Means any public surface water or groundwater interceptor that continuously flows water for a period greater than two months in any one year but not continuously for that year.
Invert: Is the lowest portion of the internal cross section of a pipe or fitting.
Invert: The invert of a pipe is the inner bottom of the pipe.
Lamping: Using reflected sunlight or artificial light to inspect a sewer between two adjacent manholes. The light is directed down the pipe from one manhole. If it can be seen from the next manhole, it indicates that the line is open and straight. The purpose of lamping a new collection system is to test for obstructions and straightness.
Large System: Means any onsite system with a projected daily sewage flow greater than 2,500 gallons.
Lateral Pipe: Means "distribution pipe."
Lift Station Book: A book or log inside the lift station contains all the ID numbers and maps of the station.
Lift Station Pump: A positive pressure develops when a lift station pump discharges into the force main. A Swing check valve is used to prevent the discharged wastewater from flowing back into the wet well when the pump shuts off.
Lift Station: A **lift station** is a type of pumping **station** used to move wastewater from a lower elevation to a higher one. It is typically used to move raw sewage to a treatment facility for processing. Most failures of a lift station can be avoided by proper preventive maintenance. The following pieces of equipment would be expected in a dry well: Electric controls, Motors, Pumps but not float switches
LOTO Lock: See hazardous energy: The definition of an "Energy Isolating Device" is a mechanical device that physically prevents the transmission or release of energy. Pneumatic, Chemical, Hydraulic, Kinetic, Electrical, Thermal and Mechanical are all forms of hazardous energy. The following are listed as a form of hazardous energy under OSHA 29 CFR 1910.147: Electrical energy in a pump station, Hydraulic pressure in a pipeline, known as static Head, Mechanical energy in a surge-relief valve, but not magnetic energy in a motor coil.
Magnetic Starters: A magnetic starter is an electromagnetically operated switch which provides a safe method for starting an electric motor with a large load. Magnetic starters also provide under-voltage and overload protection and an automatic cut-off in the event of a power failure.
Major Repair: Is replacing the soil absorption facility, treatment unit, or any part of it.
Manhole: A manhole is the top opening to an underground utility vault used to house an access point for making connections, inspection, valve adjustments or performing maintenance on underground and buried public utility and other services including water, sewers, telephone, electricity, storm drains, district heating and gas. The following items are to be examined when inspecting a manhole: Inside surfaces and joints for cracks or breaks, Elevation of the lid and noises that indicate infiltration from cracked or broken pipes, not inadequate sewer use ordinances. If a manhole has been covered due to construction, landscaping, or other activities, bring the entry up to grade. Upstream and downstream manholes should be inspected prior to excavating a section of sewer for replacement to determine the volume of flow.
Mechanical seals: A **mechanical seal** is a device that helps join systems or mechanisms together by preventing leakage (e.g. in a plumbing system), containing pressure, or excluding contamination. Most mechanical seals require tap water lubrication.
Mechanical Sewage Treatment Facility or Mechanical Oxidation Sewage Treatment Facility: Means an aerobic sewage treatment facility.
Megger: A piece of equipment used to aid in testing for insulation resistance in a submersible pump motor.
Megohmmeter is a special type of ohmmeter used to measure the electrical resistance of insulators. Insulating components, for example cable jackets, must be tested for their insulation strength at the time of commissioning and as part of maintenance of high voltage electrical equipment and installations. For this purpose megohmmeters, which can provide high DC voltages (typically, in ranges from 500 V to 5 kV, some are up to 15 kV) at specified current capacity, are used. Acceptable insulator resistance values are typically 1 to 10 megohms, depending on the standards referenced.
Minor Repair: Is replacing a septic tank, broken pipe, distribution unit, or any part of the onsite system external to the septic tank or treatment facility except the soil absorption system. Unless classified as a major repair or major maintenance, any replacement of a part of a system with a part that does not meet the original design specifications is a minor repair.

Nonwater-Carried Waste Facility: Means any toilet facility that has no direct water connection, including but not limited to pit privies, vault privies, and portable toilets.
Offset Stakes: Are control points and are set from the actual sewer line at 5 ft. - 10 ft.
Ohmmeter: See Megger. A Coil or relay might be tested using an Ohmmeter. Infinity is the most likely Ohmmeter reading of a circuit or relay that is found to be defective.
Olfactory Fatigue: Olfactory fatigue is the loss of smell. Common with Cl_2 and H_2S.
Onsite Sewage Disposal System: Means "onsite wastewater treatment system."
Onsite Wastewater Treatment System: Means any existing or proposed subsurface onsite wastewater treatment and dispersal system including but not limited to a standard subsurface, alternative, experimental, or nonwater-carried sewage system.
Oxygen Deficient: The condition of deficient oxygen is **hypoxia**, and the condition of no oxygen is anoxia. Blood cells are aerobic so they need oxygen to survive. If you have below normal oxygen levels, you're not providing your blood with its fuel; you're basically starving your blood cells. Typically, any time your gas meter reads less than 19.5 percent oxygen.
Permanent Groundwater Table: Means the upper surface of a saturated zone that exists year-round. The thickness of the saturated zone and resulting elevation of the permanent groundwater table may fluctuate as much as 20 feet or more annually, but the saturated zone and associated permanent groundwater table is present at some depth beneath land surface throughout the year.
Piezometer: An instrument used to measure the pressure head in a pipe, tank, or soil.
Piston Pump: Concerning the discharge of water from a piston pump, the discharge valve should always remain open. Relief valve on discharge side of pump is used in order to prevent injuries or severe damage to piston pumps.
Plug Valve: Can be used to replace a suction side pump valve that is continually clogging.
Pollution or Water Pollution: Means any alteration of the physical, chemical, or biological properties of any waters of the state, including change in temperature, taste, color, turbidity, silt, or odor of the waters, or any discharge of any liquid, gaseous, solid, radioactive, or other substance into any waters of the state that, alone, or in connection with any other substance, threatens to create a public nuisance or render such waters harmful, detrimental, or injurious to public health, safety, or welfare or to domestic, commercial, industrial, agricultural, recreational or other legitimate beneficial uses or to livestock, wildlife, fish, or other aquatic life or their habitat.
Portable Toilet Shelter: Means any readily relocatable structure built to house a toilet facility.
Portable Toilet: Means any self-contained chemical toilet facility that is housed within a portable toilet shelter and includes but is not limited to construction-type chemical toilets.
Pressure Distribution Lateral: Means piping and fittings in pressure distribution systems that distribute septic tank or other treatment unit effluent to drain media through small diameter orifices.
Pressure Distribution Manifold: Means piping and fittings in a pressure distribution system that supply effluent from pressure transport piping to pressure distribution laterals.
Pressure Distribution System: Means any system designed to uniformly distribute septic tank or other treatment unit effluent under pressure in an absorption facility or treatment unit.
Pressure Transport Piping: Means piping that conveys sewage effluent from a septic tank or other treatment or distribution unit typically by means of a pump or siphon.
Pretreatment: Means the wastewater treatment that takes place prior to discharging to any component of an onsite wastewater treatment system, including but not limited to pH adjustment, oil and grease removal, BOD5 and TSS reduction, screening, and detoxification.
Privy: Means a structure used for disposal of human waste without the aid of water. It consists of a shelter built above a pit or vault in the ground into which human waste falls.
Projected Daily Sewage Flow or Design Flow: Means the peak daily quantity of sewage production from a facility for which a system is sized and designed. The projected daily sewage flow allows for a safety margin and reserve capacity for the system during periods of heavy use.
Public Health Hazard: Means the presence of sufficient types or amounts of biological, chemical, physical, or radiological agents relating to water or sewage that cause, or threaten to cause, human illness, disorders, or disability. These include but are not limited to pathogenic viruses, bacteria, parasites, toxic chemicals, and radioactive isotopes.
Pump Closed-Coupled: A close-coupled pump means that there is no coupling between the motor and pump.
Pump Curve: Used to compare the actual pump efficiency to its expected efficiency.

Pump Problems: A Plugged exhaust port might cause a positive displacement diaphragm pump to cycle improperly.
Recirculating Gravel Filter (RGF): Means a gravel filter wastewater treatment system in which a portion of the filtered effluent is mixed with septic tank effluent in a recirculation/dilution tank and redistributed to the filter.
Recirculating Gravel Filter System: Means a recirculating gravel filter and an absorption facility used to treat wastewater.
Redundant Absorption Field System: Means a system in which two complete absorption fields are installed, the absorption trenches of each system alternate with each other, and only one system operates at a given time.
Relative Compaction: Refers to the level of compaction obtained compared to the level possible under ideal conditions.
Repair: Means installing all portions of a system necessary to eliminate a public health hazard or pollution of public waters a failing system creates.
Residential Strength Wastewater: Means septic tank effluent that does not typically exceed five-day biochemical oxygen demand (BOD5) of 300 mg/L; total suspended solids (TSS) of 150 mg/L; total Kjeldahl nitrogen (TKN) of 150 mg/L; oil & grease of 25 mg/L; or concentrations or quantities of other contaminants normally found in residential sewage.
Rodding: A stick, wand, staff, or the like, of wood, metal, or other material used to clean a sewer line. It may be advantageous to rod a sewer line from an upstream position if a high head of water developed at the stoppage. Rodding the line would be the best suited for cutting roots, removing hardened grease, and for scraping and dislodging certain types of materials found in sewers.
Sand Filter Media: Means a medium sand or other approved material used in a conventional sand filter. The media must be durable and inert so that it will maintain its integrity, will not collapse or disintegrate with time, and will not be detrimental to the system's performance. The particle size distribution of the media must be determined through a sieve analysis conducted under ASTM C-117 and ASTM C-136. The media must comply with the following particle size distribution: 100 percent passing the 3/8 inch sieve, 95 percent to 100 percent passing the No. 4 sieve, 80 percent to 100 percent passing the No. 8 sieve, 45 percent to 85 percent passing the No. 16 sieve, 15 percent to 60 percent passing the No. 30 sieve, 3 percent to 15 percent passing the No. 50 sieve, and 4 percent or less passing the No. 100 sieve.
Sand Filter Surface Area: Means the area of the level plane section in the medium sand horizon of a conventional sand filter located 2 feet below the bottom of the drain media containing the pressurized distribution piping.
Sand Filter System: Means an alternative system that combines a septic tank or other treatment unit; a dosing system with effluent pump and controls or dosing siphon, piping and fittings; a sand filter; and an absorption facility to treat wastewater.
Sanitary Drainage System: Means that part of a system's drainage piping that conveys untreated sewage from a building or structure to a septic tank or other treatment facility, to a service lateral at a curb or in a street or alley, or to another disposal terminal holding human or domestic sewage. The sanitary drainage system consists of a building drain or building drain and building sewer.
Saprolite: Means weathered material underlying the soil that grades from soft thoroughly decomposed rock to rock that has been weathered sufficiently so that it can be broken in the hands or cut with a knife. It has rock structure instead of soil structure and does not include hard bedrock or hard fractured bedrock.
Saturated Zone: Means a three-dimensional layer, lens, or other section of the subsurface in which all open spaces including joints, fractures, interstitial voids, and pores are filled with groundwater. The thickness and extent of a saturated zone may vary seasonally or periodically in response to changes in the rate or amount of groundwater recharge or discharge.
Scouring Velocity: Refers to the flow required to prevent the deposition and buildup of solids.
Scum: Means a mass of sewage solids floating at the surface of sewage that is buoyed up by entrained gas, grease, or other substances.
Seepage Area: Means "effective seepage area."
Seepage Bed: Means an absorption system having absorption trenches wider than 3 feet.
Seepage Pit: Means a cesspool that has a treatment facility such as a septic tank ahead of it.
Seepage Trench System: Means a system with absorption trenches with more than 6 inches of drain media below the distribution pipe.

Self-Contained Nonwater-Carried Waste Containment Facility: Means a system in which all waste is contained in a watertight receptacle, including but not limited to vault privies, chemical toilets, combustion toilets, recirculating toilets, and portable toilets.

Septage: Means the domestic liquid and solid sewage pumped from septic tanks, cesspools, holding tanks, vault toilets, chemical toilets or other similar domestic sewage treatment components or systems and other sewage sludge not derived at sewage treatment plants.

Septic Tank Effluent: Means partially treated sewage that is discharged from a septic tank.

Septic Tank: Means a watertight receptacle that receives sewage from a sanitary drainage system and is designed to separate solids from liquids, digest organic matter during a period of detention, and allow the liquids to discharge to a second treatment unit or to a soil absorption facility.

Serial Distribution: Means the distribution of effluent to a set of absorption trenches constructed at different elevations in which one trench at a time receives effluent in consecutive order beginning with the uppermost trench by means of a drop box, a serial overflow, or another approved distribution unit. The effluent in an individual trench must reach a level of 2 inches above the distribution pipe before effluent is distributed to the next lower trench.

Sewage Stabilization Pond: Means a pond designed to receive the raw sewage flow from a dwelling or other building and retain that flow for treatment without discharge.

Sewage: Means water-carried human and animal wastes, including kitchen, bath, and laundry wastes from residences, buildings, industrial establishments, or other places, together with any groundwater infiltration, surface waters, or industrial waste that may be present.

Sewer Bedding: The proper method for bedding a sewer line is to bed the new section 6 to 12 inches above the top of the pipe.

Sewer Cleaning: Sewer cleaning should be scheduled on a regular cycle: for example, 100 percent of the pipes are cleaned every 1, 3, or 5 years. However, unless the cleaning schedule is adjusted to take into account the actual conditions in various parts of the collection system pipelines, routine cleaning can result in over-maintenance of the system. In most collection systems, some sections do not require frequent cleaning while other sections may require cleaning on a more frequent basis, such as monthly, if they are susceptible to blockages. Information from the inspection program should be used to help identify chronic problem areas in the gravity sewer system and related structures in the wastewater collection system, quantify defects and problem areas, and develop a preventive maintenance sewer cleaning program based on actual conditions in a particular wastewater collection system.

Sewer Map: Elevations typically represented on a collection system map by the elevation of the invert.

Sewer Odor: Primarily is H_2S. A major problem with using an odor-masking agent is that they do not eliminate the source of the odor problem.

Sewer Problem: A few problems that result from the blockage of a sewer system: Overflowing manholes, septic wastewater, flooded basements and buildings but not increased annual flows. An air seal will form; causing odor problems that could be expected in a sewer line that enters a larger sewer line below the water level.

Site Evaluation Report: Means a report on the evaluation of a site to determine its suitability for an onsite system.

Slope: Means the rate of fall or drop in feet per 100 feet of the ground surface. It is expressed as percent of grade.

Smoke Testing: A method used to detect any water other than wastewater entering the **sewer** system. This water could be coming from roof leaders, cross connections between the wastewater and stormwater systems, cleanouts, driveway and yard drains, damage to the wastewater system, loose joints in the wastewater pipes, etc. When smoke testing a line, a non-toxic smoke bombs should be used.

Split Waste Method: Means a process where black waste sewage and graywater from the same dwelling or building are managed by separate systems.

Stabilized Dune: Means a sand dune that is similar to an active dune except that vegetative growth is dense enough to prevent blowing of sand. The surface horizon is either covered by a mat of decomposed and partially decomposed leaves, needles, roots, twigs, moss, or other vegetative material or contains roots to a depth of at least 6 inches and has a color value of 3 or less.

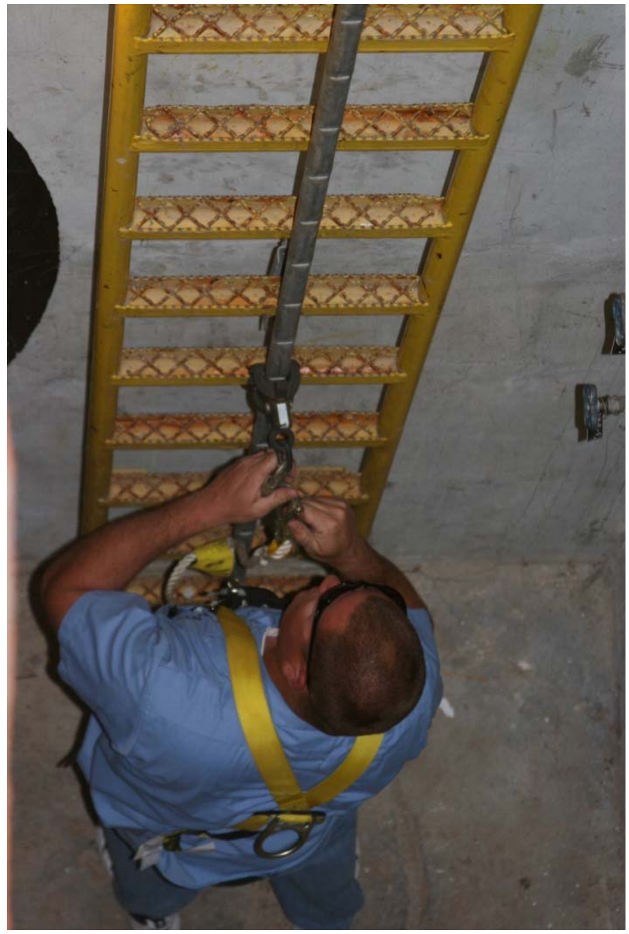
Standard Subsurface System: Means an onsite wastewater treatment system consisting of a septic tank, distribution unit, and absorption facility.

Steep Slope System: Means a seepage trench system installed on slopes greater than 30 percent and less than or equal to 45 percent.

Subsurface Absorption System: Means the combination of a septic tank or other treatment unit and an effluent sewer and absorption facility.
Subsurface Disposal System: Means "subsurface absorption system."
Subsurface Sewage Disposal: Means "subsurface wastewater treatment."
Subsurface Wastewater Treatment: Means dispersing wastewater from a septic tank or other treatment unit into the zone of aeration to be further treated through physical, chemical, or biological processes.
Temporary Groundwater Table: Means the upper surface of a saturated zone that exists only on a seasonal or periodic basis. Like a permanent groundwater table, the elevation of a temporary groundwater table may fluctuate, but a temporary groundwater table and associated saturated zone will dry up for a period of time each year.
Test Pit: Means an open pit dug to sufficient size and depth to permit thoroughly examining the soil to evaluate its suitability for subsurface wastewater treatment.
Thermal Overload: The greatest cause of failure in an electric motor. A **thermal overload** relay is a small electromechanical device that protects motors from overheating. These relays help to control the electrical current that goes to the motor to prevent it from overheating.
Tile Dewatering System: Means an alternative system in which the absorption facility is encompassed with field collection drainage tile to reduce and control a groundwater table and create a zone of aeration below the bottom of the absorption facility.
Time-delay Fuse: The recommended type of fuse to use in the circuit leading to the electric motor.
Toilet Facility: Means a fixture housed within a toilet room or shelter to receive black waste.
Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen (TKN): Means the combination of ammonia and organic nitrogen, excluding nitrate and nitrite nitrogen.
Total Nitrogen (TN): Means the sum of all nitrogen forms.
Total Suspended Solids (TSS): Means solids in wastewater that can be removed readily by standard filtering procedures in a laboratory and reported as milligrams per liter (mg/L).
Treatment Standard 1: Means a 30-day average of less than 20 mg/L of BOD5 and 20 mg/L of TSS. A 30-day average of less than 17 mg/L of CBOD5 is acceptable in lieu of the BOD5 value.
Treatment Standard 2: Means a 30-day average of less than 20 mg/L of BOD5 and 20 mg/L of TSS, a 30-day geometric mean of less than 400 fecal coliform per 100 milliliters, and a 30-day average of 30 mg/L of TN. A 30-day average of less than 17 mg/L of CBOD5 is acceptable in lieu of the BOD5 value.
Treatment: Means the alteration of the quality of wastewaters by physical, chemical, or biological means or combination thereof to reduce potential degradation of water quality or the environment and risk to public health.
Trench Safety: If a trench is more than five feet deep the spoil must be placed at least 2 feet from the trench and only on one side of the trench.12 inches is the minimum compaction height of backfill when laying piping in Class A or Class B bedding. Subsidence of ground and/or adjacent structures could possibly happen when groundwater is removed from a construction site or trench. The maximum depth of the cut below the bottom of a shield when used for earth excavation: Earth excavation to a depth of 2 ft (0.61 m) below the shield is permitted, but only if the shield is designed to resist the forces calculated for the full depth of the trench. The definition of a "trench" excavation is a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground.
Trench: Is a type of excavation or depression in the ground that is generally deeper than it is wide (as opposed to a wider gully, or ditch), and narrow compared with its length (as opposed to a simple hole).
Turbidity: Means the optical condition of waters caused by suspended or dissolved particles or colloids that scatter and absorb light rays instead of transmitting light in straight lines through the water column. Turbidity may be expressed as nephelometric turbidity units (NTU) measured with a calibrated turbidimeter.
Underdrain Media: Means the material placed under the sand filter media in a sand filter and consists of clean, washed pea gravel with 100 percent passing the 1/2 inch sieve, 18 to 100 percent passing the 1/4 inch sieve, 5 to 75 percent passing the No. 4 sieve, 24 percent or less passing the No. 10 sieve, 2 percent or less passing the No. 16 sieve, and 1 percent or less passing the No. 100 sieve.
Unscheduled Cleaning: Is usually the result of a reported stoppage and is therefore reactive. When reactive maintenance is the primary form of maintenance (that is, waiting until a failure occurs before performing maintenance), it will always result in poor system performance, especially as the system ages. Normally, this type of cleaning is done on an emergency basis to clear a stoppage, restore pipe capacity to full flow, and relieve a surcharging situation in the sewer that has caused a backup into homes and/or an overflow.

Unstable Landforms: Means areas showing evidence of mass downslope movement such as debris flow, landslides, rockfall, and hummock hill slopes with undrained depressions upslope. Examples are landforms exhibiting slip surfaces roughly parallel to the hillside; landslide scars and curving debris ridges; fences, trees, and telephone poles that appear tilted; and tree trunks that bend uniformly as they enter the ground. Active sand dunes are unstable landforms.
Vertisols: Means a mineral soil characterized by a high content of swelling-type clays that in dry seasons
Zone of Aeration: Means the unsaturated zone that occurs below the ground surface and above the point at which the upper limit of the water table exists.

Collection References



Water Resource Center
U.S. EPA
Mail Code RC-41OO
401 M Street, S.W.
Washington, D.C. 20460
Telephone: (202) 260-7786
Fax: (202) 260-0386
Internet: waterpubs@epamail.epa.gov

National Small Flows Clearinghouse
West Virginia University
Post Office Box 6064
Morgantown, WV 26506
Telephone: (800) 624-8301
Fax: (304) 293-3161
Internet: http://www.nsfc.wvu.edu
National Center for Environmental
Publications and Information (**NCEPI**)
11029 Kenwood Road
Building #5
Cincinnati, OH 45242
Telephone: (513) 489-8190 or (800) 490-9198

FOR MORE SPECIFIC INFORMATION ABOUT WASTEWATER PROGRAMS:
Office of Wastewater Management
(**OWM**)
U.S. EPA
Mail Code 4201
401 M Street, S. W.
Washington, D.C. 20460
Internet: http://www.epa.gov/owm/

FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT THE U.S. EPA:
EPA Information Resources Center
U.S. EPA
Mail Code 3404
401 M Street, S. W.
Washington, D. C. 20460
Telephone: (202) 260-5922
Fax: (202) 260-6257

References

29 CFR 1926, Subpart P. Excavations.
Construction Safety Association of Ontario. Trenching Safety. 74 Victoria St., Toronto, Ontario, Canada M5C2A5.

International Labour Office (ILO). Building Work: A Compendium of Occupational Safety and Health Practice. International Occupational Safety and Health Information Centre (CIS): ILO, Geneva, Switzerland.
National Safety Council. Accident Prevention Manual for Industrial Operations, Engineering and Technology, 9th ed., Chicago, IL: National Safety Council.
National Safety Council. Protecting Worker's Lives: A Safety and Health Guide for Unions. Chicago, IL: National Safety Council.
National Safety Council. Industrial Data Sheets: I-482, General Excavation, and I-254, Trench Excavation, Chicago, IL: National Safety Council.
National Utility Contractors Association, Competent Person Manual-1991.
NBS/NIOSH, Development of Draft Construction Safety Standards for Excavations. Volume I, April 1983. NIOSH 83-103, Pub. No. 84-100-569. Volume II, April 1983. NIOSH 83-2693, Pub. No. 83-233-353.
Scardino, A.J., Jr. 1993. Hazard Identification and Control--Trench Excavation. Lagrange, TX: Carlton Press.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Criteria for a Recommended Standard, Working in Confined Spaces. DHEW (NIOSH) Publication No. 80-106, December 1979.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Criteria for a Recommended Standard, Occupational Exposure to Carbon Monoxide, HSM Publication 73-11000, 1972.
Golden, F. Hypothermia: A Problem for North Sea Industries, J. Soc. Occup. Med. 1976; 26:85-88.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Alert - Request for Assistance in Preventing Occupational Fatalities in Confined Spaces. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 86-110, January, 1986.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, A Guide to Safety in Confined Spaces. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 87-113, July, 1987.
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Guide to Industrial Respiratory Protection. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication 87-116, September, 1987.
American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI), Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces, ANSI Z117.1-1989.
National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), Fire Department Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus Program, NFPA 1404, 3-1, 1989.
National Fire Protection Association, (NFPA), Fire Department Occupational Safety and Health Program, NFPA 1500, 3-1, 1987.

Course References

Other EPA Fact Sheets can be found at the following web address: ttp://www.epa.gov/

1. ADS Environmental Services, 1998. "Sewer Evaluation Services." Internet site at [http://www.adsenv.com/what_we_do services-syeval.html], accessed June, 1998.
2. Arbour, R. and K. Kerri, 1997. *Collection Systems: Methods for Evaluating and Improving Performance.* Prepared for the EPA Office of Wastewater Management by the California State University, Sacramento, CA.
3. Black & Veatch, 1998. *Optimization of Collection System Maintenance Frequencies and System Performance*. Prepared for the EPA Office of Wastewater Management under a cooperative agreement with American Society of Civil Engineers.
4. Coe, C.D., K. Fu, and M.G. Wade, 1997. "Sewer Cleaning as a Diagnostic Tool," In *Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M: Solving Today's Problems and Meeting Tomorrow's Needs,* pp.12:27-12:32.
5. Fairfax County, Virginia, 1998. I. Khan, Director, Line Maintenance Division, Department of Public Works & Environmental Services, Fairfax County, Virginia, personal communication with
Parsons Engineering Science, Inc.
6. City of Fort Worth, Texas, 1998. C. Hanson, Superintendent, City of Fort Worth, Texas, personal communication with Parsons Engineering Science.
7. Grande, Novac & Associates, Inc., 1998. "Flushing Device for Retention Tanks and Sewers." Internet site at [http://www.gnainc.com/self.html], accessed May 1998.
8. Hagekhalil, A.; J. Carabantes, D. Marske, K.Runzer, and D. Parikh, 1997. "The City of Los Angeles' Primary Sewer Condition Assessment Program," In *Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M: Solving Today's Problems and Meeting Tomorrow's Needs,* pp. 8:27-8:38.
9. Hardin, D. and C. Messer, 1997. "Old Data and New Tools-Maintaining the Sewers That Need It." *Proceedings of the Water Environment Federation Conference on Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M Specialty.*
10. KA-TE, 1998. "The KA-TE Cutter." Internet site at [http://www.nodig.com/ka=te/kt-03.htm], accessed 1998.
11. Kerri, K.D. and J. Brady, 1993. *Operation and Maintenance of Wastewater Collection Systems*, Volume 1. Prepared for the EPA Office of Water Program Operations by the California State University, Sacramento, CA.
12. City of Los Angeles, 1998. B. Bergren, Manager, Public Works Sanitation and Wastewater Collections System Division, City of Los Angeles, personal communication with Parsons Engineering Science Inc.
13. City of Los Angeles, 1998. *Wastewater Collection System Operation, Maintenance, and Management*.
14. May, J., D. Harding, G. Rames, and R. Nelson, 1996. "Using Maintenance Frequencies To Set, Plan, and Schedule I/I Control and Maintenance Activities," In *Collection System Symposium: Maintenance Management,* pp.483-494.
15. Nelson, R.E., P. Hsiung, and A. Witt, 1998. *Optimization of Collection System Maintenance Frequencies and System Performance*. Prepared for the EPA Office of Wastewater Management by the American Society of Civil Engineers and Black & Veatch.
16. Patrick, R., J. Rompala, A. Symkowski, W. Kingdom, R. Serpente, and N. For more information contact: Municipal Technology Branch U.S. EPA Mail Code 4204 401 M St., S.W.
Washington, D.C., 20460 Freemn,1997. *Benchmarking Wastewater Operations-Collection, Treatment, and Biosolids Management.* Water Environment Research Foundation.
17. Pisano, W. N. Grande, and G. Novac, 1997. "Automated Sewer Flushing Large Diameter Sewers," In *Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M: Solving Today's Problems and Meeting Tomorrow's Needs.* pp. 12:9-12:20.
18. Price, T.O., 1997. "Investigation of Corrosion, Debris and Deformation in Large Diameter Pipes Using the Sonic Caliper," In *Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M: Solving Today's Problems and Meeting Tomorrow's Needs,* pp.14:1-14:7.
19. Reid, S., G. Irwin, G.E. Knott, and D. Singleterry, 1997. "Optimizing Large Diameter Inspections," In *Collection Systems Rehabilitation and O&M: Solving Today's Problems and Meeting Tomorrow's Needs,* pp. 8:39-8:48.
20. Sharon, J. D., 1989. *Combined Sewer Overflow Pollution Abatement: Manual of Practice No. FD17*. Prepared for the Water Pollution Control Federation by the Task Force on CSO Pollution Abatement.
21. Thomas, D. H. and T.W. Trybus, 1995. Collection Structural Integrity Better Understood Through Visualization Provided With Desktop Mapping.
22. UEMSI®, 1998."The Predator®." Internet site at [http://www.uemsi.com/predator.htm], accessed 1998.
23. Water Environment Research Foundation (WERF), 1997. *Benchmarking Wastewater Operations - Collection, Treatment, and Biosolids Management*. Project 96-CTS-5.
24. Casada, Don. *Pump Optimization for Changing Needs*. Operations Forum. Vol. 9, No. 5, 14-18, May 1998.
25. Cavalieri R.R. and G. L. Devin. *Pitfalls in Wet Weather Pumped Facilities Design.* In Proceedings of the Water Environment Federation, 71st Annual Conference, Orlando, Florida, Vol. 2, 719-729, October
1998.
26. Gravette B. R. *Benefits of Dry-pit Submersible Pump Stations*. In Proceedings of the Water Environment Federation, 68th Annual Conference, Miami Beach, Florida, Vol. 3, 187-196, October 1995.
27. Graham B, J., Pinto T.G., and T. Southard. *Backyard Pumping Stations – The Low-pressure Grinder Systems That Call Old Septic Tanks Home.* Operations Forum, Vol. 10, No. 5, 25-29, May 1993.

28. Jackson J. K. Variable Speed Pumping Brings Efficiency to Pump Systems. Operations Forum, Vol. 13, No. 5, 21-24, May 1996.
28. James M. Montgomery Consulting Engineers, 1988. “Sewerage System Preliminary Cost Estimating Curves.”
29. Lindeburg, Michael R. *Civil Engineering Reference Manual*, 6th ed., Professional Publications, Inc., revised edition 1995.
30. Makovics J. S. and M. Larkin. *Rehabilitating Existing Pumping Systems: Trips, Traps and Solutions*. Operations Forum, Vol. 9, No. 5, 10-17, May 1992.
31. Metcalf & Eddy Inc., *Wastewater Engineering: Collection and Pumping of Wastewater*, McGraw Hill Book Company, 1981.
32. National Fire Protection Association. *National Fire Codes.* Volume 7, Section 820. Quincy, Massachusetts, 1995.
33. Paschke N.W. *Pump Station Basics –Design Considerations for a Reliable Pump Station*. Operations Forum, Vol. 14, No. 5, 15-20, May 1997.
34. Public Works Journal. *The 1997 Public Works Manual*. April 15, 1997.
35. Qasim, Syed R. *Wastewater Treatment Plants - Planning Design, and Operation*. Technomic Publishing Company, Inc., 1994.
35. Russell Edward. *Screw-Pump Preservation.* Operations Forum, Vol. 9, No. 5, 18-19, May 1992.
For more information contact: Municipal Technology Branch U.S. EPA
36. Sanks R. L., Tchobanoglous G., Newton D., Bosserman, B.E., and Jones, G. M. *Pump Station Design*, Butterworths, Boston, 1998.
37. Schneller T. M. *Pumping it Up? Practical Means for Evaluating Lift Station Fitness*. In Proceedings of the Water Environment Federation, 68th Annual Conference, Miami Beach, Florida, Vol. 3, 155-166 October 1995.
38. Smith E. C. *Don’t Lose the Pump Efficiency Game*. Operations Forum, Vol.11, No. 7, 18-21, July 1994.
39. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. *Design Manual. Odor and Corrosion Control in Sanitary Sewerage Systems and Treatment Plants*. EPA/625/1-85/018, October 1985.
40. Water Environment Federation. *Existing Sewer Evaluation and Rehabilitation. Manual of Practice No. FD6*, 1994.
41. Water Environment Federation. *Operations and Maintenance of Wastewater Collection Systems. Manual of Practice No. 7*, 1985.
42. Water Environment Federation. *Wastewater Collection Systems Management. Manual of Practice No. 7*, 1992.
43. Workman G. and M.D. Johnson. *Automation Takes Lift Station to New Heights.* Operations Forum, Vol. 11, No. 10, 14-16, October 1994.

We welcome you to complete the assignment in Microsoft Word. You can easily find the assignment at www.abctlc.com.

Once complete, just simply fax or e-mail the answer key along with the registration page to us and allow two weeks for grading.

Once we grade it, we will e-mail a certificate of completion to you.

Call us if you need any help. If you need your certificate back within 48 hours, you may be asked to pay a rush service fee of $50.00.

You can download the assignment in Microsoft Word from TLC's website under the Assignment Page. www.abctlc.com

You will have 90 days in order to successfully complete this assignment with a score of 70% or better.

If you need any assistance, please contact TLC's Student Services. Once you are finished, please mail, e-mail or fax your answer sheet along with your registration form.